

THE UNITED STATES IN THE VIETNAM WAR, 1954–1975

A Selected Annotated Bibliography
of English-Language Sources



Louis A. Peake

**THE UNITED STATES
IN THE VIETNAM WAR,
1954-1975**

Routledge Research Guides to American Military Studies

America and World War I

David R. Woodward

The War of 1812

John Grodzinski

The United States in the Vietnam War, 1954–1975

Louis A. Peake

THE UNITED STATES IN THE VIETNAM WAR, 1954–1975

A Selected Annotated Bibliography of
English-Language Sources

Louis A. Peake



Routledge

Taylor & Francis Group

NEW YORK AND LONDON

First published 2008
by Routledge
270 Madison Ave, New York, NY 10016

Simultaneously published in the UK
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

This edition published in the Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2007.

“To purchase your own copy of this or any of Taylor & Francis or Routledge’s collection of thousands of eBooks please go to www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk.”

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business
© 2008 Taylor & Francis

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Trademark Notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
A catalog record has been requested for this book

ISBN 0-203-93544-6 Master e-book ISBN

ISBN 10: 0-415-95770-2 (hbk)
ISBN 10: 0-203-93544-6 (ebk)

ISBN 13: 978-0-415-95770-0 (hbk)
ISBN 13: 978-0-203-93544-6 (ebk)

*To my wife, Linda, who shared in this endeavor;
to my son, Ethan, who learned from my research;
and to the thousands of Americans who fought
and died in the Vietnam War.*

Contents

Acknowledgments	xi
Introduction	1
I General Reference	5
A. Bibliographies	5
B. Guides and Indexes	8
1. <i>Guides to Periodicals</i>	8
2. <i>Indexes to Newspapers</i>	9
C. Documentary Collections	9
D. Journals	13
1. <i>Official and Semiofficial</i>	13
2. <i>Other</i>	14
E. Atlases and Maps	16
F. Archives, Depositories, and Collections	17
G. Miscellaneous Reference Works	18
II Southeast Asia	23
A. General Studies	23
B. United States and Southeast Asia	30
1. <i>General</i>	30
2. <i>Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO)</i>	34
3. <i>Sino-Soviet Relations</i>	35
C. Cambodia	38
1. <i>General</i>	38
2. <i>Cambodia and the Vietnam War</i>	40
D. Laos	43
1. <i>General</i>	43
2. <i>Laos and the Vietnam War</i>	44
E. Thailand	47
1. <i>General</i>	47
2. <i>Thailand and the Vietnam War</i>	49
III Vietnam	51
A. General Studies	51
B. The French Experience	57
C. The Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam)	60
1. <i>General Studies</i>	60
2. <i>U.S. Aid</i>	65
3. <i>Leaders</i>	66
4. <i>South Vietnamese Accounts of the War</i>	67

D.	The Democratic Republic of Vietnam (North Vietnam)	69
1.	<i>General Studies</i>	69
2.	<i>Communist Relations and Influence</i>	72
3.	<i>National Liberation Movement/Viet Cong – Historical and Political Studies</i>	74
4.	<i>Leaders</i>	77
5.	<i>North Vietnamese Accounts of the War</i>	79
E.	Collapse of South Vietnam	83
IV	Vietnam and the United States Government	87
A.	General Accounts of U.S. Involvement	87
B.	Vietnam and American Foreign Policy	101
1.	<i>General</i>	101
2.	<i>Eisenhower Administration</i>	111
3.	<i>Kennedy Administration</i>	113
4.	<i>Johnson Administration</i>	115
5.	<i>Nixon Administration</i>	121
6.	<i>Ford Administration</i>	125
C.	U.S. Congress and the Vietnam War	126
D.	Legal and Moral Issues	127
E.	Vietnam and the United Nations	130
F.	U.S. Military Policy/Joint Chiefs of Staff	130
G.	Peace Negotiations and Cease-Fires	132
H.	Allied Participation	136
V	The Vietnam War	139
A.	General Studies	139
B.	Specific Studies	145
1.	<i>Strategy, Tactics, and Doctrine</i>	145
2.	<i>Leadership</i>	148
3.	<i>Military Advisors</i>	149
4.	<i>Guerrilla Warfare/Counterinsurgency</i>	151
5.	<i>Logistics and Manpower Requirements</i>	155
6.	<i>Chemical Warfare</i>	156
7.	<i>Psychological/Political Warfare</i>	158
8.	<i>Pacification/Vietnamization</i>	159
9.	<i>African-American/Native American/Chicano Soldiers</i>	161
10.	<i>Women</i>	163
11.	<i>Other Subjects</i>	164
C.	Weapons	167
1.	<i>Land</i>	167
2.	<i>Air</i>	169
3.	<i>Naval/Riverine</i>	171
D.	Uniforms, Equipment, Decorations, and Militaria	171

VI	The American Military Experience in Vietnam	177
A.	Combat Operations	177
1.	<i>Land War</i>	177
2.	<i>Air War</i>	186
3.	<i>Naval War</i>	195
4.	<i>Personal Accounts</i>	199
B.	Combat Arms – United States	209
1.	<i>U.S. Air Force</i>	209
2.	<i>U.S. Army</i>	212
3.	<i>U.S. Coast Guard</i>	221
4.	<i>U.S. Marine Corps</i>	223
5.	<i>U.S. Merchant Marine</i>	227
6.	<i>U.S. Navy</i>	227
C.	Allied Arms	230
1.	<i>Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam)</i>	230
2.	<i>Australia</i>	233
3.	<i>New Zealand</i>	234
4.	<i>Republic of Korea (South Korea)</i>	235
5.	<i>Thailand</i>	236
6.	<i>The Philippines</i>	237
D.	Enemy Arms	237
1.	<i>North Vietnam</i>	237
2.	<i>Viet Cong</i>	238
VII	The Media War	241
A.	General Accounts	241
B.	Television Coverage	243
C.	Correspondents/Journalists/Reporters	244
D.	Foreign Coverage	247
VIII	The Vietnam War in Literature, Film, Music, and Art	249
A.	Literature Resources	249
B.	Novels	250
C.	Poetry	263
D.	Film	265
1.	<i>Guides</i>	265
2.	<i>Official Films</i>	266
3.	<i>Documentary</i>	268
4.	<i>Commercial</i>	272
E.	Pictorial Records	273
F.	Music	276
G.	Art	277
H.	Humor and Caricature	279
I.	Other	279

IX	The Domestic Impact of the Vietnam War	281
A.	General	281
B.	Public Opinion	285
C.	The Draft and Conscientious Objectors	286
D.	Anti-War and Peace Movements	288
E.	Economic Aspects	293
F.	War Crimes	293
G.	Amnesty/Pardons	298
H.	Veterans Against the War	299
X	The Consequences of the Vietnam War	301
A.	Aftermath and Lessons	301
B.	POWs/MIAs	310
C.	Casualties/Refugees/Humanitarian Efforts	317
D.	Effect Upon the U.S. Military	321
E.	Veterans	323
F.	Vietnam Since 1975	327
Overlooked – But Not Forgotten! Additions		331
Chronology of the United States in Vietnam, 1954–75		335
List of Principal Characters of the United States and Southeast Asia, 1954–75		347
Glossary of Abbreviations, Acronyms, and Terms		353
Author Index		361
Subject Index		373

Acknowledgments

With the rewrite of this work not as many individuals assisted as with the original work. Moreover, much more time was spent conducting research via the Web and not so much actual physical time spent in libraries, depositories, and various archives. Still, however, I wish to extend selected thanks to those who provided assistance and direction in the preparation and research of this edition.

I am extremely grateful and indebted to Brendan O'Neill and to the Routledge, Taylor & Francis Group for encouraging me to update and revise this work which was originally published in 1986. During the 20 years which have passed since the original date of publication I had not anticipated in doing a revision until Mr. O'Neill contacted me.

I wish to offer my sincere thanks and appreciation to the staff of the John Deaver Drinko Library, at Marshall University, who offered unselfish assistance and guidance in directing me to the correct source locations for works published since 1986.

Without access to this invaluable resource I most surely would have been greatly delayed in completing this work.

Finally, I wish to thank my wife – Linda, and my son – Ethan, who offered encouragement and patience as I diligently researched and rewrote this work. They very graciously excused me from other activities in which I would have surely participated had I not been working on this project.

Introduction

The United States war in Vietnam ended some 30 plus years ago. It was a war that ended in disaster for the United States and a complete triumph for the Communists.

America's military intervention in Vietnam resulted in being our longest (to date), most costly, and most divisive war in our history. At one point over a half-million U.S. forces were deployed across Southeast Asia with contingents from other "Free World Forces."

From 1954 (you could actually use the end of the Second World War in 1945) to 1975, Vietnam dominated five presidential administrations and plagued the American conscience. When the French colonial empire in Indochina collapsed, with their bitter defeat at Dien Bien Phu, the United States took up the gauntlet. Without giving heed to any of the lessons that could have been learned from the French experience the United States made the fateful decision to intervene and, consequently, repeated many of the same mistakes.

What happened? Using the 1954 date the United States embarked upon a road that kept it embroiled in Southeast Asia for 21 years. Not only did we have to fight in Vietnam, but the war eventually moved into the neighboring countries of Cambodia, Laos, and Thailand. Over time, at least seven other countries allied with the United States, sent in military forces while many other countries provided non-combat support.

What were the results? A military defeat for the United States, international criticism of American foreign and military policy and the conduct of the war, a crisis of conscience within the American political system, and, finally, a tearing apart of the domestic fabric of this nation which time has only recently begun to heal.

That the war in Vietnam was a costly tragedy for the United States is a gross understatement. The more than 1,621 entries that comprise this revised edition of this select, annotated bibliography pay testimony to that. I have chosen to neither attack or defend the issues. As in my previous work I am merely attempting to provide the user with selected, complete, concise, and factual interpretations of a large cross-section of the body of scholarship and other materials pertinent to America's involvement in the Vietnam War and in Southeast Asia.

Again, this is a "select" bibliography. It is certainly not the largest or, perhaps, the most complete of those bibliographies available. However, many of those bibliographies are without annotation. Consequently, due to constraints placed on this work by the publisher, I have purposely limited the number of entries in this work. I have deleted entries that were dated and added many new entries from the wealth of material which has been published since 1986.

Those entries which I have chosen to include are those most frequently cited by other historians, scholars, and students of the war. All of the entries, with a few exceptions, are English-language sources. Furthermore, this bibliography is intended for a broad audience. The user of this work will find entries of interest to the general reader, the military buff, the collector of militaria, and the juvenile reader.

There are entries concerning specific military, political, and domestic topics relevant to the war. I have chosen to also include material about the music, films, art, and humor which evolved from the war. The user will find a chronology of America's involvement from 1954 to 1975, a glossary of acronyms, abbreviations, and terms, and a list of the principal characters.

Like the first edition of this work the simplified format allows for future revision and further additions. Certainly, there have been omissions – especially in regards to foreign-language sources, obscure journals, and specific military branch/unit histories. Yet I feel that the strength of this bibliography lies in the attempted objectivity of the selected entries.

I have purposely chosen to avoid representing any one point of view. I have chosen a wide range of entries to provide the user with some sense of balance when selecting a topic. It is my hope that I have contributed, in some small way, to a better comprehension of a misunderstood conflict that definitely was a major, significant event and turning point in American history.

As the United States is now into the twenty-first century we can only hope that our political and military leaders will have at least remembered, if not learned, some lessons from Vietnam. If not, the American public needs to expect it from them. One of the prophecies, unheeded, to emerge from the early turmoil surrounding the United States commitment to Vietnam were the words of Senator Wayne Morse (D-Oregon) who, in April 1965, commented that "No President can lead this nation into a massive war in Asia, with all the consequences . . . and not go down in American history as

totally dis-credited. This war is totally unnecessary.” One must ponder what the souls of the more than 55,000 names on the Vietnam Memorial in Washington, D.C., must think about the senator’s comment in hindsight.

Louis A. Peake

Huntington, West Virginia

May 3rd, 2007

I

General Reference

A. Bibliographies

1. Association for Asian Studies, Incorporated. *Bibliography of Asian Studies Online*. Ann Arbor, Michigan: University of Michigan, 1971–91. <http://www.asianst.org/>

For years recognized as the standard bibliography in the field of Asian studies. Now located online, the *Bibliography of Asian Studies Online* provides a guide to the periodical literature, monographs, and books on Asian studies. Last published volume, in print form, was 1991.

2. Burns, Richard Dean, and Milton Leitenberg. *The Wars in Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos, 1945–1982—A Bibliographic Guide*. Santa Barbara, California: ABC-Clio, Incorporated, War and Peace Bibliography Series, Number 18, 1984. 350 pp.

An extensive revision of the author's earlier bibliography (1973). Over 6,000 entries arranged, according to three distinct wars in Indochina, which the authors have identified in nine chapters. Work includes a chronology, glossary of terms, author index, maps and tables.

3. Chen, John H. M. *Vietnam: A Comprehensive Bibliography*. Metuchen, New Jersey: The Scarecrow Press, Incorporated, 1973. 314 pp.

Comprehensive Vietnam bibliography covering all written languages and publications. Separate subject index on the Vietnam conflict is provided. This work has a title index.

4. Cotter, Michael. *Vietnam: A Guide to Reference Sources*. Boston: G. K. Hall and Company, 1977. 272 pp.

This work contains extensive listings of all aspects of Vietnamese history, culture, and life. A list of abbreviations and a glossary for pronouncing Vietnamese words is contained. General index of authors and subjects is provided.

5. Dunn, Joe P. "In Search of Lessons: The Development of a Vietnam Historiography." *Parameters* 9:4 (December 1979), pp. 28-40.

This is a well-written bibliographic essay pertaining to the United States involvement in the Vietnam War.

6. Friedel, Frank, ed. *Harvard Guide to American History*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: The Belknap Press of Harvard University Press, 2 volumes, 1974. 1290 pp.

An extensive bibliography covering all aspects of American history. The material relevant to the Vietnam War is found on pp. 1053-54. For additional information check the listings for the Eisenhower, Kennedy, and Johnson administrations on pp. 1051-53. Indexed by author and subject.

7. Hay, Stephen N., and Margaret H. Case. *Southeast Asian History: A Bibliographic Guide*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1962. 138 pp.

This is an early guide to all of the countries of Southeast Asia. Vietnam is discussed on pp. 101-12. A strong emphasis is placed on earlier French works. The contents include bibliographies, books, articles, and dissertations. By current standards this work is outdated and in need of major revision.

8. Higham, Robin, ed. *A Guide to the Sources of United States Military History*. Hamden, Connecticut: Archon Books, 1975. 559 pp.

All aspects of American military and naval history is covered as well as all of the major wars in which the United States has participated (up to date of publication). The United States in Vietnam, *per se*, is omitted. References, however, are located in Chapters 15, 16, 17, and 18. The work is not indexed.

9. Leitenberg, Milton, and Richard Dean Burns. *The Vietnam Conflict: Its Geographical Dimensions, Political Traumas, and Military Developments*. Santa Barbara, California: ABC-Clio Press, 1973. 164 pp.

This is the authors' original work which has been revised (see entry number 2). This remains a very good bibliography on the subject.

General headings include general reference works, area dimensions, Vietnamese history and politics, U.S. involvement, military operations, and the domestic impact of the war.

10. Moïse, Edwin E. *Vietnam War Bibliography*. <http://www.clemson.edu/caah/history/facultypages/edmoise/bibliography.html>

Professor Moïse developed this extensive, comprehensive, bibliography for his students to use for his history class on the Vietnam War. This is an exceptionally well-prepared listing virtually covering all aspects of the American involvement in Southeast Asia.

11. Morrison, Gayle, compiler, and Stephen Hay, ed. *A Guide to Books on Southeast Asian History (1961–1966)*. Santa Barbara, California: ABC-Clio Press, 1969. 105 pp.

A good descriptive bibliography of works published up to 1966. Sources on Vietnam are located on pp. 69–79. Author and subject indexes are included.

12. Peake, Louis A., and Richard L. Blanco, gen. ed. *The United States in the Vietnam War, 1954–1975: A Selected, Annotated Bibliography*. Wars of the United States, vol. 4. New York: Garland Publishing, Incorporated, 1986. 406 pp.

This recent bibliography exams the United States role in the Vietnam War from 1954 to 1975. Provides material on Southeast Asia, North and South Vietnam, the Vietnam War through five presidents, the American military experience, Allied involvement, coverage of the war, domestic impact, and consequences of the war. A very good chronology of the U.S. involvement is included. A list of the principal characters of the war and a glossary of abbreviations, acronyms, and terms is useful. Both author and subject indexes are provided.

13. Sugnet, Christopher L., and John T. Hickey. *Vietnam War Bibliography*. Lexington, Massachusetts: Lexington Books, D.C. Heath, 1983. 572 pp.

Based upon Cornell University's John M. Echols Collection on Southeast Asia, this bibliography contains some 4,000 entries. The work covers American involvement from the mid-1940s to 1975. The bibliography includes books and pamphlets (but not journal articles) in English, French, German, and Vietnamese. Perhaps the most comprehensive guide available. The work is indexed.

14. Traas, Lieutenant Colonel Adrian G., compiler. "A Select Bibliography of Department of Defense Publications of the Southeast

Asian Conflict." Washington, D.C.: Histories Division, U.S. Army Center of Military History, January 1983. Typescript, 10 pp.

A brief, but useful, bibliography of Department of Defense publications from all branches of the military that participated in the Vietnam War. Short annotations are provided.

B. Guides and Indexes

1. *Guides to Periodicals*

15. *America: History and Life: A Guide to Periodical Literature*. Santa Barbara, California: ABC-Clio Press, 1963-.

This guide to periodical literature is supplemented by article abstracts and citations. Index to book reviews, books, articles, and dissertations, with an annual index.

16. Kreslins, Janis A. *Foreign Affairs Bibliography: A Selected and Annotated List of Books on International Relations 1962-1972*. New York: R. R. Bowker Company, 1976. 921 pp.

Material on Vietnam is categorized according to Vietnam in general, the Vietnam War in general, U.S. involvement, military aspects, the Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam), and the Democratic Republic of Vietnam (North Vietnam).

17. Pingree, Elizabeth E., ed. *Humanities Index*. New York: H. W. Wilson Company, 1907-.

A cumulative index of English-language periodicals consisting of author-subject entries, originally published, in part, as the *International Index* (1907-65) and then as the *Social Sciences and Humanities Index* (1965-74).

18. *Reader's Guide to Periodical Literature*. New York: H. W. Wilson Company, 1905-.

A cumulative author-subject index to periodicals of general interest published in the United States. The guide is published quarterly.

19. Turbert, Gary C., ed. *Book Review Index*. Detroit, Michigan: Gale Research Company, 1965-.

A listing of current book reviews cross-indexed according to author and subject.

20. *Ulrich's International Periodicals Directory*. 18th ed. 1979-80. New York: R. R. Bowker Company, 1979. 2,156 pp.

A classified guide to current periodicals, both foreign and domestic. It includes a user's guide, list of abbreviations, subject index, cross-index to subjects, list of cessations, index to international organizations, and title index.

21. Wilson, Robert S., ed. *Public Affairs Information Service Bulletin Annual Cumulation*. New York: Public Affairs Information Service, Incorporated, 1914-.

A select listing of books, pamphlets, government publications, periodical articles, and reports of public and private agencies relating to economic and social conditions, public administration, and international relations. Published worldwide in English. Supplemented by the *Cumulative Subject Index*.

2. Indexes to Newspapers

22. Bell and Howell's *Index to the Christian Science Monitor*. Wooster, Ohio: The Indexing Center, Micro Photo Division, Bell and Howell Company, 1950-.

This index is compiled by subject headings based on primary stories and features appearing in the *Christian Science Monitor*.

23. *The New York Times Index*. New York: The New York Times Company, 1851-.

This is a quarterly index to the *New York Times*, indexed in alphabetical order.

24. *The Times Index*. Reading, England: Newspaper Archive Developments Limited, 1906-.

The official index to *The Times*, *The Sunday Times and Magazine*, *The Times Literary Supplement*, *The Times Educational Supplement*, and *The Times Higher Education Supplement*.

C. Documentary Collections

25. Cameron, Allan W., ed. *Viet-Nam Crisis: A Documentary History 1940-1956*. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press, 1971. 480 pp.

A collection of 190 documents designed as a source of basic understanding of Vietnam and the factors that shaped it from 1940 to 1956.

26. Cole, Allan B. *Conflict in Indo-China and International Repercussions: A Documentary History, 1945–1955*. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press, 1956. 265 pp.

Dated, but useful, collection of documents which covers the Japanese occupation, the French, and early American efforts in Indochina. It includes a chronology of events from 1945 to 1955. Also of interest are the statistics on French expenditures in terms of money and personnel as well as American aid to both France and South Vietnam.

27. Council on Foreign Relations. *Documents on American Foreign Relations*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1952–.

Published annually, this work is a cumulative collection of documents pertaining to American foreign relations. See the volumes from 1954 to 1975 for American relations with Vietnam.

28. Gettleman, Marvin E., ed. *Vietnam: History, Documents, and Opinions on a Major World Crisis*. 2nd ed. New York: New American Library Mentor, 1970. 624 pp.

A revision of the editor's earlier (New York: Fawcett, 1965) documentary collection. This work is a collection of documents and opinions concerning the war in Vietnam.

29. Gold, Gerald, Allan M. Siegel, and Samuel Abt, eds. *The Pentagon Papers as Published by the New York Times*. New York: Quadrangle Books, 1971. 810 pp.

Based upon investigative reporting by Neil Sheehan and others, this work provides commentary on, and analysis of, the multi-volume Department of Defense documentary collection. The commentary tends to be generally hostile towards U.S. policy-makers.

30. Porter, Gareth, ed. *Vietnam: The Definitive Documentation of Human Decisions*. 2 vols. Stanfordville, New York: Earl Coleman Enterprises, 1979. 1,399 pp.

A two-volume work which preceded his latest (1981) work. Within the two volumes are documents concerning Indochina from 1941 to 1975. Each document has a brief introduction placing it in its historical context, significance, or contents.

31. —. ed. *Vietnam: A History in Documents*. New York: New American Library, 1981. 490 pp.

Recent (1981) extensive collection of documents pertaining to U.S. involvement in Vietnam from 1941 to 1975. A chronology is included and the work is indexed. The introduction was written by

Gloria Emerson (*Winners and Losers*) who writes, "If you want to know how ghosts are made ... these documents will tell you."

32. *The Pentagon Papers: The Senator Gravel Edition; The Defense Department History of United States Decision-Making on Vietnam*. 5 vols. Boston: Beacon Press, 1971–72.

Another work of commentary on, and analysis of, the Pentagon Papers. This multi-volume series is supplemented with anti-war essays.

33. Pratt, John Clark. *Vietnam Voices: Perspectives on the War Years, 1941–1982*. New York: Penguin Books, 1984. 706 pp.

This work is a chronological review of the oral and written documentation concerning the United States involvement in the Vietnam War. All viewpoints are covered including American, French, British, Cambodian, Thai, Laotian, and South and North Vietnamese. A bibliography and index are provided.

34. *Public Papers of the Presidents of the United States: Dwight D. Eisenhower*. 8 vols. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1960–61. 8,322 pp.

A collection of documents, materials, and speeches of President Dwight D. Eisenhower.

35. *Public Papers of the Presidents of the United States: John F. Kennedy*. 3 vols. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1962–64. 2,934 pp.

A collection of documents, materials, and speeches of President John F. Kennedy.

36. *Public Papers of the Presidents of the United States: Lyndon B. Johnson*. 10 vols. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1965–70. 11,502 pp.

A collection of documents, materials, and speeches of President Lyndon B. Johnson.

37. *Public Papers of the Presidents of the United States: Richard Nixon*. 6 vols. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1971–75. 5,881 pp.

A collection of documents, materials, and speeches of President Richard M. Nixon.

38. *Public Papers of the Presidents of the United States: Gerald R. Ford*. 6 vols. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1975–79. 10,230 pp.

A collection of documents, materials, and speeches of President Gerald R. Ford.

39. Schlesinger, Arthur M., Jr., ed. *The Dynamics of World Power: A Documentary History of United States Foreign Policy 1945–1973. The Far East*, edited by Russell Buhite, vol. 4. New York: Chelsea House Publishers, 1973. 859 pp.

A documentary collection pertaining to the United States in Vietnam, Cambodia, Laos, and Thailand. Indexed.

40. *United Nations Documents Index*. New York: United Nations, 1950–.

Current, cumulative, index to U.N. documents and publications with full bibliographical citations. These documents and publications are located in the United Nations Dag Hammarskjöld Library. Indexes for subject, author, and title are included.

41. U.S. Congress. Senate. Committee on Foreign Relations. *Background Information Relating to Southeast Asia and Vietnam*. 7th rev. ed. 93rd Cong., 2nd sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1975. 660 pp.

Publication contains official documents, concerning U.S.–Vietnamese relations from 1950 to 1975, with a chronology.

42. U.S. Department of Defense. *United States – Vietnam Relations, 1945–67. (Pentagon Papers)*. 12 vols. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1971.

Prepared for the House Committee on Armed Services, this is an extensive collection of documents and materials concerning U.S.–Vietnamese relations from 1940 through 1967. These documents comprise the so-called “Pentagon Papers.” Some maps are included.

43. U.S. Department of State. *American Foreign Policy: Basic Documents, 1950–1955*. 2 vols. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1957. 4,952 pp.

The basic documents relevant to U.S. foreign policy, for the period 1950 to 1955, are contained within. Some Vietnam-related documents are included.

44. —. *American Foreign Policy Basic Documents 1977–1980*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1983. 1,458 pp.

The basic documents related to American foreign policy for the period 1977 to 1980 are contained within.

45. —. *American Foreign Policy Current Documents, 1954–75*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, Annual.

These volumes contain documents and materials related to the foreign policy of the United States. The period includes American involvement in Southeast Asia.

46. ——. *Foreign Relations of the United States, 1952–1954: Volume 12—Indo-China*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1982.

A collection of documents and materials concerning United States relations in Indochina from 1952 to 1954.

47. ——. *United States Treaties and Other International Agreements*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, Annual.

Treaties and international agreements signed by the United States. See the volumes from 1954 to 1975 for Vietnam-related materials.

48. Wise, Sidney, ed. *Issues 65–66: Documents in Current American Government and Politics*. New York: Thomas Y. Crowell Company, 1965. 108 pp.

Chapter 7, “Foreign Policy: Vietnam,” examines two viewpoints concerning American involvement. One is a highly critical address by Senator Wayne Morse (D-Oregon) and the other is that of Secretary of State Dean Rusk who is supportive. The chapter includes Senator Morse’s prophetic comment (April 20 *General Reference* 1965) that “No President can lead this nation into a massive war in Asia, with all the consequences . . . and not go down in American history as totally discredited. This war is totally unnecessary.” 7.

49. ——. *Issues 66–67: Documents in Current American Government and Politics*. New York: Thomas Y. Crowell Company, 1966. 106 pp.

Chapter 10 contains an address by the noted foreign policy scholar, George Kennan, to the Senate Foreign Relations Committee, on February 10, 1966. In it Kennan criticizes U.S. foreign policy-makers in Vietnam for failing to recognize that Vietnam is neither militarily, nor industrially, important.

D. Journals

1. *Official and Semiofficial*

50. *Viet-Nam Bulletin*. Washington, D.C.: Embassy of Vietnam, 1967–75.

This news bulletin was originally published bi-monthly, to 1970, as *Viet-Nam*. In 1975 it became a semi-monthly publication of the Embassy of South Vietnam. The *Special Issue* 9:18 (April 15, 1975),

23 pages, is devoted to the final Communist invasion of South Vietnam.

51. *Viet-Nam: Documents and Research Notes*. Saigon: Joint U.S. Public Affairs Office (JUSPAO). 1967–75. 5,608 pp.

Brief publications which detailed North Vietnamese and Viet Cong activities. Extensive collection of documents captured from North Vietnamese and Viet Cong prisoners. Offers insight into how the forces arrayed against the United States viewed the war and American efforts.

52. *Viet-Nam: Information Notes*. Washington, D.C.: Office of Media Services, Bureau of Public Affairs, Department of State, 1968–70.

A series of 16 informational bulletins concerning Vietnam. Each bulletin focused upon a specific topic, i.e., Communist-directed forces in South Vietnam, free-world assistance, Viet Cong terror, POWs, U.S. assistance, pacification, the peace talks, and other topics.

53. *Vietnam Magazine*. Saigon: The Vietnam Council on Foreign Relations, 1968–1975.

This monthly periodical was devoted to all aspects of life in South Vietnam, news, history, and culture. Many issues contain information about what was happening in South Vietnam during the war. Illustrated.

54. *Viet-Nam News*. Saigon: The Vietnam Council on Foreign Relations, 1968–.

Weekly South Vietnam newspaper.

55. *Vietnam Perspectives*. New York: American Friends of Vietnam, Incorporated, 1965–.

Irregular publication of events and activities in South Vietnam.

56. *Vietnam Review*. Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, Department of Defense.

Quarterly publication of the Department of Defense concerning events in Vietnam.

2. *Other*

57. *Citizen Soldier*. New York: Citizen Soldier.

Monthly tabloid emphasizing issues of importance to the Vietnam veteran.

58. *Indochina Chronology*. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, Indochina Center, 1982–2002.

This quarterly publication reviews day-to-day events about Indochina. Summaries of book reviews and articles are included prepared by experts in the field of Southeast Asian studies. The *Chronology* ended with the death of its editor – Douglas Pike, renowned scholar on Communist doctrine, strategy and tactics in Vietnam.

59. *Infantry*. Fort Benning, Georgia: U.S. Army Infantry School.

A magazine for professional soldiers, but offers excellent articles about the war in Vietnam and the soldiers who fought it. Illustrated. Formerly the publication was known as *The Infantry School Quarterly* (1947–57) which was preceded by the *Infantry School Mailing List* which later became the current publication.

60. *LZ Alpha*. Woodburn, Oregon: David R. Haugh.

Published periodically this brief newsletter contains information on all aspects of the Vietnam War. Some illustrations are included.

61. *National Vietnam Veterans Review*. Fayetteville, North Carolina: National Vietnam Veterans Review, Veterans Press Syndicate, 1981–.

Published monthly the *Review* contains information of interest to both the veteran and casual reader. Many personal narratives, articles, poetry, book reviews, and illustrations found in each issue.

62. *Soldier of Fortune: The Journal of Professional Adventurers*. Boulder, Colorado: Omega Group Limited.

This monthly magazine caters to the professional military adventurer. Issues contain many profusely illustrated articles about the Vietnam War. Contributors include Oliver North and David Hackworth.

63. *Southeast Asia Review*. Geneva, Switzerland: South-East Asian International Action Committee (SEAIAC).

A quarterly publication of current, factual information concerning the Southeast Asian peninsula. The first issue was published in May of 1983.

64. *United States Army Aviation Digest*. Fort Rucker, Alabama: U.S. Army Aviation Center.

Many articles are devoted to both fixed and rotary (helicopter) wing aircraft used in the Vietnam War. Illustrated.

65. *Viet-Report: An Emergency New Bulletin on Southeast Asian Affairs*. New York: Viet-Reports, 1965–.

A periodical publication of news and events occurring in Southeast Asia. Actively stood against the war in Vietnam. Popular publication on college campuses. Many articles discuss American failures in Vietnam, the weak government in Saigon, and war atrocities as a result of the U.S. bombing of North Vietnam.

66. *Vietnam War Newsletter*. Collinsville, Connecticut: Thomas W. Hebert.

A monthly publication of news and events of interest to the veteran as well as the general reader and student of the war. The first issue was published in May 1980. Contains good book reviews and information about articles, music, movies, art, and other related Vietnam War items.

E. Atlases and Maps

67. Kelley, Michael P. *Where We Were in Vietnam: A Comprehensive Guide to the Firebases, Military Installations and Naval Vessels of the Vietnam War, 1945-1975*. Central Point, Oregon: Hellgate Press, 2002. 848 pp.

As the title implies this is a compendium of information regarding the location of American (and French for that matter) military installations in South Vietnam, Cambodia, Laos, and Thailand. This work has over 15,000 entries relevant to every conceivable location of an American base or vessel during the war. The author is a Vietnam veteran, having served in the 101st Airborne Division.

68. *Index to Map of Viet Nam, Cambodia, Laos, and Thailand: With 9,669 Place Names*. Washington, D.C.: National Geographic Society, Cartographic Division, 1967. 35 pp.

As the title indicates this useful reference provides the names and locations of over 9,000 places in Southeast Asia.

69. *The New Oxford Atlas*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1978.

See pp. 64-65 for maps of Southeast Asia.

70. *South East Asian War – Area Of Operations*. Jim Henthorn, 2001. <http://www-vl:History:UnitedStatesHistory:U.SMaps&Atlases>.

Computerized interactive map of Southeast Asia. Color. Move cursor on map and screen area enlarges. Inclusive for North and South Vietnam, Cambodia, Laos, and Thailand.

71. "Southeast Asia." Washington, D.C.: National Geographic Society, 1968.

A multi-color, 94.7-miles-to-one-inch-scale map of Southeast Asia. Map is large and easy to read.

72. Summers, Harry G., Jr. *Historical Atlas of the Vietnam War*. New York: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1995. 224 pp.

Color maps and photographs illustrate this atlas of the Vietnam War. From Vietnam's very beginnings, through the First and Second Indochina wars, to the Americanization of the war – all the major battles and campaigns are included. The author ends this work with coverage of the Sino-Vietnam War, 1979. This is an invaluable resource for studying the war.

73. *The Times Atlas of the World*. New York: Times Books, 1980. 227 pp.

Map of Vietnam is plate 25.

74. "Viet-Nam, Cambodia, Laos, and Thailand." Washington, D.C.: National Geographic Society, 1967.

This is a multi-color, thirty-miles-to-one-inch-scale map that is large and easy to see.

F. Archives, Depositories, and Collections

75. The Albert F. Simpson Historical Research Center. Maxwell Air Force Base, Alabama.

Records originated by the U.S. Air Force in Southeast Asia are located in this extensive collection of documents and oral histories.

76. History and Museums Division. Quantico, Virginia: Marine Corps Base Quantico. <http://www.history.usmc.mil/>

This archive contains the combat records and command histories of Marine Corps units in Vietnam. The Division is also responsible for writing and publishing the Marine Corps official histories of the Vietnam War. The Division has an extensive art collection of paintings, prints, sketches, and posters relating to the Marine Corps service in Vietnam.

77. Indochina Archive. Berkeley, California: University of California, Institute of East Asian Studies, Indochina Studies Project.

Extensive collection of over 2.3 million pages of documentation pertaining to the wars in Indochina. Approximately 8,000 books and some 10,000 maps, photographs, graphics, and so forth. The collection is based upon materials donated by Douglas Pike and contains a large number of works concerning the Viet Cong. Approximately 90 percent of the collection is in English with the balance being Vietnamese, French, and other languages.

78. The John M. Echols Collection on Southeast Asia. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University.
- Housed in the John M. Olin Library of Cornell University, this collection contains over 20,000 items on Vietnam. Of this number approximately 7,000 pertain to the Vietnam War from 1954 to 1975. Most of the works are either in Vietnamese or English although some are in French. For a current, detailed description of the Collection's holdings see Sugnet and Hickey (entry number 13) *Vietnam War Bibliography* (Lexington, Massachusetts: Lexington Books, 1983). The Olin Library has also been designated as a depository for the Vietnam War Veterans Archives.
79. U.S. Army Center of Military History. Washington, D.C.: Department of the Army, Southeast Asia Branch. <http://www.army.mil/cmh>
- The Center of Military History (CMH) maintains documents used in the preparation of the U.S. Army's official histories series. Accessible on the internet.
80. U.S. Army Military History Institute. Carlisle Barracks, Pennsylvania: U.S. Army Heritage and Education Center.
- The Center maintains some documents which are used in the preparation of the U.S. Army's official histories series. The USAMHI houses over 250,000 volumes focusing on military history. Additionally, the USAMHI contains thousands of items including operational reports, unit histories, field studies, photographs, motion pictures, oral interviews, and personal papers. Also, there are military service journals, manuals, unit newspapers, and magazines. The staff provide excellent assistance in the usage of the collection.
81. Washington National Records Center. Suitland, Maryland: National Archives and Records Administration.
- The WNRC contains approximately 40,000 linear feet of records including those of the U.S. Military Assistance Command, Vietnam (MACV); the U.S. Army, Vietnam (USARV); and their subordinate elements. The Department of the Army, Office of the Adjutant General, has administrative authority and responsibility for the records. Access to them is obtained through the Chief, Records Management Division, but most of these records are classified without access.

G. Miscellaneous Reference Works

82. Allard, Dean C., Martha L. Crawley, and Mary W. Edmison. *U.S. Naval History Sources in the United States*. Washington, D.C.: Naval History Division, Department of the Navy, 1979. 235 pp.

- A compilation, by state, of all the repositories holding collections of materials pertinent to U.S. naval history. Indexed.
83. *Book Review Digest*. New York: H. W. Wilson Company, 1905-.
<http://www.hwwilson.com>
Compendium of excerpts and citations of book reviews on current fiction and non-fiction in the English language. Approximately 6,000 titles are listed each year.
84. *Dissertation Abstracts International*. Ann Arbor, Michigan: University Microfilms International, 1952-.
A guide to international and American doctoral dissertations. Published in two volumes of which Section A covers the humanities and social science while Section B deals with the sciences.
85. Dupuy, R. Ernest, and Trevor N. Dupuy. *The Encyclopedia of Military History from 3500 B.C. to the Present*. Rev. ed. New York: Harper and Row, 1977. 1,464 pp.
An extensive single-volume reference work on the world's military history from ancient times through 1975. Pages 1209 to 1221 cover the United States in Vietnam (from 1965 to 1973). Two maps and a statistical summary are included. Pages 1295 to 1302 cover the French in Indochina (from 1945 to 1954). The work is triple indexed according to general categories, battles and sieges, and wars.
86. Dupuy, Colonel Trevor N. (USA, Ret.), Grace P. Hayes, and Colonel John A.C. Andrews (USAF, Ret.). *The Almanac of World Military Power*. 3rd ed. Dunn Loring, Virginia: T. N. Dupuy Associates in association with R. R. Bowker Company, New York, 1974. 387 pp.
A compendium of world military might provides information on defense structures, political-military policy, strategic problems, military assistance, alliances, army, navy, air force, and paramilitary units. An index and glossary are included.
87. Effros, William O. *Quotations Vietnam: 1945-1970*. New York: Random House, 1970. 248 pp.
If you are looking for a quotation regarding Vietnam this small book contains over five hundred. The quotations represent a cross-section of all published views concerning the Vietnam War from 1945 to 1970.
88. *Facts on File Five-Year Index: The Index of World Events*. New York: Facts on File, Incorporated. Annual.

For Vietnam see the volumes for 1961–65 (pp. 606–26); 1966–70 (pp. 801–44); and 1971–75 (pp. 928–30).

89. Griffen, William L., and John Marciano. *Teaching the Vietnam War: A Critical Examination of School Texts and an Interpretative Comparative History Utilizing the Pentagon Papers and Other Documents*. Montclair, New Jersey: Allanheld, Osmun and Company, 1980. 203 pp.

The authors examine the Vietnam War as presented in 28 different history texts currently in use. They include a summary of events based upon official sources. An excellent companion for teachers.

90. *Handbook for U.S. Forces in Vietnam*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1966. 171 pp. Originally published 1965 by U.S. Military Assistance Command Vietnam (MACV).

This Department of Defense pamphlet was designed for all branches of the service in Vietnam. It includes information on the government and armed forces of the Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam), the Viet Cong, tactics and techniques, and combat support. Illustrated.

91. Langer, William L., ed. *An Encyclopedia of World History*. 5th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1972. 1,569 pp.

A single-volume reference of world history, chronologically arranged in ancient, medieval, and modern periods. Reference to the Vietnam War is located on pp. 1325–34.

92. Le Ba Kong. *Vietnamese-English Dictionary*. Brooklyn, New York: P. Shalom, 1970. 492 pp.

Useful work for looking up the meanings of Vietnamese words.

93. Martell, Paul, and Grace P. Hayes, eds. *World Military Leaders*. Dunn Loring, Virginia: T. N. Dupuy Associates in association with R. R. Bowker Company, New York, 1974. 268 pp.

A compendium of biographical sketches of the world's military leaders. It includes leaders of both North and South Vietnam, as well as Americans. Indexed according to nation.

94. Nguyen Dinh Hoa, ed. *Vietnamese-English Dictionary*. Rutland, Vermont: C. E. Tuttle Company, Publishers, 1966. 568 pp.

Dictionary of Vietnamese words with their English meanings.

95. Pettit, Clyde Edwin. *The Experts*. Secaucus, New Jersey: Lyle Stuart, Incorporated, 1975. 450 pp.

A single-volume compendium of quotations taken from press accounts, official documents, broadcast media, books, and other sources, concerning the United States involvement in Southeast Asia. The author has grouped the quotations according to periods of time: 1940-54; 1955-63; 1964-68; and 1969-73. The work is indexed.

96. *South Vietnam: U.S. – Communist Confrontation in Southeast Asia, 1961-1973*. 7 vols. Lester Sobel, ed. New York: Facts on File, Incorporated, 1973. 2,111 pp.

A seven-volume journalistic narration on the events of the Vietnam War.

97. *Webster's American Military Biographies*. Springfield, Massachusetts: G. and C. Merriam Company, Publishers, 1978. 548 pp.

This is a reference work of biographical sketches of famous American military men and women containing over 1,000 entries with complete information. The addenda include lists of all the secretaries of war, navy, defense, joint chiefs, NATO, and all major Army, Navy, Marine Corps, and Air Force commanders.

98. Whitfield, Danny J. *Historical and Cultural Dictionary of Vietnam*. Metuchen, New Jersey: The Scarecrow Press, Incorporated, Historical and Cultural Dictionaries of Asia, no. 7, 1976. 369 pp.

A compilation of historical and cultural entries concerning the nation of Vietnam. The appendices include an outline history of Vietnam, a dynastic chronology, 12 maps, and a bibliography.

II

Southeast Asia

A. General Studies

99. Bastin, John, and Harry J. Benda. *A History of Modern Southeast Asia: Colonialism, Nationalism, and Decolonization*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Incorporated, 1968. 214 pp.

This work is an interpretive account of the process of Western colonialism in Southeast Asia beginning with the Portuguese during the sixteenth century up to the establishment of independent Southeast Asian governments after the Second World War. The work is indexed and contains a useful, but dated, bibliography.

100. Bloodworth, Dennis. *An Eye for the Dragon: Southeast Asia Observed 1954-1970*. New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux, 1970. 414 pp.

A well-written account of Southeast Asia by a Far Eastern correspondent. Based upon personal experience. The work provides good accounts of life in Vietnam during the American presence. There is a short bibliography and an index.

101. Buss, Claude A. *The Arc of Crisis*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1961. 479 pp.

The author examines the economic, social, and human factors that created the turmoil in Southeast Asia. He examines the role of Asian Communists as well as those of the Soviets, Chinese, and Americans in Asia. Maps are located on the endpapers. Dated but still useful.

102. ——. *Southeast Asia and the World Today*. Princeton, New Jersey: an Anvil Original, D. Van Nostrand Company, Incorporated, 1958. 189 pp.

This brief, dated, work examines the problems confronting the nations of Southeast Asia and their relations with the rest of the world. The author spent many years in the Foreign Service in Southeast Asia and the Far East, lecturing and writing. Twenty-seven readings are included – many by Southeast Asian leaders.

103. Cady, John F. *Southeast Asia: Its Historical Development*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1964. 657 pp.

This work outlines the historical development of Southeast Asia up to American involvement in Vietnam. The author describes the setting, early empires, transition to the modern era, European dominance, economic development, political reform, and the nationalist revival. Maps, a chronology, select bibliography, and index are included.

104. Coedes, G. (George). *The Making of Southeast Asia*. Translated by H. M. Wright. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, reprint ed., 1983. 286 pp.

Written from personal experience (the author spent 35 years of his life in Southeast Asia and one son became admiral of the Cambodian Navy) this work describes the political concepts upon which the monarchies of modern-day Cambodia, Laos, and Thailand were established. The author describes the struggle for control of Vietnam. The work is illustrated.

105. Crozier, Brian. *South-East Asia in Turmoil*. Baltimore, Maryland: Penguin Books, 1965. 206 pp.

The author examines the Asian policies of the Americans, British, Chinese, French, and Soviets regarding Southeast Asia. The period from 1945 to 1965 is covered. The author offers explanations of what went wrong and suggestions for future courses of action. A chronology (dated), map, and index are included.

106. Durdin, Tillman. *Southeast Asia*. New York: Atheneum, 1966. 153 pp.

A short, readable, work written for the general audience. The author was a veteran foreign correspondent for *The New York Times* (was one of the first Western reporters to describe the Japanese atrocity in the city of Nanking, China, in 1937). In this brief work he examines the problem of Communist aggression in Southeast Asia. The work is indexed.

107. Fairbairn, Geoffrey. *Revolutionary Warfare and Communist Strategy: The Threat to South-East Asia*. London, Faber and Faber, 1968. 286 pp.
- An examination of Communist revolutionary and guerrilla warfare and strategy in Southeast Asia. The author discusses Southeast Asia as the battleground, in general, for the development of Communist politics. The work then proceeds from the end of the Second World War through 1968, examining Communist aggression and attempts to halt it.
108. Gordon, Bernard K. *The Dimensions of Conflict in Southeast Asia*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Incorporated, 1966. 201 pp.
- An early work which the author has divided into two parts. First, he examines intra-regional conflicts in Southeast Asia. Second, he examines the leaders of Southeast Asia and their attempts at cooperation to resolve their own problems. Maps, tables, and an index are included.
109. Grant, Bruce. *The Security of South-East Asia*. Adelphi Papers no. 142. London: The International Institute for Strategic Studies, 1978. 33 pp.
- Security for Southeast Asia in the post-Vietnam War era is the focus of this monograph. The author examines Vietnamese domestic and foreign policy as well as the problems facing the reconstruction of Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos. The author also focuses upon the other member nations of ASEAN (Association of Southeast Asian Nations).
110. Hall, D. G. E. *A History of South-East Asia*. 3rd ed. London: Macmillan and Company, Limited, 1968. 1,019 pp.
- Beginning with the peopling of Southeast Asia, this work begins in the sixteenth century and progresses through European colonialism and nationalism and, finally to independence. The work is illustrated, contains maps, has a bibliography and index.
111. Hanna, Willard A. *Eight Nation Makers: Southeast Asia's Charismatic Statesmen*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1964. 307 pp.
- Although dated the work looks at eight Asian leaders including Ngo Dinh Diem and Prince Sihanouk. The book contains a short bibliography and subject index.
112. Harrison, Brian. *South-East Asia: A Short History*. 3rd ed. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1966. 278 pp.

This compact history (dated) was compiled for students and general readers. It includes illustrations, maps, a reading list, and an index.

113. Hunter, Guy. *South-East Asia – Race, Culture, and Nation*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1966. 190 pp.

Written for the reader whose interest was in the cultural, political, and social problems of developing Southeast Asian nations. The author divided this work into three sections. Part one deals with the countries and races; part two discusses colonialism, economics, and education; and part three examines the impact of modern technology in the region. The work includes some tables, maps, and a subject index.

114. Karnow, Stanley. *Southeast Asia*. 1967. Reprint. New York: Time-Life Books, 1969. 160 pp.

A profusely illustrated book on Southeast Asia which was designed for general reading. The author includes a list of suggested readings and an index.

115. Kolb, Albert. *East Asia: China, Japan, Korea, Vietnam: Geography of a Cultural Region*. London: Methuen and Company, Limited, 1971. 591 pp.

Originally published as *Ostasien* (Heidelberg, Germany, 1963), the author examines the geography, culture, and economy of each country listed in the title. There are many tables and maps (color and black and white), a synoptic chronological table, a bibliography, and the work is indexed.

116. Lebar, Frank M., Gerald C. Hickey, and John K. Musgrave. *Ethnic Groups of Mainland Southeast Asia*. New Haven, Connecticut: Human Relations Area Files Press, 1964. 288 pp.

A pioneer work on the ethnic groups of mainland Southeast Asia. The authors study each ethnic group's orientation, settlement, housing, economy, kin groups, marriage and family, socio-political organization, and religion. A map, bibliography, index, and country-name concordance are included.

117. Maude, Angus. *South Asia: A Background Book*. Chester Springs, Pennsylvania: Dufour Editions, 1966. 176 pp.

As the title indicates this is a general survey of the historical background of Southeast Asia. Explaining the French failure in Indochina the author stresses the behavior of the Vichy government and French colonists during the Second World War. In regards to the U.S. role, the emphasis is placed on the "Domino Theory." A few maps are included.

118. May, Ernest R., and James C. Thompson, Jr. *American-East Asian Relations: A Survey*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1972. 425 pp.

This collection of annotated bibliographies reviews American interests in Southeast Asia, from 1784 to the 1960s. Contributors include John K. Fairbank, Louis Morton, and Morton Halperin. This is a useful research tool on American foreign relations in the region. Indexed.

119. Mehden, Fred R. von der. *South-East Asia 1930-1970: The Legacy of Colonialism and Nationalism*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1974. 144 pp.

A brief examination of the effects of the colonial efforts of the British, French, and Dutch in Southeast Asia and the changes wrought by the Japanese during the Second World War. The author reflects upon the legacies left by the colonial and nationalist eras. The work contains a map, illustrations, chronology, bibliography, and it is indexed.

120. Osborne, Milton. "Indo-China in Turmoil: The Historical Background." *History Today* 30 (April 1980), pp. 23-28.

Vietnamese expansion into Cambodia (Kampuchea) and Laos are focused on. There are illustrations and maps.

121. Pluvier, Jan M. *A Handbook and Chart of South-East Asian History*. Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia: Oxford University Press, 1967. 58 pp.

A compendium of Southeast Asian government leaders and rulers listed by country from 1780 to 1967. This work is not indexed, however, it is still useful in looking at the individuals who were in power during a given period of time prior to 1967.

122. —. *South-East Asia from Colonialism to Independence*. Kuala Lumpur: Oxford University Press, 1974. 571 pp.

Beginning with 1940 the author probes the Japanese, French, and British attempts at conquest and colonial restoration in Southeast Asia and their failure. A very good bibliography and maps are included. This work is indexed.

123. Shaplen, Robert. *Time Out of Hand: Revolution and Reaction in Southeast Asia*. New York: Harper and Row Publishers, 1969. 465 pp.

By combining personal observations and interviews the author, a former Asian correspondent for *The New Yorker*, focuses on the problems of Southeast Asia and offers predictions about the future (from 1969). The author questions the validity of the Gulf of Tonkin

incident (August 2nd and 4th, 1964) prior to the release of the Pentagon Papers. He also raises questions regarding the role of the U.S. military and foreign policy of various presidential administrations. Shaplen refers to Cambodia as the "Eye of the Storm" and calls Laos the "Ugly Duckling." A general index is included.

124. Smith, Roger M., ed. *Southeast Asia: Documents of Political Development and Change*. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press, 1974. 608 pp.

The political thoughts and actions of the people of Southeast Asia during the past 25 years (since 1950) are reflected in the documents and materials which comprise this work. Vietnam is studied in four parts: the war of resistance (1945–54), the road to socialism (1953–60), government and politics in the Republic of Vietnam (1955–67), and war and peace (1961–73). A glossary and index are included.

125. *Southeast Asia: History, Economy, Policy*. Translated by David Fidlon. Moscow: Progress Publishers, 1972. 276 pp.

This work provides insight into the Soviet perspective on what they view as U.S. interference throughout Southeast Asia. The chapter on Vietnam was written by A. G. Budanov and is devoted to praising the efforts of the Vietnamese people while denouncing the role of the United States.

126. Steinberg, David Joel, ed. *In Search of Southeast Asia: A Modern History*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1971. 522 pp.

Beginning in the eighteenth century this historical examination proceeds through the period of post-war nationalism. Well written and researched this work remains a valuable research tool. An excellent bibliography is provided. A glossary of Southeast Asian words and terms is both unusual and useful. The work is indexed.

127. Summers, Major Harry O., Jr. "Politics and Culture in Southeast Asia." *Military Review* 50:6 (June 1970), pp. 33–42.

The author summarizes three prominent cultural "invasions" into Southeast Asia. Three groups are identified: Indian, Chinese, and Islamic. A fourth group, the last and most recent to invade, was comprised of Westerners. This "invasion" began in 1856 with the French. The author indicates that Western nations must realize that there are cultural misunderstandings, which must be bridged, before any of the other problems in Southeast Asia can be resolved.

128. Trager, Frank N. "The Future of Mainland Southeast Asia." *Military Review* 50:1 (January 1970), pp. 3–16.

The nations comprising mainland Southeast Asia are studied in light of the war in Vietnam. The author states that the situation in those nations which neighbor Vietnam has deteriorated as a result of the American presence. The U.S. needs to assume a new role as a Pacific power by first recognizing Asian nations as equals and becoming more supportive of Asian-Pacific regionalism.

129. Trumbull, Robert. *The Scrutable East: A Correspondent's Report on Southeast Asia*. New York: David McKay Company, Incorporated, 1964. 275 pp.

Dated, but still useful, the author presents personal observations gathered during his years as a correspondent in Southeast Asia. For his effort this book won the 1964 "Overseas Press Club of America – The Cornelius Ryan Award" (best nonfiction book on international affairs). Trumbull interviewed Ho Chi Minh, Ngo Dinh Diem, and Madame Ngo Dinh Nhu among others. From his impressions the author concludes that the problems of Southeast Asia will be solved by Asians and not Westerners – a prophecy realized after the publication of this work. A good source for understanding the personalities of the major players in Southeast Asia. The work is indexed.

130. Van Der Kroef, Justus M. "Southeast Asia: New Patterns of Conflict and Cooperation." *World Affairs* 138:3 (winter 1975–76), pp. 179–200.

This article examines post-Vietnam War Southeast Asia. The author is a noted authority and has written extensively on Southeast Asia.

131. Vandenbosch, Amry, and Richard Butwell. *The Changing Face of Southeast Asia*. Rev. ed. Lexington, Kentucky: University of Kentucky Press, 1966. 438 pp.

A revision of the authors' earlier work, *Southeast Asia Among the World Powers* (Lexington, Kentucky: University of Kentucky Press, 1957), this updates events in Southeast Asia to mid-1966. Aside from the conflict in Vietnam the authors examine the other nations of Southeast Asia. Although dated by today's scholarship this is still a useful reference work. The bibliographical notes are largely organized by nation. The book is indexed.

132. Williams, Lea E. *Southeast Asia: A History*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1976. 299 pp.

Not only are past wars of imperialism and colonialism examined but those of the modern period as well. The author argues that no nation has surpassed the United States with respect to the notion that Southeast Asian countries welcome intervention. A short list of suggested readings and an index are included.

133. Wilson, Dick. *The Neutralization of Southeast Asia*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, "Praeger Special Studies in International Politics and Government Series," 1975. 206 pp.

The idea of "neutralizing" the region of Southeast Asia is put forth in this scholarly treatise. The relative positions of the individual nations comprising Southeast Asia are examined as reflected in attitudes and issues. The external attitudes of the Americans, Cambodians, Soviets, Chinese, Japanese, Indians, and Europeans are also discussed. The work is indexed.

134. Young, Kenneth T., Jr. *The Southeast Asia Crisis*. Dobbs Ferry, New York: Oceana Publications, Incorporated, 1966. 226 pp.

An examination of the proceedings of the Hammarskjöld Forum, conducted by the Bar of the City of New York, on the role of the law in the settlement of international disputes. The author has included material on the conflict in Southeast Asia, the historical perspectives, Chinese policies, U.S. interests, SEATO, the role of the United Nations, and Geneva revisited. A lengthy, select bibliography of Southeast Asia is included.

B. United States and Southeast Asia

1. General

135. Bellows, Thomas J. "The United States and Southeast Asia." *World Affairs* 137:2 (fall 1974), pp. 95-117.

American policy and strategy in Vietnam is reviewed in the context of the historical background. The author concludes that, in the future, Americans must allow Asian problems to be solved primarily by Asians.

136. Blum, Robert M. *Drawing the Line: The Origin of the American Containment Policy in East Asia*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1982. 273 pp.

This work focuses on the initial aid to reach South Vietnam in the summer of 1950 during the administration of President Truman. The author examines the American decision, with regard to China, made by the Truman administration which led directly to the U.S. policy of containment in Southeast Asia.

137. Buckley, William F., Jr. *Inveighing We Will Go*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1972. 410 pp.

A collection of the author's writings on many topics including American involvement in Southeast Asia. Of the conflict in Vietnam the author writes that it is a "contest of wills" – the United States attempting to establish a non-aggressive alliance and the Soviet Union aiming at aggression. Thus, the U.S. must succeed or permit the Soviets to dominate the world. The book is indexed.

138. Burchett, Wilfred G. *The Second Indochina War: Cambodia and Laos*. New York: International Publishers, 1970. 204 pp.

The intervention in Cambodia and Laos by the U.S. represents a logical extension of American foreign policy in Southeast Asia since 1954. The author examines the U.S. failure to limit the war to Vietnam through the policy of "Vietnamizing" the war instead of ending it. The CIA coup against Sihanouk is recounted. A single map and an index are included.

139. Buszynski, Leszek. "The United States and Southeast Asia: A Case of Strategic Surrender." *Journal of Southeast Asian Studies* 14:2 (September 1983), pp. 225–43.

The author argues that American foreign policy towards Southeast Asia has allowed the United States to "surrender" the initiative to China as a reaction to the Americans' defeat in 1975. He observes that the Reagan administration has acted with indifference to the Kampuchean (Cambodian) problem and that the United States is presently in a position to alleviate some of the negative consequences of the Vietnam War and needs to do so.

140. Chomsky, Noam. *For Reasons of State*. New York: Pantheon Books, 1973. 440 pp.

The United States executive, state power, and ideology affecting the U.S. image in Southeast Asia is the author's focus in this book. The author was active in the draft-resistance movement.

141. Committee of Concerned Asian Scholars. *The Indochina Story: A Fully Documented Account*. New York: Bantam Books, 1970. 347 pp.

A collection of accounts prepared by members of the CCAS on the United States in Vietnam. The chapters include discussions on Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, Thailand, the conduct of the war, why the U.S. is fighting, and the future of Indochina. Detailed chronologies of Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, and Thailand are included.

142. Deitchman, Seymour J. *The Best-Laid Schemes: A Tale of Social Research and Bureaucracy*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: The M.I.T. Press, 1976. 483 pp.

The problems encountered by the author in conducting government-sponsored research on Southeast Asia for the Department of Defense are recalled in this work.

143. Fifield, Russell H. *Americans in Southeast Asia: The Roots of Commitment*. New York: Thomas Y. Crowell Company, 1973. 417 pp.

U.S. relations with Asian nations are described in this book. The author points out the distinguishing factors between the First Indochinese War (1946–54) fought against the French, and the Second Indochinese War (1965–73), fought against the Americans. Detailed material on the Geneva Conference and SEATO is included. In the final chapter the author observes that the United States’ “lost opportunity” could have been saved when President Roosevelt proposed trusteeship for Indochina, military occupation in Southeast Asia, and cooperation with Ho Chi Minh as a Communist-nationalist leader. From 1965 onwards the succession of American presidents, and their advisors, failed to alter the basic course of increasing involvement.

144. Friedman, Edward, and Mark Selden. *America's Asia: Dissenting Essays on Asian-American Relations*. New York: Pantheon Books, 1971. 458 pp.

A collection of 10 essays comprising what the author terms “America’s Asia.” The author observes that Vietnam was an integral link in the chain of creating and maintaining an Asian “Pax Americana.”

145. Kalb, Marvin, and Elie Abel. *Roots of Involvement: The U.S. in Asia 1784–1971*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1971. 336 pp.

The authors set out to prove that the Vietnam War was undertaken through massive American ignorance of Southeast Asia and was compounded by military and political failures of judgment. Moreover, excessive presidential rhetoric and doubtful intelligence made matters worse. These failures were combined with the government’s refusal to recognize that the national interests of the United States could not encompass the globe. This is a complete history of U.S. relations in Asia from the 1870s through the war in Vietnam to 1971. The work is indexed.

146. Kirk, Donald. *Wider War: The Struggle for Cambodia, Thailand, and Laos*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1971. 305 pp.

In this work the author outlines the events and trends occurring in the other three Southeast Asian nations involved in the war in Vietnam. Some maps are included as well as a select bibliography.

147. Lifton, Robert Jay, ed. *America and the Asian Revolutions*. New Brunswick, New Jersey: Transaction Books, 1970. 180 pp.
- A collection of essays which originally appeared in *Transaction/Society Magazine*. Each essay offers a particular social comment about the link which Vietnam provided between internal and external violence and the practice, by U.S. leaders, for openly deceiving the American people.
148. Marks, Colonel Murray. "Southeast Asia: Strategic Alternatives After Vietnam." *Naval War College Review* 21:9 (May 1969), pp. 94-99.
- Three options are proposed for consideration for the U.S. military to choose from upon the conclusion of the Vietnam War. Each option pertains to U.S. policy in Southeast Asia. First, the author proposes the selection of power bases on the Asian perimeter. Second, withdraw to nearby bases in Japan, the Philippines, and elsewhere in the region. Third, withdraw to mid-Pacific Ocean. The author considers the first proposal the most likely choice.
149. Moorer, Admiral Thomas H. USN. "U.S. Military Assistance Program Objectives." *Commanders Digest* 14:2 (July 12, 1973), pp. 5-8.
- Admiral Moorer examines the U.S. Military Assistance program to Thailand, Cambodia, and other nations. The effect of the "Nixon Doctrine" upon this program is reviewed.
150. Poole, Peter A. "The United States and Southeast Asia: A New Theme." *Current History* 77:452 (December 1979), pp. 193-96, 226.
- Southeast Asia in the post-Vietnam War era is the focus of this article. The article recounts a brief history of the region since the end of the war coupled with the current interests of the United States in the region.
151. Reischauer, Edwin O. *Beyond Vietnam: The United States and Asia*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Incorporated, 1968. 242 pp.
- America's relationship with Asia is the subject of this work. Four areas are studied: Vietnam, the Asian problem, New Asian Policy, and the American role in Asia as of 1968. A noted student of Japanese and East Asian history, the author lived in Asia serving both as a government official and military officer.
152. Rostow, W. W. "Vietnam and Southeast Asia: The Neglected Issue." *Parameter* 13:1 (March 1983), pp. 2-14.
- The "neglected issue" in the title is the strategic significance of Southeast Asia to all the nations with a stake in the region. The author describes the interests of Japan, China, the Soviet Union,

India, Australia, and the United States as well as those of the nations of Southeast Asia.

153. Shaplen, Robert. "Southeast Asia – Before and After." *Foreign Affairs* 53:3 (April 1975), pp. 533–57.

The author observes that American influence in Southeast Asia, and in the Vietnam War, was far less significant than was hoped for. The U.S. now needs to maintain a low profile, militarily, in Southeast Asia and work towards improving relations.

154. U.S. Congress. Senate Committee on Foreign Relations. Subcommittee on U.S. Security Agreements and Commitments Abroad. *Thailand, Laos, Cambodia, and Vietnam: April 1973*. Staff report. 93rd Cong., 1st Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973. 47 pp.

The brief report summarizes the United States security arrangements with the four nations involved in the Vietnam War.

155. Weinstein, Franklin B. "The United States and the Security of Southeast Asia." *The Bulletin of the Atomic Scientists* 34:10 (December 1978), pp. 26–32.

What is the most convincing way for the United States to demonstrate that it is not retreating from Southeast Asia? The author presents several answers to this question, of which the best answer is for the U.S. to demonstrate its peaceful intentions by reducing its military capabilities in the area. Furthermore, the author states that the U.S. should recognize and accept, as reality, that the future of Southeast Asia lies in the hands of Southeast Asians.

2. Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO)

156. Eckel, Paul E. "SEATO: An Ailing Alliance." *World Affairs* 134:2 (fall 1971), pp. 97–114.

The author examines the many problems facing SEATO. He points out that Laos was the first challenge of SEATO's authority and states that SEATO was impotent in Cambodia. Of Vietnam he observes that SEATO let the Americans handle the challenge. He concludes that, in effect, SEATO is dead.

157. Greene, Fred. *U.S. Policy and the Security of Asia*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1968. 429 pp.

A general study of United States policy regarding the security arrangements in Asia and Southeast Asia. Details the role of SEATO.

158. Nairn, Ronald C. "SEATO: A Critique." *Pacific Affairs* 41 (spring 1968), pp. 5-18.

A critical investigation of the Southeast Asia Treaty Organization is the basis of this article.

3. *Sino-Soviet Relations*

159. Buhite, Russell D. *Soviet-American Relations in Asia, 1945-1954*. Norman, Oklahoma: University of Oklahoma Press, 1981. 256 pp.

This work examines the involvement of the United States, in Asia, following the Second World War, up to 1954. The author focuses on the U.S. commitment to the Chiang Kai-shek regime, the Korean conflict, and the struggle in Vietnam in light of Soviet activity in the same areas.

160. Chawla, Sudershan, Melvin Gurtov, and Alain-Gerard Marsot. *Southeast Asia Under the New Balance of Power*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1974. 196 pp.

The authors analyze the balance of power present in Southeast Asia, during the 1970s, from the perspectives of the U.S., Soviet, Chinese, Japanese, and Indians. The authors examine the Southeast Asian responses to the major powers' efforts at diplomacy and regulation. Eighteen pertinent documents are included in the appendix.

161. Clubb, Oliver E., Jr. *The United States and the Sino-Soviet Bloc in Southeast Asia*. Washington, D.C.: The Brookings Institution, 1967. 173 pp.

This work examines major policy problems affecting U.S. relations in Southeast Asia and identifies the problem of the United States as being primarily responsible for maintaining peace and security in Southeast Asia after becoming the leading power in the Pacific. A list of Communist and American policies, in Southeast Asia, after World War II, and a list of issues and alternatives is provided. Among the alternatives suggested are the continued use of SEATO, the U.S. abandonment of SEATO in favor of a unilateral military arrangement, creating a Southeast Asian neutralized zone, and a greater emphasis on the U.N. for collective security.

162. Fitzgerald, C. P. *China and Southeast Asia Since 1945*. London: Longman Group Limited, "Studies in Contemporary Southeast Asia," 1973. 110 pp.

This short work explains China's relations with Southeast Asia since the conclusion of the Second World War. The author reminds us that Chinese relations with the nations of Southeast Asia date back 2000 years. Westerners must understand the historical relationship of China to the region before any explanations of problems can be offered. The author predicts that the United States will never again commit massive forces to a land war in Asia.

163. Gaiduk, Ilya V. *The Soviet Union and the Vietnam War*. Chicago: Ivan R. Dee, Incorporated, 1996. 299 pp.

A Russian historian, the author describes how Moscow provided Hanoi with considerable aid to strengthen their (U.S.S.R.) position in Southeast Asia during the Vietnam War. The Soviets tried to negotiate a peace which would be acceptable to both the North Vietnamese and Moscow. This work provides insight into the thinking within the Kremlin during that time.

164. Gurton, Melvin. *China and Southeast Asia – The Politics of Survival: A Study of Foreign Policy Interaction*. Baltimore, Maryland: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 1975. 248 pp.

To broaden the knowledge of U.S. foreign policy in Asia the author compares the relations of the Chinese People's Republic with Burma, Cambodia, and Thailand. Case studies are presented. A very good bibliography, by nation, is included.

165. Lynch, Marianne. "The Soviet Union and Vietnam." In *Monograph on National Security Affairs*, pp. 85–116. Providence, Rhode Island: Brown University, 1975.

The author purports that the Soviet Union, like the U.S., was "trapped" in Vietnam. This was due to Moscow's involvement in Vietnam leading to its long support for the North Vietnamese government.

166. Norton, Lieutenant Commander John H. USNR. "Russia, China, and Insurgency." *Naval War College Review* 23:2 (October 1970), pp. 53–68.

Sino-Soviet Communist insurgent ideologies, as applied to Vietnam, are compared in this article. The author presents some suggestions for a U.S. response to insurgency.

167. Palmer, Lieutenant Colonel Joe M. USA. "Political Negotiations in Vietnam." *Military Review* 46:9 (September 1966), pp. 62–69.

The objectives of the United States, South Vietnam, Communist China, and the Soviet Union are summarized in this article with reference to the 1954 Geneva Agreement.

168. Papp, Daniel S. "The Soviet Perception of American Goals in Vietnam, 1964-65." *Soviet Union* 2:2 (1975), pp. 145-61.

Focusing on the years 1964 and 1965, the author examines the perceptions of Soviet leaders concerning American military goals in the Vietnam War. He observes that, during the 1950s, the Soviets did not pay attention to South Vietnam. However, in 1962, the Soviet perception of U.S. activity was one of American "Asian Containment." With the bombing campaign, in 1965, the Soviets viewed America as a potential global policeman. This attitude influenced military expenditures within the Soviet Union.

169. ——. *Vietnam: The View from Moscow, Peking, Washington*. Jefferson, North Carolina: McFarland and Company, Incorporated, 1981. 257 pp.

The author compares and contrasts the lessons that the Americans, Soviets, and Chinese learned from the American involvement in Vietnam.

170. Pike, Douglas. "The USSR and Vietnam." Carlisle Barracks, Pennsylvania: U.S. Army War College, Strategic Studies Institute, 1980. 16 pp.

A brief examination of Soviet-Vietnamese relations that suggests that the Vietnamese are seeking nonalignment between themselves and Moscow. The author does not foresee Vietnam becoming a Soviet satellite in the East European manner and he concludes that Moscow, too, may fall victim to Vietnam as have other nations should the Russians decide to intervene militarily.

171. Ray, Hemen. *China's Vietnam War*. New Delhi: Radiant Press, 1983. 134 pp.

Chinese policy towards Vietnam, from 1946 to the present (1983), is studied in this short work. The author examines the causes and consequences of China's invasion of Vietnam and the Sino-Vietnamese conflict of 1979.

172. Tai Sung An. "The Sino-Soviet Dispute and Vietnam." *Orbis* 9:2 (summer 1965), pp. 426-36.

Three views concerning the split between the Soviet Union and Communist China, regarding Vietnam, are presented in this article. The views are from the perspective of Hanoi, Peking, and Moscow. The author concludes that the Vietnam crisis is not likely to heal the Sino-Soviet dispute unless the U.S. becomes involved in a ground war with Communist China.

C. Cambodia

1. General

173. Barron, John, and Anthony Paul. *Murder of a Gentle Land: The Untold Story of Communist Genocide in Cambodia*. New York: Reader's Digest Press, 1977. 240 pp.

Based upon interviews conducted by the authors with Cambodian refugees as well as firsthand visits to refugee camps, this work describes the Communist conquest of Cambodia following the collapse of South Vietnam and the subsequent treatment of the Cambodian people. Chapter notes provide explanations and dates of events.

174. Girling, J. L. S. "Crisis and Conflict in Cambodia." *Orbis* 14:2 (summer 1970), pp. 349-65.

Cambodia's search for security, from 1954 through the 1960s, passed through three phases. Under the leadership of Norodom Sihanouk the phases were, first, reliance upon the U.S., second, friendship with China, and finally, accommodation with North Vietnam and the Viet Cong. Dismissed when his efforts failed, Sihanouk was replaced by Lon Nol. In the long run it is the Cambodian people who will ultimately lose – no matter which side wins – Lon Nol with Thai and South Vietnamese support or Sihanouk with Viet Cong and North Vietnamese backing.

175. Gordon, Bernard K. "Cambodia: Shadow Over Angkor." *Military Review* 49:8 (August 1969), pp. 27-37.

Reprinted from *Asian Survey* (January 1969), this condensed article describes problems in Cambodia as the conflict in Southeast Asia, and Cambodia in particular, widens. The author observes that Sihanouk was willing, by 1969, to retrieve the ties broken with the U.S. because of the increased Vietnamese incursions into Cambodia.

176. Martin, Marie Alexandrine (translated by Mark W. McLeod). *Cambodia: A Shattered Society*. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1994. 398 pp.

The author traces the development of Cambodia, from its colonial beginnings, through the genocide of Pol Pot and the Khmer Rouge, to the Vietnamese invasion and occupation of 1979 to 1989. In 1991 the Vietnamese departed Cambodia leaving the people to determine their own course.

177. Sak Sutsakhan, Lieutenant General. *The Khmer Republic at War and the Final Collapse*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monographs, 1980. 187 pp.

This monograph studies the war in Cambodia/Khmer Republic, from 1970 to 1975, and the collapse of the nation. Many maps, charts, and illustrations complete this work. The author was former Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces, Chief of the General Staff, Ambassador, and the last Chief of State of the Khmer Republic.

178. Short, Philip. *Pol Pot: Anatomy of a Nightmare*. New York: Henry Holt and Company, 2004. 537 pp.

This is the story of how one man – Saloth Sâr (Pol Pot), rose from relative obscurity to become one of the world's most brutal leaders and who, along the way, destroyed his nation and murdered 1.5 million of its people. The work includes photos, a list of "Personalities," and a city map of Phnom Penh which shows the location of the notorious Toul Sleng detention center.

179. Sihanouk, Norodom. *My War with the CIA: The Memoirs of Prince Norodom Sihanouk*. Related to Wilfred Burchett. New York: Pantheon Books, 1973. 271 pp.

Prince Sihanouk recalls the CIA plot of March 1970 which overthrew his regime and installed Lon Nol as Cambodia's leader. Of use is the lists of personalities and the chronology which are included. The Prince states his case in chapter 16 paraphrasing Emile Zola – "I Accuse."

180. Simon, Sheldon W. *War and Politics in Cambodia: A Communications Analysis*. Durham, NC: Duke University Press, 1974. 178 pp.

This study of the war in Cambodia was written while the fighting was in progress. It examines the goals of the participants and includes recent material on Lon Nol and the Khmer Rouge movement. The work is illustrated.

181. Smith, Roger M. *Cambodia's Foreign Policy*. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press, 1965. 273 pp.

This early work details Cambodia's relations with the major powers, as well as with neighboring Vietnam and Thailand. The author examines the historical background and the crisis in Indochina. Documents relevant to the issue of Cambodia's neutrality are included.

182. Tooze, Ruth. *Cambodia: Land of Contrasts*. 5th ed. New York: The Viking Press, 1969. 144 pp.

A general study of Cambodia and its people. Maps and illustrations enhance a short work. Good for general background information about Cambodia.

183. Vickery, Michael. *Cambodia: 1975–1982*. Boston: South End Press, 1984. 361 pp.

Cambodia from the end of the Vietnam War to 1982 is examined in this book. The author looks at the nightmare of the Cambodian Revolution, the murderous regime of Pol Pot, the formation of Kampuchea, and going from democracy to a “People’s Republic.” In the author’s postscript he addresses the continued problem of Cambodia with Vietnam and the fate of the PRK (People’s Republic of Kampuchea).

184. Whitaker, Donald P., Judith M. Heimann, John E. MacDonald, Kenneth W. Martindale, Rinn-Sup Shinn, and Charles Townsend. Department of the Army Pamphlet 550–50. *Area Handbook for the Khmer Republic (Cambodia)*. Washington, D.C.: Department of the Army, Foreign Area Studies, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973. 389 pp.

This illustrated work covers the social, political, and economic structure of Cambodia. The chapter on national security contains an assessment of those forces hostile to Cambodia and Cambodia’s role in the Vietnam War.

185. Williams, Maslyn. *The Land in Between: The Cambodian Dilemma*. New York: William Morrow and Company, Incorporated, 1970. 241 pp.

An Australian journalist, the author visited Cambodia in 1969 and this personal narrative is his story. He sees Cambodia as being caught between the values of Eastern and Western cultures. The work is illustrated.

2. Cambodia and the Vietnam War

186. Caldwell, Malcolm, and Lek Tan. *Cambodia in the Southeast Asian War*. New York: Monthly Review Press, 1973. 450 pp.

This work scrutinizes the Nixon administration policies regarding Cambodia and the Vietnam War based on materials released prior to the Pentagon Papers. The CIA-backed coup to overthrow Sihanouk is discussed. The war, as seen through the eyes of the royal government of Cambodia, provides a different perspective.

187. Davies, Paul, and Nic Dunlop (photographer). *War Of The Mines: Cambodia, Landmines and the Impoverishment of a Nation*. London: Pluto Press, 1994. 172 pp.

This is a profusely illustrated work about the problem of landmines and the damage (human) wrought by them since the end of the war in Vietnam as well as those employed by the Khmer Rouge during the Cambodian Revolution. The appendices contain statistics on landmine survivors as well as landmine deaths. The photographs tell the story of the suffering the Cambodian people have been subjected to as casualties of these deadly weapons left behind.

188. *Cambodia in The Vietnam War*. Facts On File, Incorporated, 1971. 222 pp.

Concise work tracing Cambodia's history from its beginnings to its involvement in the Vietnam War (1962–69). The book includes material about the coup overthrowing Prince Sihanouk and the American and South Vietnamese invasion in 1970. Even though the U.S. withdrew in 1970, there was no let up in the fighting. The book ends (1971) with the Communists and South Vietnamese still fighting for control of Cambodia.

189. Fox, Donald T., ed. *The Cambodian Incursion ... Legal Issues*. Dobbs Ferry, New York: Oceana Publications, Incorporated, 1971. 89 pp.

Constitutional and international legal issues which arose as a result of American forces moving into Cambodia are discussed in this short work. Originally, the papers in this book were presented before the Fifteenth Hammarskjöld Forum. The editor has included a very good select bibliography. This was the first important debate concerning the legal issues and Cambodia as a part of the Vietnam War.

190. Grant, Jonathan S., Laurence A. G. Moss, and Jonathan Unger, eds. *Cambodia: The Widening War in Indochina*. New York: Washington Square Press, 1971. 355 pp.

Prepared by the Committee of Concerned Asian Scholars (CCAS), this work explains how the Vietnam War expanded to become a true Indochina War. The editors have collected essays concerning the widening war, the prelude to crisis, the coup, the invasion, ecocide, and American discontent at home. The appendices include addresses by President Nixon and Mao Tse-tung.

191. Kamm, Henry. *Cambodia: Report From a Stricken Land*. New York: Arcade Publishing, 1998. 262 pp.

The effects of the U.S. war in Vietnam as it spread into Cambodia is the focus of this work. Cambodia became part of the war in 1970, and remained in the war until 1975. The author describes the dark

days of Cambodia (1975–79) when the Khmer Rouge “lived in complete isolation from the outside world.” The author further observes that Cambodia’s survival “lies in the fatal incompetence of its political class, in the indifference of its leaders . . . and perilous descent of their people over nearly three decades into ever deeper illness, ignorance, and demoralization.”

192. Kiernan, Ben. *The Pol Pot Regime: Race, Power, and Genocide in Cambodia under the Khmer Rouge, 1975–79*. New Haven, Connecticut: Yale University Press, 1996. 477 pp.

The rise of Pol Pot, and the genocide which accompanied him to 1979 and the end of his murderous regime is the focus of this book. Details are given on how the Vietnamese helped to depose him. The book is illustrated and has a useful glossary of Cambodian terms.

193. Marshall, S. L. A. *West to Cambodia*. New York: Cowles, 1968. 253 pp.

An examination of U.S. operations to halt North Vietnamese incursions into Vietnam by way of neutral Cambodia. Many illustrations detail the fighting.

194. Shawcross, William. *Sideshow: Kissinger, Nixon, and the Destruction of Cambodia*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1979. 467 pp.

The author contends that the United States accelerated the Communist takeover in Cambodia. He criticizes President Nixon, and his National Security Advisor Dr. Henry Kissinger, for their handling of Cambodian policy, especially the U.S. incursion of 1970. The author contends that Cambodia was nothing more than a repeat performance of the U.S. experience in Vietnam and stands as a glittering example of American leaders learning little from their earlier experience. He states that “Cambodia was not a mistake; it was a crime.” The work is completed with a chronology, list of characters, bibliography, and illustrations.

195. Tran Dinh Tho. Brigadier General. *The Cambodian Incursion*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indo-china Monographs, 1979. 245 pp.

This monograph details joint U.S.-Republic of Vietnam (South) armed forces combined operations into Cambodia’s border areas. The author gives insight on the Communist use of Cambodian territory to carry the war into South Vietnam. Maps and illustrations highlight the text and a useful glossary is included.

D. Laos

1. General

196. Adams, Nina S., and Alfred W. McCoy, eds. *Laos: War and Revolution*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1970. 482 pp.

This is a collection of 30 essays divided into five categories: the land and people, the historical setting, America in Laos, U.S. statements on Laos, and the Pathet Lao. A brief, but useful, select bibliography is included. A useful work to gain insight into American involvement in Laos.

197. Black, Colonel Edwin F. USA. "A Case Study of Laos Communist Strategy." *Military Review* 44:12 (December 1964), pp. 49-59.

An early (1964) brief summary of Communist activities in Laos from 1962 to 1964. A map of Laos is included.

198. Duskin, Lieutenant Colonel Edgar W. USA. "Laos." *Military Review* 48:3 (March 1968), pp. 3-10.

A summary of events occurring in Laos from 1962 to 1968.

199. Goldstein, Martin E. *American Policy Toward Laos*. Rutherford, New Jersey: Fairleigh Dickinson University Press, 1973. 347 pp.

Following a brief history of American involvement in Indochina during World War Two, the author traces the path of U.S. policy in Laos from 1954 to 1973. Chapters are devoted to the Geneva Conference, the Eisenhower administration, Kong Le's coup, General Nosavan, the settlement of 1961-62, and other related topics. A bibliography is included.

200. LeBar, Frank M., and Adrienne Suddard, eds. *Laos: Its People, Its Security, Its Culture*. New Haven, Connecticut: Human Relations Area Files Press, "Survey of World Culture" series, 1960. 294 pp.

A dated, but useful work on Laotian history and culture. The select bibliography is good but dated. Maps are included. A good beginning for the study of Laos.

201. Toye, Hugh. *Laos: Buffer State or Battleground?* New York: Oxford University Press, 1968. 245 pp.

Laotian civilization from ancient times through the Geneva Agreement of 1962 is the subject of this study. This work provides a good background of events in Laos up to the date of publication (1968). Dated and needs revision.

202. Trager, Frank N. "Laos and the Defense of Southeast Asia." *Orbis* 7:3 (fall 1963), pp. 550–82.

The significance of Laos, according to the author, is in its geographical location in Southeast Asia. The author describes the crisis of 1959, the election of 1960, Kong Le's coup, the spread of hostilities, the Geneva Conference, and offering the possible partition of Laos as a solution.

203. U.S. Department of State. *The Situation in Laos*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1959. 23 pp.

This brief, dated account of events which occurred in Laos to 1959 looks at the background and origins of the Communist movement, the Democratic Republic of Vietnam's invasion of Laos in 1953–54, the Geneva Conference, and U.S. involvement. The paper states that the U.S. will "support reasonable approaches to achieve a peaceful solution" in Laos.

204. Whitaker, Donald P., Helen A. Barth, Sylvan M. Berman, Judith M. Heimann, John E. MacDonald, Kenneth W. Martindale, and Rinn-Sup Shinn. Department of the Army Pamphlet 550–58. *Area Handbook for Laos*. Washington, D.C.: Department of the Army, Foreign Area Studies, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1972. 337 pp.

Laotian society, history, politics, economics, national security, and internal strife to 1967 is examined in this government publication. It also includes the Geneva Agreement of 1962 concerning Laos. An assessment of Royal Laotian military capabilities and U.S. assistance is made.

2. Laos and the Vietnam War

205. Bartlett, Merrill L. "Intervention in Laos." *Marine Corps Gazette* 58:9 (1974), pp. 18–23.

A brief description of Laotian history, since 1945, in terms of interventions by the French, North Vietnamese, and the Americans.

206. Bransford, Fred, compiler. *Voices from the Plain of Jars: Life Under an Air War*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1972. 160 pp.

The stories of Laotian peasants who survived numerous bombing attacks over the Plain of Jars are recalled in this book. Sketches drawn by some of the peasants, depicting their experience, are included.

207. Burchett, Wilfred G. *The Furtive War: The United States in Vietnam and Laos*. New York: International Publishers, 1963. 224 pp.
- An early (1963) two-part work detailing events, first in Vietnam and then in Laos. The work is based on the author's visits to both countries in 1962. A noted Australian journalist, the author focused upon the North Vietnamese/Viet Cong efforts throughout the war. Although dated the work is useful for information concerning the early years of intervention in Laos.
208. Dommen, Arthur J. *Conflict in Laos: The Politics of Neutralization*. Rev. ed. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1971. 454 pp.
- Hanoi's attempts to acquire hegemony in the region compared to U.S. indecision about Laos is the focus of this work. The international effort to neutralize Laos is examined. The author concludes that "Peace in Indochina, like the war, is indivisible." A comprehensive bibliography is included.
209. Fall, Bernard B. *Anatomy of a Crisis: The Laotian Crisis of 1960–1961*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1969. 283 pp.
- In this work Fall demonstrates how American foreign policy, in regards to Laos, not only failed but actually stimulated the proliferation of Communist activities in Laos. A well-written account of U.S. intervention in an area of Communist dominance.
210. Langer, Paul F., and Joseph J. Zasloff. *North Vietnam and the Pathet Lao: Partners in the Struggle for Laos*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1970. 262 pp.
- The focus of this work is the role of North Vietnam in Laos and its relationship to the Communist Pathet Lao movement. U.S. involvement in Southeast Asia is not discussed in this work. The authors have combined their talents to produce a useful explanation of the importance of the Communist struggle for Laos. There is a good chronology of the Pathet Lao Communist movement included.
211. Sananikone, Major General Oudone. *The Royal Lao Army and U.S. Army Advice and Support*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indo-China Monographs, 1981. 182 pp.
- A brief narrative of the Royal Lao Army and American advice and support from 1961 to 1975. The author is a former Lao Army officer.
212. Soutchay Vongsavanh, Brigadier General. *RLG Military Operations and Activities in the Laotian Panhandle*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indo-China Monographs, 1981. 120 pp.

This short work focuses on Royal Lao Government (RLG) operations against North Vietnamese forces. The author outlines early activities up to the North Vietnamese offensive in 1971–72 as well as the 1973 cease-fire and the resultant developments. The author has included maps, charts, illustrations, and a glossary.

213. Stevenson, Charles A. *The End of Nowhere: American Policy Toward Laos Since 1954*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1972. 367 pp.

In this revision of his Harvard thesis the author examines U.S. relations with Laos, decisions made in Washington, and the subsequent actions that became policy in Laos. The author concludes that Laos, because of foreign policy decisions and the accompanying bureaucratic problems, may be the norm rather than the exception in U.S. foreign policy-making. The author has included a bibliography and chronology of major events.

214. Thee, Marek. *Notes of a Witness: Laos and the Second Indochinese War*. New York: Random House, 1973. 435 pp.

Concentrating on events in Laos, from 1961 to 1962, the author pays special attention to the power struggle and dynamics of local politics. The author served as the Polish delegate on the International Commission for Supervision and Control in Laos during the Kennedy administration. This is his eyewitness account of those eventful days.

215. Weldon, Charles. *Tragedy in Paradise: A Country Doctor at War in Laos*. Bangkok: Asia Books, Limited, 1999. 284 pp.

The author was a well-known American physician who was a part of the unofficial effort by the U.S. to fight a Communist takeover of Laos by the Pathet Lao. From 1963 to 1974 the author worked in Laos alongside refugees and others fighting the North Vietnamese and the Pathet Lao. He also flew with the CIA-operated "Air America" during the "secret war" in Laos. This work provides a glimpse of a war within a war – Laos, and the wider conflict in Southeast Asia.

216. Zasloff, Joseph J. *The Pathet Lao: Leadership and Organization*. Lexington, Massachusetts: Lexington Books, D. C. Heath and Company, 1973. 176 pp.

The author provides an analysis of the structure, political dynamics, and leadership of the Pathet Lao based on interviews, radio broadcasts, and published materials of the Pathet Lao. The author has included a list of front groups and mass organizations of the Pathet Lao as well as information on the individuals interviewed for this work.

E. Thailand

1. General

217. Basche, James. *Thailand: Land of the Free*. New York: Taplinger Publishing Company, Incorporated, 1971. 273 pp.

For the general reader this book was written from the perspective of a Western visitor to Thailand and contains much information about the country and the people. The work is illustrated.

218. Bennett, Alan. "Thailand: The Ambiguous Domino." *Conflict Studies* 1 (December 1969), pp. 1-14.

The author raises questions about Thailand and its ties with the West. The author observes that Thailand's destiny lies in its relations with the United States, China, and its Southeast Asian neighbors.

219. Bunge, Frederica M., ed. Department of the Army Pamphlet 550-53. *Thailand: A Country Study*. Washington, D.C.: Department of the Army, Foreign Area Studies, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1981. 354 pp.

Following the political turbulence in Thailand, during the 1970s, the original *Area Handbook for Thailand* was revised and updated into this current analysis. It examines Thai history, social structure, economy, government, politics, and national security. There is an excellent bibliography, a glossary of Thai words, and the work is illustrated.

220. Busch, Noel F. *Thailand: An Introduction to Modern Siam*. 2nd ed. Princeton, New Jersey: D. Van Nostrand Company, Incorporated, 1964. 166 pp.

A dated, but useful work with general information about Thailand. The author lived and worked in Thailand for four years with the Asia Foundation.

221. Chu, Valentin. *Thailand Today: A Visit to Modern Siam*. New York: Thomas Y. Crowell Company, 1968. 200 pp.

A brief history and socio-cultural study of Thailand, this work is highlighted with color photographs. The author quotes a former Thai foreign minister who, speaking on Communist intrusion, said that Thais "have never known foreign domination – be it white, be it red, be it brown. We just want to be ourselves, masters of our own destiny."

222. Darling, Frank and Ann. *Thailand: The Modern Kingdom*. Singapore: Donald Moore for Asia Pacific Press, 1971. 122 pp.

A general, concise, history of Thailand. The authors survey Thai society, education, art and literature, economy, government, and foreign affairs. They report that the Thai government relies closely upon the United States for military assistance, yet fears becoming over-Westernized.

223. Davies, David M. *The Rice Bowl of Asia*. London: Robert Hale, 1967. 176 pp.

The author, a former English lecturer in Bangkok, was also a Thai government official. This is an illustrated history of Thailand written from his personal experiences and travels. This work was revised in 1973 as *Thailand: The Rice Bowl of Asia* (London: Frederick Mulker Limited).

224. Insor, D. *Thailand: A Political, Social, and Economic Analysis*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1963. 188 pp.

This work on Thai politics is divided into three parts: Thailand in general, politics and foreign policy, and economic change. The work contains a brief chronology of Thai events from the sixth century to 1962. Dated.

225. Sieben, Hubert. *Thailand: Land of Color*. New York: Taplinger Publishing Company, 1969. 155 pp.

This profusely illustrated book provides the reader with a visual journey through Thailand. The photographs emphasize Thai traditions, Buddhism, beauty, temples, and the people. For the general reader.

226. Stanton, Edwin F. "Spotlight on Thailand." *Foreign Affairs* 33:1 (October 1954), pp. 72-85.

This early (1954) article looks upon Thailand as a "bastion of freedom" in Southeast Asia in light of the Geneva Agreements. The author argues that the U.S. should build up and support Thailand's military forces to help preserve its freedom and independence.

227. *Thailand into the 80s*. Bangkok, Thailand: Office of the Prime Minister, Kingdom of Thailand, 1979. 300 pp.

Prepared by the Thai government, this publication examines Thailand's history, geography, social and cultural structures, economy, and its place in the world. The information contained in this work makes it a useful research tool for the study of Thailand. It

includes an excellent map, color photographs, and a current (1979) bibliography.

228. "Thailand: The Dual Threat to Stability." *Conflict Studies* 44 (May 1974), pp. 1-16.

Once regarded as a stable nation, Thailand, by 1973, had undergone internal upheaval. Moreover, President Nixon's trip to China was viewed by the Thais as undermining their anti-Communist position. This monograph examines Thailand's current (1974) position and status as a nation within the Southeast Asian community.

2. Thailand and the Vietnam War

229. Glasser, Jeffrey D. *The Secret Vietnam War: The United States Air Force in Thailand, 1961-1975*. Jefferson, North Carolina: McFarland, 1998. 263 pp.

The author served in Thailand with the U.S. Air Force. This work describes activities of the U.S. Air Force in Thailand from 1961 to 1975. Wanting to avoid publicity the Thai government formulated a policy whereby any mention of U.S. presence was minimized. In reality the presence was anything but minimal as the U.S. maintained seven air bases in Thailand and combat sorties were flown into both North and South Vietnam, Laos, and Cambodia. This work is not a personal narrative but a history of one of the little-known parts of the Vietnam War.

230. Haseman, Major John B. USA. "Thailand and the Realities of Southeast Asia." *Military Review* 57:5 (May 1977), pp. 82-93.

This work summarizes Thailand's present (1977) relations with Laos, Cambodia, and the Democratic Republic of Vietnam – as well as with the U.S. The author observes that Thailand will strengthen its international diplomatic relations both with the United States and its neighbors and, thus, will become a stabilizing force in Southeast Asia.

231. Kershaw, Roger. "Thailand After Vietnam: After Vietnam Thailand?: The Directions of Thai Diplomacy in 1975." *Asian Affairs* 63:1 (February 1976), pp. 19-32.

The author states that the U.S. will continue to maintain some type of presence in Thailand while Thailand's government will be obligated to protect U.S. interests located there.

232. Kux, Ernst. "Thailand in the Shadow of the Vietnam War." *Military Review* 48:7 (July 1968), pp. 54-58.

Originally published in the *Swiss Review of World Affairs* this article describes events that occurred in Thailand from 1965, when Communist China's Foreign Minister, Chen Xi, declared that a "war of liberation" had begun in Thailand.

233. Lomax, Louis E. *Thailand: The War That Is, The War That Will Be*. New York: Random House, 1967. 175 pp.

The author describes what is purported to be "another Vietnam in the making."

234. Nuechterlein, Donald E. "Thailand: Another Vietnam?" *Military Review* 47:6 (June 1967), pp. 59-63.

In this article the author raises questions about what the United States' role, with regard to Thailand, should be as well as Thailand's own internal security problems. The situation in Thailand (1967) is compared to that of Vietnam.

235. Tanham, George K. *Trial in Thailand*. New York: Crane, Russak and Company, Incorporated, 1974. 175 pp.

The subject of this work is the problems of Communism and insurgency in Thailand, and how the Thais are dealing with them. It focuses on what the U.S. role should be in light of U.S. involvement in Vietnam. The author served with the State Department as Special Assistant for Counterinsurgency at the U.S. Embassy in Bangkok. He observes that the lesson the United States learned is that it must reappraise its objectives.

III

Vietnam

A. General Studies

236. Bain, Chester A. *Vietnam: The Roots of Conflict*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Incorporated, 1967. 184 pp.

A short history of Vietnam to 1966 written from the viewpoint of the author who served in Naval Intelligence and as a foreign service officer in Vietnam. The author shows that the conflict was much more complicated than a mere clash of ideologies. The work includes a brief bibliography.

237. Bator, Victor. "One War – Two Vietnams." *Military Review* 47:6 (June 1967), pp. 82–88.

The arguments of both North and South Vietnam, for and against partition of the country, are presented in this brief article.

238. Buttinger, Joseph. *A Dragon Defiant: A Short History of Vietnam*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1972. 147 pp.

The author bases this work upon a series of lectures he presented in February 1971, at the Center for Vietnamese Studies, Southern Illinois University. The work begins with a description of the country and the Vietnamese people. The last chapter is based upon the Pentagon Papers and deals with Vietnam as an object of American military and political intervention.

239. ——. *The Smaller Dragon: A Political History of Vietnam*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1958. 535 pp.

This early (1958) work examines Vietnam from the days of Chinese rule through the French conquest of Indochina. The demise of French rule receives a rather superficial treatment. The author revised this now dated work in 1968 with his book *Vietnam: A Political History* (New York: Praeger). See entry number 241.

240. ——. *Vietnam: A Dragon Embattled*. 2 vols. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1967. 1,283 pp.

The first volume of this work describes the French involvement in Indochina and the road to war for the United States. The second volume discusses "Vietnam at War." This is very detailed and documented work. A very good source for the beginnings of the conflict up to 1967.

241. ——. *Vietnam: A Political History*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1968. 565 pp.

How the war was "Americanized" up to 1968 is the focus of this book. Events in Vietnam are covered from Chinese rule through the French colonial period to U.S. involvement. The author's postscript provides a good indicator and political barometer of the times (1968). This work was revised by the authors' 1972 book *A Dragon Defiant* (New York: Praeger). See entry number 238.

242. Cairns, J. F. *The Eagle and the Lotus: Western Intervention in Vietnam, 1847-1968*. Melbourne, Australia: Lansdowne Press, 1969. 250 pp.

A concise history of Vietnam, from the earliest ventures of the French, to the American involvement up to 1968 is presented in this work.

243. Crawford, Ann Caddell. *Customs and Culture of Vietnam*. Rutland, Vermont: C. E. Tuttle Company, Publishers, 1966. 259 pp.

For general information this book is a fact-filled guide to Vietnam. The appendices include information on national slogans, coat of arms and flag, tribal minorities, map, basic language information, Vietnamese military rank and insignia, and a historical summary.

244. Dareff, Hal. *The Story of Vietnam*. New York: Avon Books, 1966. 256 pp.

Two thousand years of Vietnamese history is the focus of the author in this work. The author discusses Vietnam's ancient past through the origins of America's involvement. This work was revised in 1971 (New York: Parent's Magazine Press).

245. du Berrier, Hilaire. *Background to Betrayal: The Tragedy of Vietnam*. Boston: Western Islands Publishers, 1965. 316 pp.

Now dated, but still of value, this work begins with U.S. aid to Vietnam during World War II and goes forward to 1956. It provides much information on what occurred in Indochina, up to the Vietnam War, among agencies and organizations of the American and Communist governments.

246. Duncanson, Dennis J. *Government and Revolution in Vietnam*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1968. 442 pp.

Published under the auspices of the Royal Institute of International Affairs, this work is a combination of personal observation and previously published material. This work opens with an examination of Vietnam as a world problem followed by a historical summary. The author includes information about American involvement (to 1968) and the internal strife within the South Vietnamese government.

247. Fall, Bernard B. "The History and Culture of Vietnam." *Naval War College Review* 23:6 (February 1971), pp. 48-54.

Originally delivered as a lecture at the Naval War College, this article surveys contemporary events in Southeast Asia by analyzing Vietnam's history and culture. The author discusses developments to the demise of French colonial rule.

248. ——. *The Two Viet-Nams: A Political and Military Analysis*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1968. 507 pp.

The author provides a personal narrative of his observations on the political and military situation in Vietnam to 1968. He concludes that freedom is at stake in Vietnam and that the seemingly endless governments by coup, in South Vietnam following the assassination of Diem, are relatively unimportant.

249. ——. *Viet-Nam Witness 1953-66*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1966. 363 pp.

Mr. Fall presents an early assessment of the events occurring in Indochina from the French defeat to the American military situation during mid-1966. In the Second Indochina War (Vietnam War) the author observes that Vietnam appears to be no closer to a military/political solution than it was before. This work documents events in both North and South Vietnam, the Viet Cong, French, and the Americans, as found in previous articles and essays written by Mr. Fall. The work is illustrated.

250. Fishel, Wesley R., ed. *Vietnam: Anatomy of a Conflict*. Itasca, Illinois: F. E. Peacock Publishers, Incorporated, 1968. 879 pp.

This collection of essays covers a multitude of topics relevant to the Vietnam War. The contents include a discussion of Vietnam in its historical perspective, North and South Vietnam after Geneva 1954, Communism and revolution, the military war, pacification, the international impact of Vietnam, and the question of how the war will end (as posed in 1968).

251. Goldston, Robert. *The Vietnamese Revolution*. Indianapolis: The Bobbs-Merrill Company, Incorporated, 1972. 194 pp.

Studying the origins of the war in Vietnam, coupled with “close-ups” of individual events, this book provides a good picture. The author observes that during the years immediately following 1965, the struggle in Vietnam became a war without an end and the Vietnamese Revolution finally reached the United States where it expressed itself in a wave of antiwar protests. Illustrations and a bibliography are included.

252. Gurton, Melvin. *The First Vietnam Crisis: Chinese Communist Strategy and United States Involvement, 1953–1954*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1967. 228 pp.

Sino-Vietnamese relations and American intervention is the subject of this work published, in part, by the East Asian Institute of Columbia University. It discusses the Chinese Communist policy of “peaceful coexistence” and the Chinese claims of willingly abiding by “time-honored diplomatic methods.” It also looks at the long-range importance of Vietnam to China. The lesson of Indochina, for the U.S., is to review the methods for dealing with “national revolutionary war.” The bibliography includes memoirs, papers, government documents, interviews, and correspondence.

253. Hammer, Ellen. *Vietnam Yesterday and Today*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, Contemporary Civilization Series, 1966. 282 pp.

The author summarizes her personal experience in Vietnam in this short history. This study follows the war to 1965. Washington’s failure to help Vietnamese nationalism express itself also failed to encourage movements within South Vietnam to check the Communists. As a result the United States was drawn into a full-scale Asian mainland war – a course the U.S. had tried to avoid since 1954. This work is illustrated.

254. Hess, Martha. *Then the Americans Came: Voices from Vietnam*. New Brunswick, New Jersey: Rutgers University Press, 1993. Published in paperback, 1994. 239 pp.

The author tells the story of the Vietnam War as told by the Vietnamese people – both north and south of the 17th parallel, who endured it. Although the accounts are brief each is a compelling story. This work provides an entirely different perspective on the war.

255. Huynh Kim Khanh. *Vietnamese Communism, 1925–1945*. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press, Institute for Southeast Asian Studies, 1982. 379 pp.

This study is a comprehensive account of the leadership, ideology, and tactics of the International Communist Party with regard to its success in Vietnam. This informative work will be of interest to the student of Vietnamese history, the history of Communism, or the U.S. involvement in Vietnam. Maps and illustrations complete the work.

256. Irving, R. E. M. *The First Indochina War: French and American Policy 1945–54*. New York: Crane, Russak and Company, Incorporated, 1975. 169 pp.

This work reviews French policy in Indochina between 1945 and 1954. The author develops the theme of increasing American involvement as well. Irving observes that by 1953–54, the U.S. was already paying for two-thirds of the cost of the war. The author further contends that Secretary of State Dulles was convinced of the need to halt Communism but was opposed to direct U.S. intervention, especially after Dien Bien Phu because it would have associated the U.S. with a colonial nation. The United States believed that if it disassociated itself from colonial powers, ex-colonies such as Vietnam would support the Americans in the struggle against Communism.

257. Katz, Mark N. “Origins of the Vietnam War, 1945–48.” *Review of Politics* 42:2 (April 1980), pp. 131–51.

The early conflict in Vietnam during the crucial period of 1945 to 1948 is outlined in this article. The author describes how the Japanese, at the end of the Second World War, aided in the establishment of the Viet Minh as a functioning government. He adds a lengthy list of problems encountered by the French as they struggled to re-exert colonial control. Contrary to American and French beliefs, early backing of the Viet Minh lay solely on a domestic base and not with the Soviet Union which then ignored Ho Chi Minh.

258. Kurland, Dr. Gerald. *The Conflict in Vietnam*. Charlottesville, New York: SamHar Press, 1973. 29 pp.

It is remarkable that one could publish an entire history of Vietnam, from ancient days to the 1970s, in only 29 pages. If you are looking for a very “brief” summary of Vietnamese history see this work.

259. Lamb, Helen B. *Vietnam's Will to Live: Resistance to Foreign Aggression from Early Times Through the Nineteenth Century*. New York: Monthly Review Press, 1972. 344 pp.

How the Vietnamese, as a people and a nation, have survived from the days of Chinese rule through the American struggle, is assessed in this work. The author believes that the U.S. succeeded in fomenting anti-American sentiment throughout Indochina. "The steadfastness and resolve of the Vietnamese resistance today in the face of America's frightful capacity and willingness to destroy is yet another awesome testimony to Vietnam's will to live."

260. Ly Qui Chung, ed. *Between Two Fires: The Unheard Voices of Vietnam*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1970. 119 pp.

This short work tells the story of the Vietnamese people caught in the midst of the war. The introduction is written by Frances FitzGerald.

261. McAlister, John T., Jr. *Viet Nam: The Origins of Revolution*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Incorporated, 1970. 390 pp.

Using access to classified French documents, the author provides insight into the problems the French encountered in Indochina. This work was originally published for Princeton University's Center for International Studies. The author prefaces his work by stating that to understand the politics of Vietnam one requires an understanding of revolution. The theme is then developed that during 80 years of colonial rule France did little to develop the political institutions of Vietnam. The bibliography contains useful French documents.

262. McAlister, John T., Jr., and Paul Mus. *The Vietnamese and Their Revolution*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1970. 173 pp.

Using the Vietnamese example the authors seek to define the meaning of revolution. They examine Vietnamese political traditions and society as well as the Marxist point of view. This work is based largely upon the translation of Professor Mus' work *Viet Nam: Sociologie d'une Guerre* (1952). Professor Mus was the last French official to negotiate with Ho Chi Minh in 1947.

263. Marr, David G. *Vietnamese Tradition on Trial, 1920–1945*. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1981. 480 pp.

Why did the Vietnamese choose Marxism-Leninism as their pathway to independence from French colonialism? The author addresses this question in this intellectual history of the Vietnamese, their revolution, and their search for independence. The work is illustrated.

264. Newman, Bernard. *Background to Viet-nam*. New York: Signet Books, The New American Library, 1965. 223 pp.

In this work the author concentrates on the 20-year period, from 1945 to 1965, of Vietnamese history and provides insight into the problems encountered in that period. The work is illustrated.

265. Sheldon, Walter J. *Tigers in the Rice: The Story of Vietnam from Ancient Past to Uncertain Future*. New York: Crowell-Collier Press, 1969. 133 pp.

This is a concise work outlining Vietnam's history and uncertain future. A map and bibliography are included.

266. Smith, Ralph Bernard. *Viet-Nam and the West*. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press, 1971. 206 pp.

This is an essay on the tragic relationship of Vietnam to Western nations. The argument is put forth that the U.S. policy in Vietnam was based on the assumption, echoed by Secretary of State Dean Acheson in 1950, that America was interested in the people of Southeast Asia and in halting Communism. The best means of accomplishing this policy was to provide soundness in government and to develop technical skills and resources. Unfortunately, few people realized that this policy was "Americo-centric" and not in the best interests of the Vietnamese people.

267. Turley, William S., ed. *Vietnamese Communism in Comparative Perspective*. Boulder, Colorado: Westview Press, 1980. 271 pp.

A collection of essays written by nine French and American scholars comparing Vietnamese Communism with that of other Communist nations.

268. Turner, Robert F. *Vietnamese Communism: Its Origins and Development*. Stanford, California: Hoover Institution Press, 1975. 517 pp.

This work outlines the first 40 years of Vietnamese Communism. The author describes how the Communist Party rose from obscurity to the current ruling class. The career of Ho Chi Minh is detailed in this work as well as his efforts at maintaining a balance between Moscow and Peking, to satisfy both cities in maintaining their support for the Communist cause in Vietnam. The author relies heavily on the writings of other Vietnamese Communist leaders including Le Duan and Vo Nguyen Giap.

B. The French Experience

269. Biggio, Colonel Charles P., Jr. USA. "Let's Learn from the French." *Military Review* 46:10 (October 1966), pp. 27-34.

The United States, according to the author, needs to learn from the lessons taught to the French in Indochina. These lessons dealt with similarities of terrain and climate, the same enemy, the same principles and tactics, no means of closing the borders to enemy incursions, and an environment that facilitated guerrilla operations.

270. Devillers, Philippe, and Jean Lacoutre. *End of a War: Indochina, 1954*. Translated by Alexander Lieven and Adam Roberts. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1969. 412 pp.

The end of the French colonial empire, the “French War” in Indochina, and the beginnings of the “American War” are examined in this work. The authors conclude that the United States merely replaced the French and once more Vietnam was turned into an object of conflict for the great powers. A bibliography and index are included.

271. Doyle, Edward, Samuel Lipsman, and Stephen Weiss. *The Vietnam Experience: Passing the Torch*. Vol. 2. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1981. 208 pp.

The return of the French to Indochina, following the Second World War, and the United States assumption of the French role are studied in this volume. Many excellent photographs and maps illustrate the text. A good bibliography is included and a list of names, terms, and acronyms is provided.

272. Fall, Bernard B. *Hell in a Very Small Place: The Siege of Dien Bien Phu*. New York: J. B. Lippincott Company, 1967. 515 pp.

A complete account of the French debacle of Dien Bien Phu in 1954. This work details the preparations of both sides, French and Communist, as they prepared for what was to be a disastrous defeat for France. The author describes the leaders for both sides and their qualifications or lack thereof. Sadly, this book was published after the United States had picked up where France left off.

273. ——. *Street Without Joy*. 4th ed. Harrisburg, Pennsylvania: The Stackpole Company, 1964. 408 pp.

In this book the author details events from the French struggle with the Viet Minh to the plight of the Americans to 1963. Fall found that the U.S. was already repeating the French mistakes because the Viet Cong were using the same methods with deadly efficiency against the South Vietnamese and their American advisors. *Street Without Joy* is a list of lessons which went unheeded by the Americans. Maps and illustrations complement the text. Also, a glossary, a comparison of French and American losses in Indochina, a report

on the situation in Indochina, and a military bibliography for Indochina are included.

274. Hammer, Ellen J. *The Struggle for Indochina*. Stanford, California: Stanford University Press, 1954. 342 pp.

A dated (1954) yet well-written account of the turmoil in Indochina from 1945 to 1954. The author questions the need for American intervention prior to the actual landing of troops.

275. —. *The Struggle for Indochina Continues: Geneva to Bandung*. Stanford, California: Stanford University Press, 1955. 40 pp.

This brief supplementary work updates her work published in 1954 (see entry number 274). In this work the author includes a very frank discussion of Ngo Dinh Diem's ability as a leader.

276. Long, Colonel William F., Jr. USA. "The Specter of Dien Bien Phu." *Military Review* 46:10 (October 1966), pp. 35–39.

The French defeat at Dien Bien Phu, according to the author, became a metaphor for defeat of the West by the East. The author contends that Communist China could never again achieve this kind of defeat of a European power.

277. Nordell, John R., Jr. *The Undetected Enemy: French and American Miscalculations at Dien Bien Phu*. College Station, Texas: Texas A & M University Press, 1995. 217 pp.

France's attempt at restoring its colonial empire in Indochina, following the Second World War, is the focus of this recent reevaluation of the siege at Dien Bien Phu. Beginning in 1946 the author examines the fighting between the Viet Minh (forerunner of the Viet Cong) and French troops. He examines France's commitment to military operations to retake Indochina which ended in the failed siege at Dien Bien Phu (March–May 1954) with France ultimately surrendering and losing Indochina. He also looks at the U.S. failure to act under President Eisenhower.

278. Randle, Robert F. *Geneva 1954: The Settlement of the Indochinese War*. Princeton, New Jersey: Princeton University Press, 1969. 639 pp.

The Geneva Conference of 1954 and the settlements which affected Vietnam, Laos, and Cambodia are the focus of this work. Detailed accounts of the events encompassing the signing of the treaty are recalled. The author contends that the Geneva Conference made most Americans aware of French losses and not the benefits or gains. Illustrations, a bibliography, and index are included.

279. Roy, Jules. *The Battle of Dienbienphu*. New York: Carroll and Graf Publishers, Incorporated, 1984. 344 pp.

The author, a former French officer, spent months in both North and South Vietnam compiling material to write this book about the climatic battle for the destiny of French Indochina. This most recent edition is a reprint of two earlier editions, the first in 1963 (Paris: Rene Julliard) and the second in 1965 (New York: Harper and Row). This book was a best seller in France. The book is illustrated and contains biographical sketches of the major participants.

280. Thompson, W. Scott. "Lessons from the French in Vietnam." *Naval War College Review* 27:5 (March–April 1975), pp. 43–52.

The American failure to learn from the French experience in Indochina is discussed in this article. Ironically, the U.S. never considered eliciting French advice even though it supported France in Indochina. The author concludes, of the French lessons in Vietnam, "We failed to learn them once, but our own experience will hopefully prevent us from the same mistakes a second time."

C. The Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam)

1. General Studies

281. Andrews, William R. *The Village War: Vietnamese Communist Revolutionary Activities in Dinh Tuong Province 1960–1964*. Columbia, Missouri: University of Missouri Press, 1973. 156 pp.

This short study examines the Vietnam Worker's Party activities in the rural villages of the Mekong Delta province of Dinh Tuong. RAND Corporation interrogation reports, of former party members, were used as source material. A very useful work. The author was an Army officer assigned to the U.S. Information Agency in the Upper Mekong Delta.

282. Cadden, Robert. "Government by Coup: The Militarization of Political Power in South Viet Nam 1960–65." *Viet Nam Journal* 1 (1981), pp. 4–8.

The Buddhist crisis and the militarization of the South Vietnamese government, between 1960 and 1965, is the focus of this brief article. The author observes that the U.S. and South Vietnam were defeated by "General Confusion."

283. Dooley, Thomas A. M. D. *Deliver Us From Evil: The Story of Viet Nam's Flight to Freedom*. New York: Farrar, Straus and Cudahy, 1962. 214 pp.

The personal experiences of Lieutenant Tom Dooley, M.D., USN, in Indochina just after the French defeat at Dien Bien Phu and prior to American involvement. Working in large refugee centers this young navy doctor cared for thousands and earned the respect and admiration of the Vietnamese people. One of the early (1962) accounts about Vietnam and Southeast Asia.

284. Goodman, Allan E. "Government and the Countryside: Political Accommodation and South Viet Nam's Communal Groups." *Orbis* 13:2 (summer 1969), pp. 502-25.

South Vietnamese religious and ethnic communal groups is the focus of this article. The author comments on the Cao Dai, Hoa Hao, and Catholics as religious groups and the Khmer, Montagnard, and Chinese as the ethnic groups. The Saigon government must provide political support to preserve these traditional communal entities.

285. —. *Politics in War: The Bases of Political Community in South Vietnam*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1973. 313 pp.

In this work the author examines the fragmentation of Vietnamese politics which prevents effective political organizations from emerging. Goodman conducted research and interviews, in Vietnam, with political leaders and government officials. The result is this technical assessment of the organization and operation of the South Vietnamese government and politics.

286. Henderson, William. "South Viet Nam Finds Itself." *Foreign Affairs* 35:2 (January 1957), pp. 283-94.

This dated (1957) article analyzes South Vietnam, after Geneva, but prior to the Diem coup. The author examines Diem's control of the army and the expulsion of the French as well as the deposition of Emperor Bao Dai. The author purports that a foundation has been laid by the South Vietnamese and the U.S. must provide "friendship, support, and material aid" for South Vietnam to survive. In hindsight, all of these provisions were made yet the outcome was disastrous.

287. Hickey, Gerald C. *Village in Vietnam*. New Haven, Connecticut: Yale University Press, 1964. 325 pp.

A look at Vietnamese village structure and life is presented in this book. The author interrelates the entire fabric of Vietnamese village life and social institutions in the Mekong Delta. The work emerged from the author's early study (1960) *The Study of a Vietnamese Rural Community-Sociology* (Saigon: Michigan State University Viet-Nam Advisory Group).

288. Higgins, Marguerite. *Our Vietnam Nightmare*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1965. 314 pp.

Relying upon her travels in Vietnam the author presents this story from the perspective of the Vietnamese. She refers to South Vietnamese Premier Diem as the “Misunderstood Mandarin.” The book proceeds through the entire litany of plots and coups, the Buddhist uprising, and finally to “our” (U.S.) Vietnam nightmare. Quoting Confucius, the author states: “A man who knows he has made a mistake and does not correct it makes another mistake.” This is in reference to U.S. policy in Vietnam to 1965. Dated but still a valuable work.

289. Joiner, Charles A. *The Politics of Massacre: Political Processes in South Vietnam*. Philadelphia: Temple University Press, 1974. 346 pp.

This study details the important role that South Vietnamese politics played in the Indochina War. Highly critical of the Vietnamese political process, the author examines the parties involved in possible future elections or coalitions – Communist and neutralist – as well as nonaligned religious and political groups.

290. *The Montagnards of South Vietnam*. London: Minority Rights Group, 1974. 28 pp.

Prepared by the Minority Rights Group this study looks at the possibility of a minority group – the Montagnards, becoming extinct. Illustrated.

291. Montgomery, John D. “Land Reform as a Means to Political Development in VietNam.” *Orbis* 12:1 (spring 1968), pp. 19–38.

The author contends that rural apathy, in Vietnamese peasants, combined with over-zealous American officials, has led to problems in land reform. The Vietnamese want their own farms, and landlessness has contributed to their restlessness. Reforms are necessary if the government of South Vietnam is to achieve true national visibility.

292. Nguyen Duy Hinh, Major General, and Brigadier General Tran Dinh Tho. *The South Vietnamese Society*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monographs, 1980. 175 pp.

The Vietnamese perspective on U.S. – Republic of Vietnam efforts to build a strong South Vietnam is the focus of this work. The impact of U.S. aid and the American presence in South Vietnam is also examined. A glossary is included.

293. Pham Quoc Thuan, Major General. ARVN. “A Vietnamese Solution.” *Military Review* 51:6 (June 1971), pp. 91–96.

The author contends that if South Vietnam had continued to receive food, money, and manpower, it could have won the war.

294. Race, Jeffrey. *War Comes to Long An: Revolutionary Conflict in a Vietnamese Province*. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1972. 299 pp.

The success of a revolutionary social movement in one Vietnamese province is described in this work. The achievement of this success is based upon the Communist technique of a people's war. Written from firsthand experiences of the author who was a U.S. Army advisor in Phuoc Tuy Province in 1967. A glossary of terms and acronyms is useful – especially those in Vietnamese.

295. Sansom, Robert L. *The Economics of Insurgency in the Mekong Delta of Vietnam*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: M. I. T. Press, 1970. 283 pp.

An examination of agricultural and economic aspects of land reform in the Mekong River Delta is presented in this study. The work is illustrated.

296. Scigliano, Robert. *South Vietnam: Nation Under Stress*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1963. 237 pp.

Early (1963) account of events occurring in South Vietnam from 1954 to 1963. This work is less a history and more of an assessment of the major developments there. The author concludes that the dominant American objective in Vietnam, since 1950, has been the containment of Communism. The problem of American policy is how to use power wisely in Vietnam's internal balance of power. A very good select bibliography is provided.

297. Smith, Harvey H., Donald W. Bernier, Frederica M. Bunge, Frances Chadwick Rintz, Rinn-Sup Shinn, and Suzanne Teleki. Department of the Army Pamphlet 550-55. *Area Handbook for South Vietnam*. Washington, D.C.: Department of the Army, Foreign Area Studies, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 510 pp.

Many maps compliment this analysis of South Vietnam's society, politics, economics, and national security. This publication was prepared during the war. A chart illustrating South Vietnamese military rank and insignia is useful. An assessment of South Vietnamese military capabilities is included.

298. *South Vietnam: A Political History 1954-1970*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1970. 168 pp.

The Diem regime, the National Liberation Front (NLF), the Buddhist resistance, the aftermath of Tet 1968, and the early years of

the Thieu regime are examined in this study. The index is arranged according to the order of appearance of the individuals listed in the text.

299. Trullinger, James Walker, Jr. *Village at War: An Account of Revolution in Vietnam*. New York: Longman, 1980. 235 pp.

Village structure in Vietnamese culture is very important. This work traces the history of Vietnamese village life and the impact that the war had upon it. This work covers the period from the end of French colonialism to the end of U.S. involvement in 1975.

300. U.S. Department of Defense. "Political Development in South Vietnam." *Vietnam Review* 8 (February 1968). Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1968. 4 pp.

Short publication summarizing the Vietnamese provincial elections, constituent assembly elections, and the national government elections of 1967 which elected Thieu President of South Vietnam. Illustrations.

301. U.S. Department of State. *A Threat to the Peace: North Viet-Nam's Effort to Conquer South Viet Nam*. Publication 7308. Far Eastern Series Number 110. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1961. 53 pp.

This early (1961) State Department pamphlet describes events in Vietnam up to 1961. Although dated this short work urges U.S. action and intervention on behalf of South Vietnam.

302. *Vietnam: The View Beyond the Battle*. Saigon: U.S. Military Assistance Command, 1967. np.

This illustrated work provides a glimpse at the South Vietnamese working to improve their nation. It provides useful information about the South Vietnamese economy, efforts to defeat the Viet Cong, and health and education programs.

303. Vu Van Cuong (Tam). *Vietnam's War, 1940–1975*. Lawrenceville, Virginia: Brunswick Publishing, 1983. 456 pp.

Written by a former high ranking politician with the South Vietnamese government this work analyzes the causes for the French and American failures in Vietnam from their perspective.

304. White, Peter T. "Behind the Headlines in Viet Nam." *National Geographic* 131:2 (February 1967), pp. 149–93.

A beautifully illustrated article concerning the people of South Vietnam during the escalation of the war prior to the Tet Offensive

of 1968. It provides very useful information on the city of Hue. The article includes maps. Written for the general reader.

305. ——. "The Mekong: River of Terror and Hope." *National Geographic* 134:6 (December 1968), pp. 737-87.

The origin and use of the Mekong river is the subject of this illustrated article. Information about the "Mekong Project" – the U.S. plan to harness the power of the river is detailed. General reading.

2. U.S. Aid

306. Anderson, Charles R. *Vietnam: The Other War*. San Rafael, California: Presidio Press, 1982. 224 pp.

The Civic Action Program (CAP) is the primary focus of this work. The author details the purpose of service and support troops and how they functioned in Vietnam. This work is generally devoted to life in "rear" areas away from combat. The author also wrote *The Grunts*. Illustrated.

307. Beechy, Atlee, and Winifred Beechy. *Vietnam: Who Cares?* Scottdale, Pennsylvania: Herald Press, 1968. 154 pp.

A brief summary of war work and civilian relief projects, provided for South Vietnamese victims of the war, by various church organizations. The authors spent six months in South Vietnam, in 1966, with the Vietnam Christian Service. The Atlees were Mennonites who spent their life in service to Christ.

308. Le Hoang Trong. "Survival and Self-Reliance: A Vietnamese Viewpoint." *Asian Survey* 15:4 (April 1975), pp. 281-301.

The author suggests that U.S. aid to South Vietnam be redirected and not to be discontinued. More help is needed for development and self-reliance and less for conspicuous consumption and defense. The author contends that such a program needs to provide loans and not outright grants of aid.

309. Tanham, George K. *War Without Guns: American Civilians in Rural Vietnam*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1966. 141 pp.

The Office of Provincial Operations, a part of the U.S. Aid Mission in South Vietnam, is detailed in this brief work. The author is concerned with the work of American advisors in three provinces – one for each of the three major geographical sub-divisions of Vietnam. The work is illustrated.

310. U.S. Department of Defense. "Legal Basis for U.S. Military Aid to South Vietnam." *Vietnam Review* 7 (November 1967). Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1968. 4 pp.

A very brief discussion of SEATO, the Geneva Accords of 1954, and the U.S. Constitution as the basis for American military intervention in South Vietnam is described in this article.

311. Wilson, Specialist Fifth Class Steve. USARV. "Battle Without Bullets." *Army Digest* 23:3 (March 1968), pp. 41–43.

The Civil Operations and Revolutionary Development Support (CORDS) program, created in May 1967, is described in this article. CORDS helped to deliver medical care, feed the hungry, provide education, and so forth, in order to help the Vietnamese in their fight against Communism.

3. Leaders

312. Black, Edwin F. "The Role of Buddhism in the Overthrow of Diem." *Orbis* 14:4 (winter 1971), pp. 992–1011.

Both a religious as well as a political force, in Vietnam, Buddhism was a contributing factor in the overthrow of Premier Diem. This article examines the tragic and violent events which occurred in South Vietnam in 1963. It explains Buddhist mistrust of the Catholic family that surrounded Diem. The author observes that, for Vietnamese Buddhists, Buddhism cannot remain a pure religion if it becomes a political force.

313. Bouscaren, Anthony Trawick. *The Last of the Mandarins: Diem of Vietnam*. Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania: Duquesne University Press, 1965. 174 pp.

This is a biography of the former President of the Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam), Ngo Dinh Diem, and the Washington-backed coup to depose him and his brother, Ngo Dinh Nhu. In 1961 President Lyndon Johnson described President Diem as the "Winston Churchill of Asia."

314. Miller, Edward. "Vision, Power, and Agency: The Ascent of Ngô Dinh Diêm, 1945–54." *Journal of Southeast Asian Studies* 35:3 (October 2004), pp. 433–58.

This article revisits the South Vietnamese leader who was killed in a bloody coup, in 1963, along with his brother Ngô Dinh Nhu. The

author reaches three conclusions regarding Diem. First, he was not lacking in backers as is often suggested. Second, he was neither beholden to the U.S., nor a follower of their advice. Finally, the words and actions of Diem, from 1945 to 1954, portray himself as being something other than interested in modernizing and developing his country.

315. Warner, Denis. *The Last Confucian*. New York: Macmillan Company, 1963. 274 pp.

Reflections on Ngo Dinh Diem and Ho Chi Minh make good background reading in this personal narrative, based upon the author's experience as a reporter in Indochina. The end papers of this book contain data about the countries of Southeast Asia.

4. South Vietnamese Accounts of the War

316. Cao Van Vien, General. *The Final Collapse*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monographs, 1983. 184 pp.

The South Vietnamese perspective on the events which occurred from 1972 to 1975 and the circumstances leading to the conquest of South Vietnam are detailed in this monograph.

317. —. "Vietnam: What Next? The Strategy of Isolation." *Military Review* 52:4 (April 1972), pp. 22-30.

The author, a South Vietnamese army officer, reviews events that occurred in South Vietnam up to 1971 – the point of deadlock in the fighting. After that, according to General Vien, a new strategy evolved – isolation. The main points of this strategy are discussed describing both its merits and limitations.

318. —. and Lieutenant General Dong Van Khuyen. *Reflections on the Vietnam War*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monographs, 1980. 165 pp.

Written by former South Vietnamese military leaders, this is a four-part analysis of the Vietnam War – from their perspective. The four parts include nation-building and insurgency from 1954 to 1963, the Americanization of the war from 1964 to 1967, the Vietnamization of the war from 1968 to 1972, and the struggle for survival from 1973 to 1975. The authors conclude that "North Vietnam sought to achieve two objectives: first, to reunify by force and, second, to defeat American imperialism." It (North Vietnam) achieved the first objective but failed in the second as the U.S. terminated its war

effort in the 1973 Paris agreement. The final tragedy was the failure of South Vietnam's military leaders.

319. Engelmann, Larry. *Tears Before the Rain: An Oral History of the Fall of South Vietnam*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1990. 376 pp.

This is an extensive collection of over 300 interviews gathered from a representation of all of the participants in the war who were present in South Vietnam when it fell to the North Vietnamese in 1975. Soldiers, civilians, adults, children, politicians – from both sides, the author weaves their recollections into a riveting account of the end of the war. I included this work in this section because of the large number of interviews with Vietnamese people.

320. Nguyen Cao Ky. *Twenty Years and Twenty Days*. New York: Stein and Day, 1976. 239 pp.

Nguyen Cao Ky was the former prime minister of the Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam). This work represents an important narrative of why the war was lost – from the perspective of the South Vietnamese. Published in paperback as *How We Lost the Vietnam War* (1984). Not only was Ky the former prime minister but he also served as premier, general, and air marshal. Ky believes that one reason for the defeat was that the Americans tried to buy the support of the South Vietnamese. This is a book worthy of reading simply due to the significance of the positions which the author held.

321. Pham Van Son, Lieutenant Colonel. *TET – 1968*. 2 vols. Salisbury, North Carolina: Documentary Publications, 1980.

Originally published as *The Viet Cong “Tet” Offensive* (1968) this work presents the South Vietnamese perspective on the massive attack upon their country and the fighting in 1968.

322. Tran Van Don. *Our Endless War: Inside Vietnam*. San Rafael, California: Presidio Press, 1979. 278 pp.

An inside look at the widespread corruption pervasive in the South Vietnamese government, from the end of the French experience to the final evacuation from Saigon, is detailed in this work. The author rose to the rank of Lieutenant General in the Army of the Republic of Vietnam (ARVN), and, in 1964, he was named Minister of National Defense for South Vietnam. This is his perspective of the events which ended with the defeat of the South Vietnamese military.

D. The Democratic Republic of Vietnam (North Vietnam)

1. General Studies

323. Aptheker, Herbert. *Mission to Hanoi*. New York: International Publishers, 1966. 128 pp.

This book is a record of the author's visit to Hanoi, accompanied by Tom Hayden and Staughton Lynd, during Christmas 1965. Divided into three parts the book first examines the author's experiences in North Vietnam, second, his estimation of the case against administration policies, and third, the views of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam (DRV) and the National Liberation Front (NLF). A brief, select bibliography is included.

324. Buehl, Lieutenant Colonel Louis H. USMC. "Marxist Nation Building in the Democratic Republic of Vietnam." *Naval War College Review* 22:6 (February 1970), pp. 85–101.

From the surrender of the Japanese, in 1945, to American involvement to 1965, this article analyzes Ho Chi Minh's influence and the role of the National Liberation Front and the Viet Cong in the Democratic Republic of Vietnam.

325. Burchett, Wilfred G. *Vietnam North*. New York: International Publishers, 1966. 191 pp.

This dated (1966) book describes events in North Vietnam through 1966. This is an important look at events, at that time, based upon the author's seven-week visit in the Democratic Republic of Vietnam. While there, the author interviewed Ho Chi Minh and Pham Van Dong. Mr. Burchett suggests that the United States should withdraw from South Vietnam.

326. Cameron, James. *Here is Your Enemy: Complete Report from North Vietnam*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1966. 144 pp.

Critical of the United States war effort, this work provides a glimpse of the North Vietnamese people. It is based upon the author's visit to the DRV in 1965.

327. Chaliand, Gerard. *The Peasants of North Vietnam*. Translated by Peter Wiles. Baltimore: Penguin Books, 1969. 244 pp.

A revealing look at the North Vietnamese people's will to live is offered in this work based upon the author's trip to North Vietnam in 1967. Four North Vietnamese provinces are examined.

328. *Gunners Without Insignia*. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing House, 1966. np.

The title applies to the thousands of North Vietnamese citizens who are ready to bear arms against the U.S. and is the topic of this publication. Nine brief personal narratives comprise this anti-American tract.

329. Honey, P. J. "North Vietnam and Its Neighbours." *Conflict Studies* 11 (February 1971), pp. 1-16.

A concise view of Hanoi's immediate neighbors (Laos and Cambodia) is presented in this article. The author also looks at Hanoi's northern neighbors – the Soviet Union and the People's Republic of China. Thailand is discussed as well. The relations between the Democratic Republic of Vietnam to these other nations is the focus.

330. —. ed. *North Vietnam Today: Profile of a Communist Satellite*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1968. 166 pp.

Daily life in North Vietnam is profiled in this book. Most of the material was first published in 1962, in the *China Quarterly*.

331. Johnson, Chalmers. *Autopsy on People's War*. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1974. 125 pp.

The author gives a brief work analyzing the origins and applications of people's war. Because the title – "People's War," was originated by Mao Tse-tung, this type of war became of great concern to the U.S. military amidst fears regarding the People's Republic of China's expressed desire to destroy us.

332. Riboud, Marc, photographer. *Face of North Vietnam*. Text by Philippe Devillers. New York: Holt, Rinehart, and Winston, Incorporated, 1970.

The soldiers, people, and country of North Vietnam are reflected in this photonarrative. The pictures portray the determination of the North Vietnamese as well as the destruction of their country. The photographer worked for *Magnum*.

333. Salisbury, Harrison E. *Behind the Lines – Hanoi December 23, 1966–January 7, 1967*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1967. 243 pp.

This book is a personal narrative of the author's visit to Hanoi during Christmas and New Year of 1966–67. While in Hanoi Salisbury interviewed North Vietnamese Premier Pham Van Dong among others. Salisbury concludes that the North Vietnamese viewed

the war as a colonial war motivated by U.S. imperialist aspirations. Salisbury was a correspondent for the *New York Times*.

334. Smith, Harvey H., Donald W. Bernier, Frederica M. Bunge, Frances Chadwick Rintz, Rinn-Sup Shinn, and Suzanne Teleki. Department of the Army Pamphlet 550-57. *Area Handbook for North Vietnam*. Washington, D.C.: Department of the Army, Foreign Area Studies, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 494 pp.

Written during the war this work is an analysis of the social, political, economic, and national security of North Vietnam. The maps are useful and a lengthy bibliography is included. A chart of North Vietnamese Army rank and insignia is included to make this a useful study.

335. *South Vietnam 1954-1955/Articles and Documents*. Vietnamese Studies Number 8. Hanoi: Xunhasaba, 1966. 205 pp.

A collection of articles and documents, written by North Vietnamese leaders, including General Vo Nguyen Giap, on "The Liberation War in South Vietnam: Its Essential Characteristics." Some maps (color) and illustrations are included.

336. Truong Chinh. *Primer for Revolt: The Communist Takeover in Vietnam*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1966. 213 pp.

North Vietnamese Communist writings have been collected in this single-volume work including reprints of "The August Revolution" (Hanoi, 1962) and "The Resistance Will Win" (Hanoi, 1960). Both give an "early" look into how events unfolding south of the 17th parallel were viewed in the north. The introduction was written by Bernard B. Fall.

337. Van Dyke, Jon M. *North Vietnam's Strategy for Survival*. Palo Alto, California: Pacific Books, Publishers, 1972. 336 pp.

The U.S. bombing campaign against North Vietnam, from 1965 to 1968, and the results are discussed in this work. One lesson the United States learned is: people become more resistant to bombing attacks rather than succumbing to them. Clearly, the U.S. failed to force Hanoi to the bargaining table solely through bombing. A chronological essay on the bombing attacks plus statistics on aircraft losses and bomb tonnage are included.

338. Van Tien Dung, General. *After Political Failure the U.S. Imperialists Are Facing Military Defeat in South Vietnam*. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing House, 1966. 68 pp.

Written by the Chief of Vietnam's People's Army General Staff, this short work examines events in South Vietnam, to March 1966. The author clearly makes the point that the United States will be defeated. Of use is a map which shows the locations of attacks on U.S. military and air bases.

339. *Viet Nam: A Sketch*. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing House, 1971. 143 pp.

A short Vietnamese history written by the North Vietnamese. The work includes chapters on DRV foreign relations and U.S. aggression. The book calls Vietnam the "Crossroads of Southeast Asia." Of interest is information on the national anthem of the DRV, their flag and emblem.

340. Woodside, Alexander B. *Community and Revolution in Modern Vietnam*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1976. 351 pp.

After two wars in Indochina involving Western nations the author observes that it took the Communist revolutionaries only 27 months to reconquer the South. This work is based upon the author's course in Vietnamese history and culture at Harvard University. A suggested reading list is included.

2. Communist Relations and Influence

341. Duiker, William J. *The Communist Road to Power in Vietnam*. Boulder, Colorado: Westview Special Studies on South and Southeast Asia, 1981. 393 pp.

The rise of the Vietnamese Communists, from 1900 to the conquest of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, is examined in this work. The author has written extensively on Vietnamese nationalism and Communism. Broad use of Communist sources was made in the preparation of this work.

342. Harrison, James Pinckney. *The Endless War: Fifty Years of Struggle in Vietnam*. New York: The Free Press, 1982. 320 pp.

How the Vietnamese Communists conducted their struggle to achieve their goals is the focus of this study. It examines their organization and ideology, tactics and strategy, and use of united front groups. Mr. Harrison begins this work with a study of the establishment, in 1925, of a revolutionary youth league by Ho Chi Minh. The book is illustrated.

343. Honey, P. J. *Communism in North Vietnam: Its Role in the Sino-Soviet Dispute*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: The M.I.T. Press, 1963. 207 pp.

This early (1963) work views North Vietnam in the context of the Sino-Soviet dispute (Communist nations had to identify their interests and choose the form of Communism they practiced). The factors bearing on North Vietnamese policies and leadership, their desire to find a path between two giants, and their attitude of desiring cordial relations with the two powers is examined.

344. Kirkpatrick, Lyman B., Jr. "Cold War Operations: The Policies of Communist Confrontation." *Naval War College Review* 21:3 (November 1968), pp. 57-63.

In 1968 the two most important factors affecting Communism, in Asia, were conditions in China and the war in Vietnam. This article was one of a series of lectures delivered on Cold War Operations and Asian Communism at the U.S. Naval War College.

345. Labin, Suzanne. "Killing Our Ally." *Military Review* 42:5 (May 1962), pp. 28-38.

Some of the methods employed by the Communists to undermine the government of South Vietnam including corruption, political warfare, and others, is examined by the author.

346. Le Duan. *The Vietnamese Revolution: Fundamental Problems Essential Tasks*. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing House, 1970. 195 pp.

Prepared on the occasion of the fortieth anniversary of the founding of the Indochinese Communist Party (Vietnam Worker's Party) this is First Secretary Le Duan's analysis of the problems, tasks, methods, and principles of the Vietnamese revolution. He goes on to examine revolutionary strategy, revolutionary action, socialist revolution, and the Party.

347. Russell, Dr Charles A., and Major Robert E. Hildner. USAF. "Revolutionary War: A Comparison of Chinese Communist and North Vietnamese Strategy and Tactics." *Air University Review* 24:2 (January–February 1973), pp. 2-12.

A comparison of North Vietnamese and Chinese Communist views on strategy and tactics, as applied to revolutionary warfare, is made in this article. The author describes the North Vietnamese views as being "adaptive" vis-à-vis the Chinese.

348. U.S. Department of Defense. "Communist 'Wars of National Liberation.'" *Vietnam Review* 10 (November 1968). Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1969. 4 pp.

A very brief summary of the characteristics of Communist “National Liberation Wars” is the subject of the DoD document. It includes a chronological listing of 14 undeclared wars of national liberation from 1945 to 1968.

349. Zagoria, Donald S. *Vietnam Triangle: Moscow, Peking, Hanoi*. New York: Pegasus, 1967. 286 pp.

The triangular interrelationship between the Soviet Union, the People’s Republic of China, and the Democratic Republic of Vietnam (North Vietnam) is the focus of this work. The author clarifies each Communist nation’s position, in regards to the Vietnam War, and shows the special interests of each.

3. National Liberation Movement (NLF)/Viet Cong (VC) – Historical and Political Studies

350. Berman, Paul. *Revolutionary Organization: Institution Building Within the People’s Liberation Armed Forces*. Lexington, Massachusetts: Lexington Books, D. C. Heath and Company, 1974. 249 pp.

Research for this work was based upon RAND Corporation interrogation reports. The author seeks to determine why Vietnamese peasants will obey a new authority. Excellent material is contained in this report regarding the complexities of Vietnamese village structure and life. Not intended for general reading.

351. Clapp, Colonel Archie J. USMC. “Don’t Envy the Enemy.” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 92:11 (November 1966), pp. 49–59.

The author examines the economic hardships of fighting a war in Vietnam, as endured by the North Vietnamese. He concludes that the National Liberation Front (NLF) has “no possibility” of winning the war if the U.S. “stands firm in its commitments to the South Vietnamese government.” The author postulated this conclusion in 1966.

352. Hunt, David. “Remembering the Tet Offensive.” *Radical America* 11:6 (1977–1978), pp. 79–96.

The 1968 Tet Offensive was a remarkable military and political victory and it was the turning point of the efforts of the NLF in South Vietnam. The author observes that the NLF victory stimulated and inspired the political left, in many countries, including the U.S. Despite the high losses of men suffered by the NLF during the fighting, its insurgent capabilities did not diminish.

353. *An Outline History of the Viet Nam Workers' Party (1930-1970)*. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing House, 1970. 183 pp.

This concise history of the Vietnam Workers' Party is divided into four parts: a study of the struggle, the French, the socialist revolution, and resistance to U.S. aggression. The appendices contain some party documents.

354. Patton, Lieutenant Colonel George S. USA. "Why They Fight." *Military Review* 45:12 (December 1965), pp. 16-23.

Fifteen reasons why the Viet Cong are fighting, in South Vietnam, are presented by the author in this article. The most predominant reasons are nationalism, Communist propaganda, and effective leadership.

355. Pike, Douglas. *The Viet-Cong Strategy of Terror*. Saigon: U.S. Mission, Vietnam, 1970. 126 pp.

Focusing on the Viet Cong's use of terror as a weapon, this study describes the Communist doctrine concerning its use. The author presents a case study on the massacre of South Vietnamese civilians in Hue 1968. A partial chronology of terrorist events in South Vietnam from 1960 to 1969, is included.

356. —. *Viet Cong: The Organization and Techniques of the National Liberation Front of South Vietnam*. Center for International Studies, Series in International Communism, vol. 7. Cambridge, Massachusetts: The M.I.T. Press, 1967. 490 pp.

A detailed study of the organization and communication practices of the NLF in South Vietnam, is detailed in this work. The author writes that the principles of effective organization are vastly more important than Communist ideology. Some illustrations are included.

357. —. *War, Peace, and the Viet Cong*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: The M.I.T. Press, 1969. 186 pp.

In this work Mr. Pike focuses on the strategy, objectives, and interests of the Viet Cong. The opening chapter looks at the "contenders" in Vietnam and their objectives. These include the NLF, North Vietnam, Communist China, the Soviet Union, the Republic of Vietnam, and the U.S. The balance of the work examines the Viet Cong. Mr. Pike concludes that the symbolic bird of Vietnam is the Phoenix and, like that bird, Vietnam has repeatedly risen from the ashes "to become a stronger, wiser people."

358. *South Viet Nam National Front for Liberation. Documents*. South Vietnam: Giai Phong Publishing House, 1968. 150 pp.

Fifteen statements, programs, and communiqués of the NLF, in South Vietnam, make up this work. The general intention of this work is to help the reader to better understand the role of the NLF.

359. Tanham, George K. *Communist Revolutionary Warfare: The Vietminh in Indochina*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1961. 166 pp.

Although the work is dated (1961) the author presents a clear focus on the Viet Minh (predecessor of the Viet Cong) in this book. Their military doctrine, tactics, and organization, during the 1945-54 war with the French is examined. This work was prepared as a part of a study for the RAND Corporation. The author concludes that the Viet Cong "clearly embarked on a strategy very similar to the one they (Viet Minh) pursued in the war against the French."

360. —. *Communist Revolutionary Warfare: From the Vietminh to the Viet Cong*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, Publications in Russian and World Communism, 1967. 214 pp.

Communist guerrilla warfare in Vietnam, from the days of the Viet Minh, fighting the French, to the Viet Cong is examined in this work. This is a revision of Mr. Tanham's earlier work (see entry number 359).

361. U.S. Department of Defense. "Communist-Directed Forces in South Vietnam." *Vietnam Review* 3 (September 1967), Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 4 pp.

Very short and dated, yet useful, report which summarizes background material on the Viet Minh, the Central Office for South Vietnam (COSVN), and the National Liberation Front (NLF). A short discussion of the NLF's pattern of subversion is included.

362. —. "Viet Cong Terror Tactics in South Vietnam." *Vietnam Review* 5 (November 1967). Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 4 pp.

Terror, as used by the Viet Cong, is the focus of this brief report. A listing of assassinations and kidnappings, from 1958 to 1966, is of interest.

363. *Viet Cong Use of Terror*. Saigon: U.S. Mission in Vietnam, 1966. 48 pp.

Terror specifically used as a weapon, by the Viet Cong, is studied in this report. The study covers a six-year period and describes the VC terrorists as well as their doctrine and tactics. The 1964 bombing of

the Kinh Do Theater, in 1964, killing several American servicemen is cited as an example.

364. Vo Nguyen Giap, General. *People's War People's Army: The Viet Cong Insurrection Manual for Underdeveloped Countries*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1962. 217 pp.

Dated (1962), yet still of interest, this work is an introduction to the Communist revolutionary movement. The foreword was written by Roger Hilsman and Bernard B. Fall.

4. *Leaders*

365. Duiker, William J. *Ho Chi Minh*. New York: Hyperion, 2000. 695 pp.

In the most recent biography of the famed North Vietnamese leader the author skillfully takes you from Ho's childhood, leaving Indochina, his life in Paris after World War I, and his return to Vietnam to lead the revolution to reunite his nation and expel the Americans who had replaced the French. To understand the North Vietnamese goals you must understand Ho Chi Minh. The work includes illustrations.

366. Fall, Bernard B., ed. *Ho Chi Minh on Revolution: Selected Writings, 1920-66*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1967. 389 pp.

A collection of Ho Chi Minh's writings have been carefully selected by Mr. Fall, in this book, to represent Ho's style, philosophy, and the era in which he lived. The last chapter contains writings and speeches made from 1960 to 1966 against the U.S. Also included is the script to Ho's radio broadcast of July 17, 1966, in which he said "Fight Until Complete Victory" which announced to the world the DRV aims.

367. Fenn, Charles. *Ho Chi Minh: A Biographical Introduction*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1973. 144 pp.

A brief biography of Ho Chi Minh, in which the author has selected some of the poems taken from Ho's *Prison Diary*, offers a look at the leader of North Vietnam.

368. Fischer, Ruth. "Ho Chi Minh: Disciplined Communist." *Foreign Affairs* 33:1 (October 1954), pp. 86-97.

This very dated (1954) biographical essay offers us an early examination of Ho's relations with the French. The author assesses Ho Chi Minh as having the "stature, the political experience, and perhaps the wisdom" to lead the movement for Southeast Asian independence."

369. Halberstam, David. *Ho*. New York: Random House, 1971. 119 pp.
This short, well-written, biography of Ho Chi Minh describes his life and political career. A brief bibliography is included.
370. Ho Chi Minh. *Against U.S. Aggression for National Salvation*. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing House, 1967. 152 pp.
A collection of Ho Chi Minh's statements and writings, from 1950 to 1960, depicting how U.S. escalation shifted from interference on the side of the French to covert aggression. Ho's letter to President Johnson, 1967, stating North Vietnam's position is included.
371. Lacouture, Jean. *Ho Chi Minh: A Political Biography*. Translated by Peter Weiss. New York: Random House, 1968. 313 pp.
This biography of Ho focuses on his political career from the 1920s to 1968. A chronology of his life and career is included.
372. Macdonald, Peter. *Giap: The Victor in Vietnam*. New York: W. W. Norton and MacCompany, Incorporated, 1993. 368 pp.
The author examines the life of Vo Nguyen Giap, from birth to becoming the legendary commander of the North Vietnamese army. It was Giap who was in command and was victorious over the French (Dien Bien Phu) and the Americans (Khe Sanh). Prior to this work little has been written about General Giap. This work becomes the most significant biography of Giap published to date.
373. McGarvey, Patrick J. *Vision of Victory: Selected Vietnamese Communist Military Writings, 1964–1968*. Hoover Institution on War, Revolution, and Peace, Stanford University. Stanford, California: Hoover Institution Press, 1969. 276 pp.
The author describes Communist military strategy by examining the writings of a selection of their military leaders including Generals Van Tien Dung, Nguyen Chi Tanh, and Vo Nguyen Giap.
374. Neumann-Hoditz, Reinhold. *Portrait of Ho Chi Minh: An Illustrated Biography*. Originally published as *Ho Chi Minh in Selbstzeugnissen und Bildkumenten* (Hamburg, 1971). Translated by John Hargreaves. New York: Herder and Herder, 1972. 187 pp.
A short, illustrated, biography of the life and political career of Ho Chi Minh.
375. Nguyen Khac Huyen. "An Independent Communist Leader: Ho Chi Minh Between Peking and Moscow." *Orbis* 13:4 (winter 1970), pp. 1185–1208.

According to the author the President of North Vietnam was neither pro-Chinese nor pro-Soviet. In his relations with Peking and Moscow Ho Chi Minh followed a middle-of-the-road course. As a consequence Hanoi remained independent of both Peking and Moscow while, simultaneously, gaining abundant aid from both the People's Republic of China and the Soviet Union.

376. Osborne, Milton. "Ho Chi Minh." *History Today* 30 (November 1980), pp. 40-46.

A very general, brief, illustrated biographical sketch of the North Vietnamese leader whom the author characterizes as being a "patriot" who firmly believed in his cause.

377. Sainteny, Jean. *Face of Ho Chi Minh*. Translated by Herma Briffault. Chicago: Cowles, 1972. 193 pp.

The author, a French Army officer, served in Vietnam during the last days of French influence in Indochina and describes Ho Chi Minh in this biography. The book is illustrated.

378. Stetler, Russell, ed. *The Military Art of People's War: Selected Writings of General Vo Nguyen Giap*. New York: Monthly Review Press, 1970. 332 pp.

Articles, interviews, and speeches by General Giap comprise this work. The book is divided into three categories: the war against the French, the war in the south, and the escalation of the war to 1969. Included are General Giap's "Great Victory, Great Task," "The United States Has Lost the War: An Interview," and "Their Dien Bien Phu Will Come: An Interview." This work is a complete account of the war in Vietnam from the insurgent point of view. The author has included photographs of General Giap.

379. Ward, Ian. "Why Giap Did It: Report from Saigon." *Conflict Studies* 27 (October 1972), pp. 1-11.

This article discusses North Vietnam's invasion of South Vietnam, in March 1972, in which General Giap hoped to end Vietnamization, pacification, and the Thieu regime. Maps of the North Vietnamese offensive are included.

5. *North Vietnamese Accounts of the War*

380. *The Failure of "Special War" 1961-65*. Vietnamese Studies Number 11. Hanoi: Xunhasaba, nd. 198 pp.

The “Special War” conducted by the U.S. in South Vietnam, from mid-1961 to mid-1965, is described in this North Vietnamese study. A map, chronology, and a few illustrations are included.

381. *The Indochinese People Will Win*. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing House, 1970. 151 pp.

Addresses and speeches made during the Summit Conference of the Indochinese People, April 24–25, 1970, have been collected in this work. A chronology of events from March to May 1970 is included.

382. Nguyen Khac Vien, ed. *American Failure*. Vietnamese Studies Number 20. Hanoi: Xunhasaba, 1968. 287 pp.

This is a collection of articles and views of the DRV relative to U.S. military failures as evidenced by the events of 1968. Reports on the North Vietnamese view of the Tet Offensive, the battles of Hue, Khe Sanh, and Saigon, and the failure of the American “pacification” program provide insight into how Hanoi viewed the war. Detailed maps of the North Vietnamese campaigns are included.

383. ——. *In Face of American Aggression 1965–1967*. Vietnamese Studies Number 16. Hanoi: Xunhasaba, nd. 182 pp.

Five essays dealing with U.S. military exploits, in South Vietnam, are provided detailing events during the period from 1965 to 1967. This North Vietnamese document provides a brief outline of American aggression in Vietnam.

384. ——. *Indochina 1971–1972*. Vietnamese Studies Number 33. Hanoi: Xunhasaba, 1972. 211 pp.

The North Vietnamese view of the war, in 1971, is chronicled in this work. It includes DRV figures of American losses by province. A chapter on war crimes details the North Vietnamese perception of President Nixon’s escalation of the bombing campaign, the use of herbicides and defoliants that ultimately affected the people, and systematic massacres of people.

385. ——. *The Long Resistance (1858–1975)*. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing House, 1975. np.

The struggle for independence in South Vietnam, as seen by the Democratic Republic of Vietnam (North Vietnam) is chronicled in this history. The work examines the French colonists, the Japanese occupation, the British, and the Americans.

386. ——. *Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, 1969–70*. Vietnamese Studies Number 28. Hanoi: Xunhasaba, 1970. 185 pp.

This brief work examines the North Vietnamese perception of the “Nixon Doctrine,” including a critical analysis of President Nixon and U.S. political operations. To North Vietnam the Nixon policy was characterized by the “Vietnamization” of the war, intensification of hostilities in Laos, and the extension of the war into Cambodia.

387. ——. *The Year 1968*. Vietnamese Studies Number 22. Hanoi: Xun-hasaba, nd. 355 pp.

The event-filled year of 1968, from the view of the North Vietnamese, is recalled in this chronology.

388. Prados, John. *The Ho Chi Minh Trail and the Vietnam War*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, Incorporated, 1999. 432 pp.

An illuminating work, drawn from previously classified documents, in which the author provides a detailed account of the extreme importance of the Ho Chi Minh Trail – the key supply route for North Vietnamese incursions into the South. Yet, despite intensive bombing campaigns against it, by the U.S., the Trail remained open as the gateway south. The work contains illustrations and maps.

389. *South Vietnam '64*. Vietnamese Studies Number 1. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing House, nd. 279 pp.

The situation in South Vietnam circa 1964, as seen by the North Vietnamese, is examined in this study. A fold-out map and illustrations are included.

390. *Support the People of Viet Nam, Defeat U.S. Aggressors*. Peking: Foreign Languages Press, 1965. 81 pp.

How the People's Republic of China viewed events in South Vietnam is covered in this collection of speeches and articles concerning American imperialism and expansion.

391. Truong Son. *A Bitter Dry Season for the Americans*. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing House, 1966. 62 pp.

This pamphlet describes the victory of the Liberation Armed Forces (LAF) in South Vietnam. A map of LAF activities is included.

392. Turner, Karen Gottschang, with Phan Thanh Hao. *Even the Women Must Fight: Memories of War from North Vietnam*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, Incorporated, 1998. 224 pp.

A different view of the women of North Vietnam is presented in this work. Not the passive individuals they are often portrayed to be but

helping to promulgate the war against the Americans. The women served in all capacities including work in communications, clinics, caring for the deceased soldiers, carrying supplies, and many other jobs. The work is illustrated.

393. Van Tien Dung, General. *Our Great Spring Victory: An Account of the Liberation of South Vietnam*. New York: Monthly Review Press, 1977. 275 pp.

This account of the North Vietnamese victory, in the South, was written by the former Chief of Staff of the North Vietnamese People's Army, General Van Tien Dung. This work is based upon material that originally appeared in *Nhan Dan* – the official paper of the Vietnam Worker's Party.

394. *The Vietnamese Workers in Struggle*. Hanoi: Vietnam Federation of Trade Unions, 1969. 48 pp.

A brief, illustrated, account of the struggle of the Vietnamese workers against American imperialism is described in this publication. The final four lines read "Americans out of Vietnam! Vietnam for the Vietnamese! The U.S. imperialist aggressors are doomed to defeat! The Vietnamese people are sure to win total victory!" In hindsight this is a prophetic piece of propaganda.

395. Vo Nguyen Giap, General. *Big Victory Great Task. North Viet-Nam's Minister of Defense Assesses the Course of the War*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1968. 120 pp.

General Giap, considered to be North Vietnam's foremost military tactician, wrote this illustrated work describing the war in South Vietnam to 1968. In his closing comments General Giap makes clear his intention of defeating the U.S.

396. —. and Van Tien Dung. *How We Won the War*. Philadelphia: Beacon Publications, 1976. 63 pp.

Published on the first anniversary of North Vietnam's liberation of South Vietnam, this brief work contains reprints of previously published material and accounts.

397. —. *Unforgettable Months and Years*. Translated by Mai Van Elliott. South-east Asia Program, Department of Asian Studies. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press, 1975. 103 pp.

A personal account of the seven-month period following the Vietnamese revolution of August 1945 as experienced by Vo Nguyen Giap.

E. Collapse of South Vietnam

398. Bouscaren, Anthony T., ed. *All Quiet on the Eastern Front: The Death of South Vietnam*. Old Greenwich, Connecticut: Devin-Adair, 1976. 164 pp.

This anthology is highly condemnatory of the United States withdrawal from South Vietnam. Among the contributors to this work are General Westmoreland and other senior military officers, correspondents, diplomats, and scholars. North Vietnamese Chief of Staff General Van Tien Dung's prophetic comments are included.

399. Burchett, Wilfred G. *Grasshopper and Elephants: Why Vietnam Fell*. New York: Urizen Press, 1977. 265 pp.

The last 55 days of the war are recalled in this work from the Viet Cong perspective. The author, an Australian journalist, was sympathetic to the North Vietnamese and, consequently, he had access to Communist decision-makers. This work provides an interesting insight.

400. Dawson, Alan. *55 Days: The Fall of South Vietnam*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Incorporated, 1977. 366 pp.

Mr. Dawson presents an eyewitness account of the fall of South Vietnam, and the Communist aftermath, from his perspective. The author was the last, full-time, news service reporter in Saigon. He spent seven years in Vietnam as both a soldier and a correspondent. This book is filled with vignettes of action as well as agony.

401. Herrington, Stuart. *Peace With Honor? An American Reports on Vietnam, 1973-1975*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1983. 240 pp.

Present in Saigon during the final days of South Vietnam's existence, the author details a disturbing, poignant, examination of the closing chapter of the Vietnam War. He describes the waste of American military and economic resources. He stresses North Vietnam's total disregard for the guidelines established by the Paris Peace Accords. The book is illustrated.

402. Hosmer, Stephen T., Brian M. Jenkins, and Konrad Kellen. *The Fall of South Vietnam: Statements by Vietnamese Military and Civilian Leaders*. New York: Crane, Russak and Company, 1980. 270 pp.

Why did South Vietnam collapse so suddenly in 1975? This question is addressed by 27 former leading South Vietnamese civilian and military leaders. The authors have based their study on extensive oral and written statements taken from the participants. This work

was originally published by the RAND Corporation (1978). This is an important source for the South Vietnamese perspective of those final, controversial, events.

403. Le Gro, Colonel William E. USA. *Vietnam from Cease-Fire to Capitulation*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, 1981. 180 pp.

This monograph details events prior to the 1973 cease-fire, through the Third Indochina War, to the final days of April 1975. Many maps and tables are included. The author served in Vietnam, in 1966 and 1967, and was Director of Asian Studies at the Army War College from 1969 to 1971. He returned to Vietnam, in 1972, where he remained until April 29, 1975. The last chapter raises the question “Was Defeat Inevitable?” The author observes that South Vietnam lacked a strong, national leader.

404. Plumb, Charlie. *The Last Domino? A POW Looks Ahead*. Independence, Missouri: Independence Press, 1975. 96 pp.

A personal analysis of the impact of the American withdrawal from South Vietnam and the resultant Communist takeover. The author, a former prisoner of war, also wrote *I'm No Hero*.

405. Ravenal, Earl C. “Consequences of the End Game in Vietnam.” *Foreign Affairs* 53:4 (July 1975), pp. 651–67.

The author raises questions about the consequences of the final collapse of South Vietnam in April 1975. According to the author, American failure to intervene was the most significant factor. He concludes that there are certain factors which the U.S. cannot control and that the U.S. may have to choose between some “recrimination” and the risk of another Vietnam.

406. Snepp, Frank. *Decent Interval: An Insider's Account of Saigon's Indecent End Told by the CIA's Chief Strategy Analyst in Vietnam*. New York: Random House, 1977. 590 pp.

The author, a former analyst for the CIA, was among the last to depart Saigon. After several futile attempts to gain permission from the CIA to write an after-action report, the author resigned and, in violation of his CIA oath of secrecy, wrote this account. This is probably one of the best, and most important, descriptions of America's final days in Vietnam. The author charges Ambassador Graham Martin, and CIA Station Chief Thomas Polgar, with bungling the evacuation and leaving behind thousands of files on loyal Vietnamese for the Communists to capture. It is a devastating account of individuals and agencies. Maps and illustrations highlight this work.

407. Stuart, Douglas B. "The Fall of Vietnam: A Soldier's Retrospection." *Parameters* 11:2 (June 1981), pp. 28-36.

Once abandoned by their former ally, the South Vietnamese contributed to their own collapse by violating basic military principles of strategy, tactics, logistics, and leadership. According to the author the ultimate cause of South Vietnam's defeat was "the loss of will by the common soldiers occasioned by lack of inspirational leaders, unfair draft laws, corruption, and lack of plans to care for their dependents."

408. Terzani, Tiziano. *Gia Phong! The Fall and Liberation of Saigon*. Translated by John Shepley. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1976. 317 pp.

This work tells of the final days of South Vietnam, the inglorious departure of the Americans, and the arrival of the Communists. The author, an Italian correspondent, remained in Saigon after it fell in April 1975. The book is illustrated.

IV

Vietnam and the United States Government

A. General Accounts of U.S. Involvement

409. Addington, Larry H. *America's War in Vietnam: A Short Narrative History*. Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, 2000. 191 pp.

As titled this is a short, narrative, history of America's war effort in Vietnam. The author briefly examines the origins, the war itself, and the eventual outcome. The failures of five administrations are examined but the author concludes that "each of the American presidents involved made the correct decision to avoid a direct confrontation with the Sino-Soviet bloc over Indochina." The fear being of escalating what was confined to a regional conflict into a possible global war.

410. Ashmore, Harry S., and William C. Baggs. *Mission to Hanoi: A Chronicle of Double-Dealing in High Places*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1968. 369 pp.

Authorized by the State Department in 1967 to travel to North Vietnam, the author prepared this story as a special report for the Center for the Study of Democratic Institutions. Elaine Burnell's four-part chronological essay of American involvement, from 1945 to 1968, is excellent.

411. Barnet, Richard J. *Intervention and Revolution: The United States in the Third World*. Rev. ed. New York: New American Library, 1972. 351 pp.

The author's premise is that until the United States concedes that it can manage the social and political changes throughout the world there will be no peace. A review of the escalation of the war, to 1968, is followed by a brief statement of President Nixon's "Vietnamization" policy. The author concludes that even when the war was winding down, and the United States had clearly lost, we could not bring ourselves to end it.

412. Bator, Victor. *Vietnam – A Diplomatic Tragedy: The Origins of the United States Involvement*. Dobbs Ferry, New York: Oceana Publications, Incorporated, 1965. 271 pp.

Dated (1965), this early work discusses the origins of U.S. involvement in Vietnam. The author points to the uncompromising position, taken during the mid-1950s, by President Eisenhower, and Secretary of State Dulles, as they tried to resolve the Indochina crisis, from 1945 to 1960, through military and not diplomatic means.

413. Brandon, Henry. *Anatomy of Error: The Inside Story of the Asian War on the Potomac, 1954–1969*. Boston: Gambit Incorporated, 1969. 178 pp.

A detailed and balanced account of how the U.S. became entangled in Vietnam is described in this work. From the Truman and Eisenhower years through the Nixon administration the author pieces together the story of American involvement. Much of the material in this book was originally published in the London *Sunday Times* (April 13, 20, 27, 1969), in a series of articles titled "The Unwinable War."

414. Brown, Weldon A. *Prelude to Disaster: The American Role in Vietnam 1940–1963*. Port Washington, New York: Kennikat Press, National University Publications, 1975. 278 pp.

The first of the author's two-volume history of U.S. involvement in Vietnam examines U.S.-Vietnamese relations, from 1954 to 1963, during the administrations of Presidents Eisenhower, Kennedy, and Johnson. All three made pledges to the Republic of Vietnam. According to the author many Asians believe that only the presence of the United States prevented a complete grab by China during the early days of the conflict. (See entry number 415 for second volume.)

415. —. *The Last Chopper: The Denouement of the American Role in Vietnam, 1963–1975*. Port Washington, New York: Kennikat Press, 1976. 371 pp.

In this work the author identifies wavering leadership and the lack of national resolve among the reasons for the U.S. failure to win the war. He also contends that other nations “by their neglect and abdication of responsibility, must assume a major responsibility for whatever failure there was to contain totalitarianism in Southeast Asia.” This is a sequel to his earlier work *Prelude to Disaster* (see entry number 414).

416. Buchan, Alastair. “The Indochina War and World Politics.” *Foreign Affairs* 53:4 (July 1975), pp. 638–50.

This article considers the Vietnam War as the turning point of the American public’s conception of the relationship to the U.S. in the international context. According to the author Vietnam was an outgrowth of a combination of global responsibility coupled with alliances formed during the administrations of Presidents Roosevelt, Truman, Eisenhower, Kennedy, Johnson, and Nixon. The author concludes that, as a result, a period of national pessimism followed the war.

417. Bundy, William P. “The Path to Viet Nam: Ten Decisions.” *Orbis* 11:3 (fall 1967), pp. 647–63.

From 1945 to 1965 10 major decisions were made concerning the American role in Vietnam. This article examines how and why the U.S. became involved. The author states that the U.S. was not “trapped” in Vietnam, but its leaders were unable to make decisions “not to act.”

418. Buttinger, Joseph. *Vietnam – The Unforgettable Tragedy*. New York: Horizon Press, 1977. 191 pp.

U.S. involvement in Vietnam, from 1945 to the collapse of South Vietnam in 1975, is described in this work. United States policy regarding Vietnam, according to the author, was wrong from the very beginning and in order to reestablish relations in Southeast Asia, the United States needs to help rebuild the shattered economy of Vietnam.

419. Charlton, Michael, and Anthony Moncrief. *Many Reasons Why: The American Involvement in Vietnam*. New York: Hill and Wang, 1978. 250 pp.

This work examines United States involvement in Vietnam during a 30-year period and is based, primarily, upon transcripts of a series of BBC radio broadcasts in which key military and political figures were interviewed.

420. Chayes, Abram, Morton A. Kaplan, G. Warren Nutter, Paul C. Warnke, John P. Roche, and Clayton Fritchey. *Vietnam Settlement*:

Why 1973, Not 1969? Washington, D.C.: Enterprise Institute for Public Policy Research, 1973. 208 pp.

This three-part discussion addresses the issue of why the Vietnam War was settled in 1973 rather than 1969. Differing views of academics, government officials, and journalists examine the costs and benefits of prolonging the war from 1969 to 1973. The authors present appraisals of the administrations of Presidents Kennedy, Johnson, and Nixon.

421. Cooper, Chester L. *The Lost Crusade: America in Vietnam*. New York: Dodd, Mead and Company, 1970. 559 pp.

This useful volume surveys the American experience in Vietnam prior to the war's end. Mr. Cooper served as a member of the U.S. delegation, at Geneva, in 1954 as well as the 1954 Manila Conference which established SEATO. In the chapter "No More Vietnams" the author summarizes, very succinctly, the morass of U.S. involvement in Vietnam. A chronology of events, from 1945 to 1970, is included.

422. Doyle, Edward, and Samuel Lipsman. *The Vietnam Experience: Setting the Stage*. Vol. 1. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1981. 191 pp.

The first volume of a series examining U.S. involvement in Vietnam, it includes Vietnamese history, the French conquest and colonial rule, Vietnamese resistance, and the Second World War. Many excellent photographs, maps, and drawings illustrate this volume.

423. Draper, Theodore. *Abuse of Power*. New York: The Viking Press, 1967. 244 pp.

Mr. Draper contends that failure to learn the lessons of the French experience, coupled with the "Politics of Miscalculation," entangled the U.S. in the South. The U.S. attempt to end a war of "national liberation" was actually not in defense of freedom. This early, well-written, account of the application of too much power shows that we had lessons yet to learn.

424. FitzGerald, Frances. *Fire in the Lake: The Vietnamese and the Americans in Vietnam*. Boston: Atlantic Monthly Press Book, Little, Brown and Company, 1972. 491 pp.

"Fire in the Lake" is the symbol for revolution found in the Chinese "Book of Changes" – the *I Ching*. This work constitutes one of the first, in-depth, analyses of the United States in Vietnam. The author was a journalist, in Vietnam, who learned something of Vietnamese culture and politics. The resulting work is a classic study of how the

United States attempted to transform a traditional Asian society to fit the American model. This work won the Pulitzer Prize, the National Book Award, and the Bancroft Prize in history.

425. Gelb, Leslie, and Richard Betts. *The Irony of Vietnam: The System Worked*. New York: Brookings Institution, 1979. 387 pp.

The authors challenge the thesis that the United States stumbled into Vietnam. They argue that both Kennedy and Johnson opted for limited alternatives as steps to be taken in order not to lose. Unfortunately, the U.S. never fully appreciated the total commitment of Hanoi towards ultimate victory in South Vietnam. The authors conclude that the basic lesson to be drawn from Vietnam is the need for pragmatism in the decision-making process.

426. Goodwin, Richard N. *Triumph or Tragedy – Reflections on Vietnam*. New York: Random House, 1966. 143 pp.

Events which brought the U.S. into the Vietnam War, up to 1966, are discussed in this book. The author selected eight documents to illustrate this participation. Goodwin, who served in the Kennedy administration, asks (in 1966) whether Vietnam will be an American triumph or tragedy?

427. Gruening, Ernest H., and Herbert W. Beaser. *Vietnam Folly*. Washington, D.C.: National Press, 1968. 664 pp.

This illustrated work focuses on U.S. involvement in the Vietnam War, from 1961. Mr. Gruening was a U.S. Senator (D-Alaska) and offers a very direct look at U.S. military activity in Southeast Asia. Senator Gruening was very vocal in his opposition to the war.

428. Halberstam, David. *The Making of a Quagmire*. New York: Random House, 1965. 323 pp.

This early (1965) account of American participation in the Vietnam War is critical of the Diem regime and American optimism about the war. Halberstam concludes that the U.S. should have become involved earlier in the conflict before the crisis reached epic proportions. Mr. Halberstam won the Pulitzer Prize, in 1964, for his coverage of the war and this work is based upon his personal experiences. A classic work on the early years of the Vietnam War and American participation.

429. Hartke, U.S. Senator Vance. *The American Crisis in Vietnam*. Indianapolis: The Bobbs-Merrill Company, Incorporated, 1968. 163 pp.

Senator Hartke explains the American position in Vietnam and how the U.S. came to be involved. Hartke writes that because the U.S. is

a major participant in the crisis, it is, consequently, an “American crisis.” The Senator argues the virtue of seeking peace as opposed to the employment of force.

430. Herring, George C. *America's Longest War: The United States and Vietnam, 1950–1975*. America in Crisis, vol. 9. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1979. 298 pp.

A concise history of the Vietnam conflict that is broad in scope. This work examines the influence of major leaders, public opinion, and the competition within the bureaucracy on American foreign policy in Vietnam. The epilogue and conclusion outline the war's impact. This is an important contribution to the history of the war. A very good bibliography is included.

431. Higgins, Hugh. *Vietnam*. Studies in Modern History, 2nd ed. Exeter, New Hampshire: Heinemann Educational Books, Incorporated, 1982. 180 pp.

A revision of the author's earlier (1975) work brings the reader up to 1980, on U.S. involvement in Vietnam. The work is illustrated.

432. Honey, P. J. *Genesis of a Tragedy: The Historical Background to the Vietnam War*. London: Ernest Benn Limited, 1968. 86 pp.

A brief description of Vietnamese history and origins as well as the war in Vietnam is covered in this work. The author looks first at the French and, later, the Americans to 1968. The book is illustrated.

433. Joseph, Paul. “The Politics of ‘Good’ and ‘Bad’ Information: The National Security Bureaucracy and the Vietnam War.” *Politics and Society* 7:1 (November 1977), pp. 105–26.

The author contrasts the quagmire and Marxist theories of American involvement, in the Vietnam War, in terms of their explanatory value. The quagmire theory purports that full-scale U.S. involvement, resulted from a series of incremental steps based upon misinformation. The Marxist theory holds that U.S. involvement was based upon a conscious policy of protecting capitalistic interests abroad. The author concludes that bureaucracies tend to adopt ingrained policies which are resistant to change.

434. Kahin, George McTurnan, and John W. Lewis. *The United States in Vietnam*. New York: The Dial Press, 1967. 465 pp.

By examining the fundamental issues underlying the Vietnam conflict, the authors seek to explain the U.S. commitment. Historical and background material includes the French and Viet Minh, the Geneva Conference, the emergence of two Vietnams, the Americanization of

the war, the escalation of the war, and the global context of the war, with a closing discussion of the limits of American power.

435. Kail, F. M. *What Washington Said: Administration Rhetoric and the Vietnam War: 1949–1969*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1973. 253 pp.

This collection of public statements, by American Presidents and public officials – regarding American involvement in Indochina, from 1949 to 1969 – is preceded by a historical background centered on Communism, aggression, and freedom. The work then examines statements made regarding four pertinent questions: who is the enemy? What is the nature of the war? Why must we struggle? And how did America become involved? This work is an excellent source for quotations as well as the language of politics and foreign policy.

436. Karnow, Stanley. *Vietnam: A History*. New York: The Viking Press, 1983. 752 pp.

Destined to be a classic study of the Vietnam War, this work follows the war, from the days of the French struggle, through the escalation during the Johnson years, the Tet Offensive, and Nixon's involvement in Cambodia to the final days of the war. Events and decisions are clarified. The author had access to secret documents as well as exclusive interviews with the participants – French, American, Vietnamese, and Chinese. The book is illustrated and includes biographical notes, chronology, and cast of characters. This work is the bestselling companion to the PBS series “Vietnam: A Television History” in 13 parts.

437. Kinnard, Douglas. *The Certain Trumpet: Maxwell Taylor and the American Experience in Vietnam*. New York: Brassey's (US), Incorporated, A Division of Maxwell Macmillan, Incorporated, 1991. 252 pp.

From 1964 to 1965 Maxwell Taylor was the U.S. Ambassador to the Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam). Previously, he was a military officer serving under President Kennedy through events including Berlin, NATO, and the Cuban Missile Crisis, until he inherited his mission to Vietnam. The author observes that Taylor was one of the major American military figures of the twentieth century who was “more soldier than statesman.” Yet, he (Taylor) was central to the events which unfolded in Vietnam that involved the U.S. However, his role was not the decisive one.

438. Kurland, Dr. Gerald, ed. *Misjudgement or Defense of Freedom? The United States in Vietnam*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1975. 210 pp.

Essays have been collected in this book, appraising the controversy concerning the U.S. involvement in Vietnam. Contributors include William Bundy, Daniel Ellsberg, Leslie Gelb, Henry Kissinger, and others. A select bibliography is included.

439. Lansdale, Edward Geary. Major General, USAF (Ret.). *In the Midst of Wars: An American's Mission to Southeast Asia*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1972. 386 pp.

General Lansdale offers his personal account of his service in Indochina, 1953–1955. The work contains good material on U.S. involvement in Vietnam from the outset. Lansdale observes that the role of the U.S. should be to encourage the building and maintaining of a government responsive to, and participated in, by the people. The work is illustrated. Lansdale served, under CIA auspices, as an advisor to Premier Diem. He also served as special assistant to Ambassadors Lodge and Bunker.

440. Lawson, Don. *The United States in the Vietnam War*. New York: Thomas Y. Crowell Company, The Young People's History of America's Wars Series, 1981. 149 pp.

Intended for the juvenile reader, this illustrated book covers the political, social, economic, and military aspects of the Vietnam War and U.S. involvement.

441. —. *The War in Vietnam*. New York: Franklin Watts, 1981. 83 pp.

The events which led to American participation in the Vietnam War are detailed in this short work. Designed for the juvenile reader. Material on the opposition to the war in the U.S., the end of the war, and the aftermath is included.

442. Lederer, William J. *Our Own Worst Enemy*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1968. 287 pp.

U.S. involvement in Vietnam is described by characterizing Americans in each respective phase of the war in this work. The author characterizes the U.S. phases as deaf, generous, humiliated, successful, and anguished. He contends that the U.S. and South Vietnam, through their ineffective measures, have become their own worst enemies. Lederer also authored the popular book *The Ugly American* (with Eugene Burdick).

443. Lewy, Guenter. *America in Vietnam*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1978. 540 pp.

Using the voluminous military records from the war, this work is the first revisionist history to make use of them. The author, a political

scientist, makes extensive use of statistical data and concludes that a conventional military approach to the problem of revolution was hopeless. He takes the position that America's presence in Vietnam was neither illegal nor immoral. A wealth of tables and charts are interspersed throughout the work.

444. Lomperis, Timothy J. *From People's War to People's Rule: Insurgency, Intervention, and the Lessons of Vietnam*. Chapel Hill, North Carolina: The University of North Carolina Press, 1996. 440 pp.

U.S. involvement in Vietnam is compared to seven other examples of Western intervention during the Cold War era in this work. The author examines events in China, Indochina, Greece, the Philippines, Malaya, Cambodia, and Laos. He contends that intervention in a "People's War" will either succeed or fail depending on how much the intervention affects the crisis at hand.

445. —. *The War Everyone Lost – and Won: America's Intervention in Vietnam's Twin Struggles*. Baton Rouge, Louisiana: Louisiana State University Press, 1984. 216 pp.

The struggle for political power, in Vietnam, is depicted as being two conflicts fought simultaneously – one Vietnamese and the other global. Nationally, it was 45 years of contesting political legitimacy between Vietnamese Nationalists and Communists. Internationally, it was a contest between the American containment policy and the Communist strategy of people's war.

446. McGee, U.S. Senator Gale W. *The Responsibility of World Power*. Washington, D.C.: The National Press Incorporated, 1968. 274 pp.

Senator McGee traces American involvement, in Vietnam, from 1954 onward and discusses the entire spectrum of events spawned by the war. The author urges continued U.S. support to Southeast Asia and Vietnam as well as including China in world politics among other suggestions.

447. McMahon, Major John F., Jr. USAF. "Vietnam: Our World War II Legacy." *Air University Review* 19:5 (July–August 1968), pp. 59–66.

Current (1968) U.S. involvement in the Vietnam War stemmed from decisions made in the aftermath of the Second World War by the Truman Administration, is the focus of this article. The author observes that the U.S. presence in Vietnam was "historical, inevitable, and an inspiration to the free people of Asia."

448. Mailer, Norman. *Why Are We in Vietnam?* New York: Berkeley Publishing Corporation, 1968. 224 pp.

According to the author this work is a “social commentary” and a “treatise on human nature, society, and war” thus raising questions about the United States’ involvement in Vietnam.

449. Manning, Robert, and Michael Janeway, eds. *Who We Are: An ATLANTIC Chronicle of the United States and Vietnam*. Boston: Atlantic Monthly Press Book, Little, Brown and Company, 1969. 391 pp.

Reprints of articles that appeared in the *Atlantic Monthly*, concerning the Vietnam War, are collected in this work. The articles are from the time period of 1966 to 1969 and cover all aspects of the war. A useful, although short, critical annotated bibliography is included.

450. Mayer, Thomas F. “An Encapsulated History of U.S. Involvement in Viet Nam.” *Viet Nam Journal* 1 (1981), pp. 28–30.

A brief, concise, account of U.S. involvement in Vietnam, since 1965, praises the fighting qualities of the American forces. The author served in Vietnam, 1966–1967, and accuses a minority of the American public of causing the ultimate military and political collapse of the Republic of Vietnam.

451. Mecklin, John. *Mission in Torment: An Intimate Account of the U.S. Role in Vietnam*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1965. 318 pp.

Although this work is dated (1965) it provides useful information on the period of 1962 to 1965 in Vietnam. Based on the author’s experience in Vietnam he describes the Buddhist uprisings and the fall of Diem. He concludes that the U.S. learned too late where to place the real emphasis in Vietnam.

452. Neu, Charles E. *America’s Lost War: Vietnam 1945–1975*. Wheeling, Illinois: Harlan Davidson, Incorporated, “The American History Series,” 2005. 272 pp.

A recent (2005) concise history explaining how the U.S. became involved in Vietnam and why it committed so many resources to such a small nation is the focus of this work. The book begins with an examination of the First Indochina War (1945–54) and the subsequent defeat of the French and the loss of their colonial empire. The author contends that, at that time (1954), the U.S. under President Eisenhower, had the opportunity to walk away and let events in Indochina unfold as they would. However, due to Eisenhower’s hatred of Communism and a “flawed” understanding of Vietnam, he went ahead and committed the U.S. to a disastrous course of action. The book is illustrated.

453. Paine, Lauren. *Viet-Nam*. London: Robert Hale, 1965. 192 pp.

A short, dated, history of the conflict in Vietnam to 1965 establishes the point that Vietnam is less a place than a symbol where global rivalry between the U.S. and the Soviet Union dominates the times. Three factors outside Vietnam are considered important by the author: the desire of President Johnson to fight to win, world opinion which is steadfastly against U.S. aspirations, and the Communist position reflected in Hanoi of resisting negotiations in favor of victory. The work is illustrated.

454. Palmer, General Bruce, Jr. USA. *The Twenty Five Year War: America's Military Role in Vietnam*. Lexington, Kentucky: The University Press of Kentucky, 1984. 248 pp.

General Palmer describes in this book what went wrong for the American military in Vietnam, from an individual who was on the inside as Vice Chief of Staff. He believes that the worst mistake the U.S. made was committing its military forces to a war which had neither political nor military goals clearly established by our leaders. Hence, without any clearly stated objectives the end result was a defeat for the United States and the collapse of South Vietnam as a nation. The book is illustrated.

455. Parker, Maynard. "Vietnam: The War That Won't End." *Foreign Affairs* 53:2 (January 1975), pp. 352-74.

Vietnam as seen following the end of American participation, but prior to the collapse, is examined in this article. The author states that the U.S. should continue to provide a "reasonable level of military and economic aid" to South Vietnam after the American withdrawal. This was based upon the assumption that South Vietnam would survive as a nation.

456. Patti, Archimedes L. A. *Why Viet Nam? Prelude to America's Albatross*. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1980. 700 pp.

Early American involvement in the Vietnamese revolution, the author argues, would have avoided later massive commitments. An OSS officer during World War II, the author was in Hanoi in 1945 and observes that the U.S. should have supported Ho Chi Minh and that the North Vietnamese leader wanted to cooperate with the U.S. This is a provocative account of American involvement in both Vietnam and Southeast Asia. The book is illustrated.

457. Podhoretz, Norman. *Why We Were in Vietnam*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1982. 240 pp.

In this work the author has undertaken the defense of the U.S. effort in Vietnam. The book discusses both how and why the U.S. became involved in the war as well as how and why they were driven out. The author believes that the war in Vietnam was a noble effort. Moreover, he concludes that the media deceived the American public more so than did the government.

458. Prochnau, William. *Once Upon a Distant War*. New York: Time Books, a Division of Random House, Incorporated, 1995. 546 pp.

Drawing upon his personal experiences as a correspondent in Vietnam the author focuses on events occurring during 1961 to 1963. He describes the events, and how they were reported, and the resultant impact – or lack thereof – on the Kennedy administration. He opens this book with an unpublished comment, by Charles Mohr (*Time Magazine*, August 9, 1963) “Vietnam is a graveyard of lost hopes, destroyed vanity, glib promises, and good intentions.” A prophecy lost which should have been heeded.

459. Rood, Harold W. “Distant Rampart.” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 93:3 (March 1967), pp. 30–37.

Reflecting on the question “Why Vietnam?”, the author ignores the usual answers of freedom, honor, and humanity and chooses, instead, the national survival of the United States. The author suggests that if the U.S. should withdraw from South Vietnam, without defeating the VC/NVA, it would signal a general retreat for the U.S. from Asia as a whole.

460. Scheer, Robert. *How the United States Got Involved in Vietnam*. Santa Barbara, California: Center for the Study of Democratic Institutions, 1965. 80 pp.

Mr. Scheer outlines the slow, gradual, pathway towards complete involvement in Vietnam in this early work. The U.S. was awakened from its apathy towards Indochina by events of the Cold War, Ho Chi Minh’s efforts to liberate South Vietnam, and the French effort to re-colonize the area.

461. Schoenbrun, David. *Vietnam: How We Got in, How to Get Out*. New York: Atheneum, 1968. 214 pp.

The title of this book aptly describes the content. The author examines the way the U.S. involved itself in the war in Vietnam, from 1961 to 1968. Suggestions as to how the U.S. could have extricated itself from Vietnam are also presented.

462. Schurmann, Franz, Peter Dale Scott, and Reginald Zelnik. *The Politics of Escalation in Vietnam*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1966. 160 pp.

Based upon public sources, an analysis of the critical stages of the escalation of the war in Vietnam – from the fall of Diem to July 1966 – is examined in this book. Three major factors influenced this course of action: the politics of South Vietnam, international pressure for a negotiated settlement, and military actions of the belligerents.

463. Scott, Peter Dale. *The War Conspiracy: The Secret Road to the Second Indochina War*. Indianapolis, Indiana: The Bobbs-Merrill Company, Incorporated, 1972. 238 pp.

The hypothesis of this book is that for every apparent decrease in military activity in Southeast Asia there was a balanced escalation. The escalation usually went unnoticed at the time. The author outlines the hidden U.S. increases in Southeast Asia by examining what he terms “false pictures.” The first “false picture” is that of peaceable Americans drawn to Southeast Asia in response to acts of aggression such as the North Vietnamese invasion of Laos in 1959, the impending invasion of Thailand (1962), and the unprovoked attacks on two U.S. warships in 1964 – all now known to be untrue. The second false picture shows the U.S. buildup arising accidentally. Additionally, the author looks at the role of Air America, the Gulf of Tonkin incidents, the *Pueblo* crisis, and the Pentagon Papers.

464. Shaplen, Robert. *The Road From War: Vietnam 1965–1970*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1970. 368 pp.

Twenty-two edited articles written by the author for *The New Yorker*, 1965 to 1970, have been reprinted in this book. This book revises two previous works by Mr. Shaplen: *The Lost Revolution* (1965) (see entry 509) and *Time Out of Hand* (1969) (see entry 123). In this book Mr. Shaplen presents his thoughts and appraisals of the complexities of Vietnam and American disengagement from the war.

465. Smith, R. B. *An International History of the Vietnam War: Revolution Versus Containment, 1955–1961*. Vol. 1. New York: St. Martin’s Press, Incorporated, 1983. 301 pp.

The first of four proposed volumes, placing the Vietnam War in a global perspective, examines events from the completion of the Geneva partition of Vietnam, 1955, to decisions made by the Kennedy administration in 1961.

466. Stavins, Ralph, Richard J. Barnet, and Marcus G. Raskin. *Washington Plans an Aggressive War*. New York: Random House, 1971. 374 pp.

Planning the war, by the U.S., is analyzed in this book. The war in Vietnam was the product of individual decisions made by identifiable persons according to the authors. The authors conclude that

the top U.S. leaders planned and implemented an aggressive war against a people who neither did, nor could, hurt the U.S. The Johnson administration's policy of escalation is examined by studying those who advised the President.

467. Stone, Isidor F. *Polemics and Prophecies, 1967-1970*. New York: Vintage Books, 1970. 497 pp.

A critic of U.S. involvement in the war, Mr. Stone examines U.S. participation, from 1961 to 1975. The author was the only journalist who, in 1964, challenged President Lyndon Johnson's version of the Gulf of Tonkin incident. In this book the author has collected previously published articles from his *Weekly* – a political newsletter which reached a circulation in the thousands during the Vietnam War. Bibliographical references are included.

468. Thompson, Sir Robert. *No Exit from Vietnam*. New York: David McKay Company, Incorporated, 1969. 208 pp.

The Vietnam War, from 1965 to November 1968, is examined in this book in which the author contends that, in 1969, the U.S. was confronted with two choices: end the war or continue fighting while simultaneously negotiating.

469. ——. *Peace Is Not at Hand*. New York: David McKay Company, Incorporated, 1974. 208 pp.

As a result of U.S. involvement in the war in Vietnam the author focuses on the implications for American relations with the West in this work. He briefly outlines the history of the war but primarily examines events from 1972 to 1974. A noted expert on Indochina, the author observes that for the U.S., Vietnam represented winning the unwinnable. He concludes that Americans must recognize that their nation's credibility is at stake and that peace in Vietnam is not at hand.

470. Trager, Frank N. *Why Viet Nam?* New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1966. 238 pp.

Excellent coverage of background and events, in Vietnam to 1966, is contained in this book. The author supports American intervention – one of few academics who did. This book contains the historical background of Vietnam and examines the French experience and the American intervention to 1966. Mr. Trager observes that the U.S. commitment (as of 1966) had endured three presidential administrations and states why we must continue to honor that commitment. He also examines the administrations of South Vietnamese government and why it is important for the U.S. to support them.

471. Tuchman, Barbara W. *The March of Folly: From Troy to Vietnam*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Incorporated, 1984. 447 pp.

Making use of historical example and paradox, the author examines the recurring theme of governments pursuing policies contrary to their own interests. The first example is the Trojan War. Proceeding from the events at Troy the author arrives at the U.S. involvement in Vietnam. An excellent work in terms of scope and depth. The work is illustrated.

472. U.S. Department of Defense. "Why We Fight in Vietnam." *Vietnam Review* 1 (September 1967). Washington, D.C.: Office of Information for the Armed Forces, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 8 pp.

The first of a series of fact sheets issued by the DoD concerning the U.S. and Vietnam. This issue contains the explanation given by the U.S. government, to American forces, about why their country is in Vietnam. The reasons given are primarily moral and strategic. A brief discussion of the role of SEATO, the Gulf of Tonkin incident, and President Johnson's goals are included. There are a few illustrations and a map.

473. White, Ralph K. *Nobody Wanted War – Misperception in Vietnam and Other Wars*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1968. 347 pp.

Vietnam, as seen in the perspective of two world wars, is described in this work. The author suggests how the U.S., and other parties, "thought" themselves into war. Mr. White has prepared a psychological analysis of the factors common to all three wars and, in general, the causes of war itself.

B. Vietnam and American Foreign Policy

1. General

474. Armbruster, Frank E., Raymond D. Gastil, Herman Kahn, William Pfaff, and Edmund Stillman. *Can We Win in Vietnam?* Hudson Institute Series on National Security and International Order. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1968. 427 pp.

The reader who seeks to answer the question raised in the title of this work is provided with a compilation of essays on the background, issues, alternatives, strategy, tactics, and progress of the war in Vietnam (to 1968). The authors address what they feel needs to be done regarding U.S. policy decisions about Vietnam.

475. Ball, George M. *The Past Has Another Pattern: Memoirs*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1982. 527 pp.

The author served as Undersecretary of State in both the Kennedy and Johnson administrations and, as such, had involvement in the policy-making decisions pertinent to America's role in Vietnam. The work is illustrated.

476. Boettiger, John R., ed. *Vietnam and American Foreign Policy*. Lexington, Massachusetts: D. C. Heath and Company, Problems in American Civilization Series, 1968. 150 pp.

Opinions on American foreign policy in Vietnam, and its possible ramifications, have been collected by the author in this work. The author suggests methods of questioning the wisdom of American foreign policy. Many eminent contributors participated in the preparation of this account.

477. Ellsberg, Daniel. *Papers on the War*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1972. 309 pp.

Based upon the documents that became known as the "Pentagon Papers," the author has written a critical, powerful, statement on American policy in the Vietnam War. Mr. Ellsberg includes his important essay "The Quagmire Myth and the Stalemate Machine." The author addresses the responsibility of officials for the conduct of the war.

478. Fulbright, U.S. Senator J. William. *The Arrogance of Power*. New York: Vintage Books, 1966. 265 pp.

A major, early, liberal critique which purports that there are two Americas – each with its own foreign policy. One is the policy of "democratic humanism" and the other is that of "intolerant Puritanism." This work is based upon a series of lectures delivered in 1966 at the Johns Hopkins School of Advanced International Studies by the chairman of the Senate Foreign Relations Committee. Effects of the war, termed fallout, in the Far East, the West, and at home, are discussed.

479. Gilbert, John H., ed. *The New Era in American Foreign Policy*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1973. 216 pp.

A collection of essays given at a symposium on American foreign policy for the 1970s, in the spring of 1972, at North Carolina State University, have been collected in this work. The main thrust is that Vietnam forced a reappraisal of the American role in world affairs and a move towards retrenchment.

480. Gordon, Bernard K. *Toward Disengagement in Asia: A Strategy for American Foreign Policy*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: A Spectrum Book, Prentice-Hall, Incorporated, 1969. 186 pp.

How could the United States disengage itself from Vietnam is the question this work seeks to answer. The author argues that American foreign policy lacks clear priorities and develops a three-stage guide to determine what U.S. interests should be. The author puts forth the theory that the U.S. needs to “gradually” disengage itself in Southeast Asia, being replaced by the possible formation of a joint military force. He also looks to the Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN) as a means of providing this “joint military force.”

481. Gregg, Robert W., and Charles W. Kegley, Jr., eds. *After Vietnam: The Future of American Foreign Policy*. Garden City, New York: Anchor Books, 1971. 343 pp.

Focusing on the issue of American foreign policy, after Vietnam, is discussed in this collection of essays. Of noteworthy interest is the essay by Richard A. Falk, “What We Should Learn from Vietnam.”

482. Halberstam, David. *The Best and the Brightest*. New York: Random House, 1972. 688 pp.

A highly critical analysis of Presidents Kennedy and Johnson and their aides is offered in this book. The aides suffered from an idealistic, overblown, “can-do” attitude although they were intelligent, success-oriented individuals – the “best and the brightest” that the nation had to offer. They had the unswerving belief that commitment and will would achieve success. Halberstam observes that American policy was not evil but mechanical and followed the rationale of “the next logical step.” The author concentrates his efforts on individuals and decisions and tells the story of growing American involvement, in Vietnam, from the Washington viewpoint to about mid-1965.

483. Holsti, Ole R., and James N. Rosenau. “Vietnam, Consensus, and the Belief Systems of American Leaders.” *World Politics* 32:1 (October 1979), pp. 1–56.

Data gathered in a survey to support the authors’ conclusion that a great division occurred among leaders in regards to their belief system, as a result of their Vietnam experience, is presented in this study. The authors state that the changes were severe enough that only a major crisis or event will allow American foreign policy to be rebuilt.

484. —. *American Leadership in World Affairs: Vietnam and the Breakdown of Consensus*. Boston: Allen and Unwin, Incorporated, 1984. 301 pp.

How the consensus of opinion among American leaders broke down during the Vietnam War is examined in this work.

485. Kahin, George M. "Political Polarization in South Vietnam: U.S. Policy in the Post-Diem Period." *Pacific Affairs (Canada)* 52:4 (1979–80), pp. 647–73.

The various political levels of American intervention in South Vietnam, from the overthrow of the Diem regime, in 1963, to U.S. disengagement from 1972 to 1975 is analyzed in this article. The author looks at the South Vietnamese leaders that replaced Diem following his assassination including Minh, Khanh, Ky, and Thieu. Kahin concludes that the South Vietnamese were polarized between supporting either the Communists or governments that were subservient to the United States.

486. Kattenburg, Paul M. *The Vietnam Trauma in American Foreign Policy, 1945–75*. New Brunswick, New Jersey: Transaction Books, 1981. 354 pp.

The reasons the U.S. became involved in Vietnam, in the context of American foreign policy, is the focus of this work. The author looks at the policy of the U.S. in Vietnam from the end of the Second World War, through 1975, and why it failed. The author served in the State Department as Director of Vietnam Affairs, in 1963–64, and was described as an early dissenter to American policies regarding Vietnam.

487. Kintner, William R., and Richard B. Foster, eds. *National Strategy in a Decade of Change: An Emerging U.S. Policy*. Lexington, Massachusetts: Lexington Books, D. C. Heath and Company, 1973. 298 pp.

Vietnam and the role of the Nixon Doctrine are examined in this book. The recurrent theme is that the U.S. must seek to adjust and shape, a new national strategy to fit into a changing international framework. The authors see the Nixon Doctrine as the policy to fulfill U.S. obligations. This collection of 487 papers was originally delivered at the second symposium of the Strategic Studies Center of the Stanford Research Institute and the Foreign Policy Research Institute on "National Strategy in a Decade of Change" in 1972.

488. Kissinger, Henry A. *American Foreign Policy: Three Essays*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1969. 143 pp.

As the title indicates this work contains three essays which concern themselves with the domestic structure and foreign policy, the central issues of American foreign policy, and the negotiations regarding Vietnam. The essay on Vietnam looks at the events leading to the negotiations, the environment surrounding them, the problem of the bombing halt, ceasefire, and coalition government. The essay concludes with a statement of belief that a new administration must be given a chance to move toward a peace which allows the Vietnamese people to work out their destiny in their own way.

489. Lane, General Thomas A. USA (Ret.). *America on Trial: The War for Vietnam*. New Rochelle, New York: Arlington House, 1971. 297 pp.

General Lane presents a critical analysis of U.S. strategy in the Far East, and examines the traits and characteristics of American policy in the region. The author states that "America is on trial. It stands indicted for giving inept leadership to its own people and to the Free World."

490. Liska, George. *Imperial America: The International Politics of Diplomacy*. Studies in International Affairs, Vol. 2. The Washington Center of Foreign Policy Research, School of Advanced International Studies. Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins Press, 1967. 115 pp.

Trends in international politics and the implications for American foreign policy is examined. The author studies the general problems of empire and imperial politics and gradually moves on to contemporary issues. He observes that for the U.S., Vietnam was the first imperial war fought in the newly emerging world and he seeks to place the war in the broadest possible perspective.

491. Logevall, Fredrik. *Choosing War: The Lost Chance for Peace and the Escalation of War in Vietnam*. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1999. 529 pp.

In this work the author provides a fine and detailed examination of the relationship between the U.S. government and those of both South and North Vietnam. The author seeks to answer the question of why diplomacy failed to head off the war in Vietnam before it began. That America chose war is little wonder due to the progressive involvement and buildup during the years preceding 1965 and the landing of the Marines. All points of view are represented, from the parties involved, as to how and why the U.S. chose war.

492. MacDonald, Charles B. "An Outline History of U.S. Policy toward Vietnam." Special Report prepared for the Strategic Studies Institute, U.S. Army War College, Carlisle Barracks, Pennsylvania.

Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, 1978. 93 pp.

Post-Second World War American policies towards Indochina and Vietnam are examined in this brief history. Organized within a chronological framework, the study identifies various statements and re-statements of American Far Eastern policy and the major changes in the tactics related to them.

493. Mann, Robert. *A Grand Delusion: America's Descent into Vietnam*. New York: Basic Books, A Member of the Perseus Book Corporation, 2001. 821 pp.

A definitive history of how America's political leaders of the Cold War era, unquestionably maintained their anti-communist positions and ultimately led the nation into the tragic conflict of Vietnam. The author examines the administrations of four presidents – Eisenhower through Nixon, as well as three other influential leaders – Senator J. William Fulbright (Chairman, Senate Foreign Relations Committee), Senator Mike Mansfield (Senate Majority Leader), and Senator George McGovern. The author concludes that “Whatever good may have come from the war, and no matter how honorable and brave the soldiers on both sides, the Vietnam War should be remembered as the kind of tragedy that can result when presidents – captivated by grand delusions – enforce their foreign and military policies without the informed support of Congress and the American people.”

494. Michael, Franz. “The Stakes in Viet Nam.” *Orbis* 12:1 (spring 1968), pp. 121–31.

With or without peace negotiations the war in Vietnam has only two possible outcomes: a Communist victory or a Communist defeat. This article examines the U.S. during the Korean conflict and the author concludes that the U.S. won a victory in Korea. The Communist goals are the same in Vietnam as they were in Korea. The author states that the U.S. in Vietnam is not just in a local fight in a Southeast Asian country, but in a “confrontation with a world communist strategy in the higher battle between communist revolution and our concept of a free world.”

495. Milstein, Jeffrey S. *Dynamics of the Vietnam War: A Quantitative Analysis and Predictive Computer Simulation*. Columbus, Ohio: The Ohio State University Press, 1974. 254 pp.

A technical, quantitative, analysis of statements made by policy-makers concerning the war comprises this work. The author examines policies and models theoretically and evaluates them using factual

criteria. From this the author draws interrelationships among policy, military strategy, public opinion, and so forth. This work is replete with technical data.

496. Morgenthau, Hans J. *A New Foreign Policy for the United States*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1969. 252 pp.

Published for the Council on Foreign Relations, this work is concerned with the principles and basic assumptions on which American foreign policy is based. The author observes that American intervention in Vietnam was to stop Communism. However, this intervention was not in the national interest of the United States and, paradoxically, was detrimental to it. The author expresses the view that if the U.S. was combating aggression, inspired and supported by the world centers of Communism, then we erred by not striking at the heart of the problem but just at the manifestation.

497. *National Diplomacy 1965–1970*. Washington, D.C.: *Congressional Quarterly*, 1970. 156 pp.

A collection of materials dealing primarily with the Nixon administration, 1969 to 1970, and the Johnson administration from 1965 to 1968. The respective policies of each administration, regarding Vietnam and the conduct of the war, are examined.

498. Osgood, Robert E., Robert W. Tucker, Herbert S. Dinerstein, Francis E. Rourke, Isaiah Frank, Lawrence W. Martin, and George Liska. *America and the World: from the Truman Doctrine to Vietnam*. Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins Press, 1970. 434 pp.

American foreign policy is reappraised in this collection of essays. In his essay "The American Outlook," Tucker observes that America's Vietnam policy was rooted in the Truman Doctrine of 1947. This work asks, in a patternless international environment, and preoccupied with internal affairs, can the United States continue in the role of caretaker of the world?

499. Parenti, Michael, ed. *Trends and Tragedies in American Foreign Policy*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1971. 228 pp.

American foreign policy is examined in this collection of essays containing dissenting and heterodox views. This work includes Richard Morrock's "Destroying a Social Revolution: The Case of Vietnam" – an accusation of American genocide in Vietnam supported and executed by the South Vietnamese.

500. Payne, Lieutenant Colonel Don H. USAF. "What Happens After Vietnam?" *Military Review* 48:9 (September 1968), pp. 42–48.

The author seeks to answer the rhetorical question asked in the title. He concludes that the United States must persevere in Asia.

501. Pfeffer, Richard M., ed. *No More Vietnams? The War and the Future of American Foreign Policy*. Adlai Stevenson Institute of International Affairs. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1968. 299 pp.

A unique blend of the views of former, and current, government officials, scholars, and journalists, discussing the issue of Vietnam and American foreign policy is presented in this work. The list of participants reads like a Who's Who in American government. Much sentiment is expressed toward "disengagement." It is unfortunate that the efforts and opinions of so many can be as easily dismissed as those expressed in this book were. The author has divided the work into three parts: the roots of misconceptions, misconceptions in action, and the lessons of Vietnam.

502. Poole, Peter A. *Eight Presidents and Indochina*. Huntington, New York: Krieger Publishing, 1978. 264 pp.

From Franklin Roosevelt to Jimmy Carter this work examines the policy-making of eight presidents. The emphasis, however, is upon the Johnson-Nixon years with regards to Indochina.

503. —. *United States and Indochina: From FDR to Nixon*. Berkshire Studies in History. Hinsdale, Illinois: Dryden Press, 1973. 247 pp.

U.S. involvement in Vietnam is studied by examining the policies of Presidents Franklin Roosevelt to Richard Nixon. The policies of each of the various presidents, from 1945 to 1975, are reviewed.

504. Rainey, Gene E., ed. *Contemporary American Foreign Policy: The Official Voice*. Merrill Political Science Series. Columbus, Ohio: Charles E. Merrill Publishing Company, 1969. 333 pp.

This work studies U.S. involvement in Vietnam from Franklin Roosevelt to Richard Nixon. Issues such as military strategy and doctrine towards world regions like Southeast Asia are examined. The author has included "U.S. Official Position on Vietnam: The Fourteen Points."

505. Raskin, Marcus G., and Bernard B. Fall, eds. *The Viet-Nam Reader: Articles and Documents on American Foreign Policy and the Viet-Nam Crisis*. New York: Random House, 1965. 415 pp.

This co-edited work collects articles and documents pertinent to the crisis in Vietnam as of 1965. Although dated, several alternatives for American policy in Vietnam are proposed. These include restraints on military power to avoid harming innocent civilians, a de-escalation

of the war, and planning for the restoration of Vietnam. Unfortunately, the editors' efforts in this work were largely ignored by the U.S. government.

506. Ravenal, Earl C. *Never Again: Learning from America's Foreign Policy Failures*. Philadelphia: Temple University Press, 1980. 176 pp.

Americans are challenged to learn from their past foreign policy failures as the author examines the mistakes of the 1960s – especially Vietnam. The author believes that the U.S. military intervention cannot succeed, thus we must disengage. The author was a former official in the Department of Defense.

507. Rosenberg, Milton J., ed. *Beyond Conflict and Containment: Critical Studies of Military and Foreign Policy*. New Brunswick, New Jersey: Transaction Books, 1972. 341 pp.

A collection of essays concerning foreign aid, arms, war, My Lai, and other topics that originally appeared in *Transaction/Society Magazine* are reprinted in this book. Richard Falk's essay "War Crimes and Individual Responsibility," which examines the issue of individual responsibility for the My Lai massacre, and war crimes in general, is included.

508. Schlesinger, Arthur M., Jr. *The Bitter Heritage: Vietnam and American Democracy 1941–1968*. Rev. ed. Greenwich, Connecticut: Fawcett Publications, Incorporated, 1970. 144 pp.

Brief, critical, and powerful appraisal of the American commitment in Vietnam by the eminent historian who reaches four conclusions in this work. First, that all international events are not of importance to the U.S., second, that the U.S. cannot solve all the problems in the world, third, that we cannot guarantee permanent stability, and last, that military force is not necessarily the most effective weapon.

509. Shaplen, Robert. *The Lost Revolution: The Story of Twenty Years of Neglected Opportunities in Vietnam and of America's Failure to Foster Democracy There*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1965. 404 pp.

The premise of this book, based upon the author's personal experiences spanning some 20 years in Indochina, is that a revolutionary condition preexisted in Indochina for decades. This condition should have been recognized by Western nations earlier as an Asian revolution. The Communists reacted quietly while Western nations, especially France, failed to resolve the problem, making the Vietnamese people the principal losers.

510. Small, Melvin. *At the Water's Edge: American Politics and the Vietnam War*. Chicago: "The American Way Series", Ivan R. Dee, Publisher, 2005. 256 pp.

The impact of domestic politics upon decisions made regarding American involvement in the Vietnam War is the purpose of this book. The author demonstrates how partisan politics influenced the decisions made by Presidents Kennedy, Johnson, and Nixon and how those decisions affected their presidencies.

511. Thies, Wallace J. *When Governments Collide: Coercion and Diplomacy in the Vietnam Conflict, 1964–1968*. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1980. 446 pp.

Based upon the author's thesis at Yale, this work reviews the diplomatic history of relations between the U.S. and the Republic of Vietnam, from 1964 to 1968. The author closely examines the Johnson administration's attempts to coerce North Vietnam.

512. Tugwell, Rexford G. *Off Course: From Truman to Nixon*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1971. 326 pp.

The influence of President Franklin D. Roosevelt on presidents from Truman to Nixon, and the problems each inherited from FDR, is examined in this work. American intervention in Vietnam is examined in those sections dealing with Eisenhower to Nixon. The author states that the reasons for assisting the French, in Indochina, were due to "shallow explorations of faulty intelligence."

513. Weil, Charles A. *Curtains Over Vietnam: Strategic Appraisal of Suppressed Aspects of U.S. Security State in Vietnam*. New York: Exposition Press, 1969. 155 pp.

Proposed "beachheads" in Southeast Asia, a point which was suppressed by the American media at the time, is examined in this brief work. The author argues that Vietnam is "vital to U.S. security."

514. Zasloff, Joseph J., and MacAlister Brown. *Communist Indochina and U.S. Foreign Policy: Postwar Relations*. Boulder, Colorado: Westview Press, Westview Special Studies in International Relations, 1978. 221 pp.

A summary of the important political and economic developments in Vietnam, Laos, and Cambodia, since 1975, comprise this study. Analyzing critical policy issues confronting the Carter administration, the authors conclude that the U.S. needs to develop a long-term Southeast Asian foreign policy. American interests in Southeast Asia are military, political, economic, and humanitarian.

515. Zinn, Howard. *Vietnam: The Logic of Withdrawal*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1967. 131 pp.

The question of American withdrawal is examined in this work, and the author offers the “Domino” theory as the standard reason why the U.S. did not depart sooner. The author questions President Johnson’s decision-making process which kept the U.S. from withdrawing.

2. *Eisenhower Administration*

The Dwight D. Eisenhower Library, Abilene, Kansas. Website: <http://eisenhower.archives.gov> Email: eisenhower.library@nara.gov.

Note: The presidential libraries system is administered by the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA).

516. Adams, Sherman. *Firsthand Report: The Story of the Eisenhower Administration*. New York: Harper and Brothers, 1961. 481 pp.

An assessment of the Eisenhower presidency, his administration and policies, are recalled in this work. The author examines Eisenhower’s relationship with his Secretary of State, John Foster Dulles. The chapter entitled “Trouble in the Far East” covers Vietnam after 1954. The author refers to Eisenhower’s acceptance of the “Domino Theory” and observes that Eisenhower and Dulles were ready to proceed to “hot war,” in Indochina, and possibly would have intensified the war had the Communists followed up their victory at Dien Bien Phu. The work is illustrated.

517. Alexander, Charles C. *Holding the Line: The Eisenhower Era 1952–1961*. Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, 1975. 326 pp.

The eight years of Eisenhower’s presidency are examined in this book. The author describes those years as “a time for holding the line in American government and society.” In the chapters “Rhetoric and Reality in Foreign Policy” and “The Eisenhower Resurgence,” the author discusses the Eisenhower policy regarding the 1954 Geneva Accords and events leading to all-out U.S. involvement in the Vietnam War. A bibliographic essay is included.

518. Beal, John Robinson. *John Foster Dulles: 1888–1959*. 2nd ed. New York: Harper Beal and Brothers, 1959. 358 pp.

In this biography of President Eisenhower’s Secretary of State, the author points to Dulles’ primary dedication to peace while conducting a vigorous campaign against Communism. As the champion

of “brinksmanship,” Dulles faced a “different brink” in Indochina. The whole morass of French defeat, SEATO, and the U.S. commitment is examined.

519. Berding, Andrew H. *Dulles on Diplomacy*. Princeton, New Jersey: D. Van Nostrand Company, Incorporated, 1965. 184 pp.

Written from notes the author kept during his travels with Secretary of State Dulles, this brief account recalls Dulles’ close relationship with President Eisenhower. The author also examines Dulles’ dealings with the Soviets and the threat of Communist China in Southeast Asia. Dated, yet still a good work on the subject.

520. Eisenhower, Dwight D. *The White House Years: Mandate for Change 1953–1956*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1963. 650 pp.

The first of two volumes which comprise the memoirs of President Eisenhower. This volume covers his entrance into politics, the presidential campaign and election, to the presidency in 1956. Eisenhower confronted the problem of Communist aggression in Indochina, prior to the conclusion of the Korean War. He wrote, “We as a nation could not stand aloof – unless we were ready to allow free nations to crumble, one by one, under Communist pressure.” Many excellent illustrations are included.

521. —. *The White House Years: Waging Peace 1956–1961*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1965. 741 pp.

The second volume of Eisenhower’s memoirs pursues his presidential career from 1956 to 1961. Eisenhower focuses on the problem of what he termed “waging peace.” He details each step taken in combating Communism in Southeast Asia. He is convinced that the U.S. acted correctly in committing itself to Southeast Asia. The work is illustrated.

522. Hoopes, Townsend. *The Devil and John Foster Dulles*. Boston: An Atlantic Monthly Press Book, Little, Brown and Company, 1973. 562 pp.

This work discusses the foreign policy of the United States during the Eisenhower administration through an examination of the dominant force in American diplomacy – John Foster Dulles. America’s early involvement is covered in the chapter titled “Vietnam – Aftermath and Prologue.” In this chapter the author reviews SEATO, American aims, the Collins Mission (U.S. to assume responsibility for training the South Vietnamese with no

further aid to the French after 1955), and U.S. dealings with Diem. The work is illustrated.

523. Lyon, Peter. *Eisenhower: Portrait of the Hero*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1974. 991 pp.

This biography of Dwight David Eisenhower recalls his military career and his presidency. It includes material detailing U.S. support of the French effort in Indochina, until their defeat in 1954, and the active involvement of the United States afterwards. The book is illustrated and contains a good bibliography.

3. Kennedy Administration

The John F. Kennedy Presidential Library and Museum, Boston, Massachusetts. Website: <http://jfklibrary.org> Email: kennedy.library@nara.gov.

524. Hilsman, Roger. *To Move a Nation: The Politics of Foreign Policy in the Administration of John F. Kennedy*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1967. 602 pp.

The decision-making process during the brief Kennedy era is examined in this work. The author was a former Assistant Secretary of State for Far Eastern Affairs. He deals only partly with Vietnam and Laos but gives concise information about such decisions as the coup to overthrow South Vietnam's President Diem. Hilsman presumes in the chapter "If Kennedy Had Lived?," that the U.S. would have participated, on a limited basis, in Vietnam but that, unfortunately, President Kennedy's untimely death precludes speculation on what might have happened in Vietnam.

525. Jones, Howard. *Death of a Generation: How the Assassinations of Diem and JFK Prolonged the Vietnam War*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2003. 562 pp.

Speculation as to what might have happened, in Vietnam, had not President Kennedy or South Vietnamese President Ngo Dinh Diem been assassinated is examined in this book. Both Diem (11/2) and Kennedy (11/22) were both killed in 1963 – only 20 days apart. According to the author the death of both leaders ended any hope of an American withdrawal from South Vietnam. The work is illustrated.

526. Kennedy, U.S. Senator John F. *The Strategy of Peace*. Edited by Allan Nevins. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1960. 233 pp.

Addresses and speeches of Senator John F. Kennedy, from 1954 to 1960, are collected in this work. Of interest is Kennedy's address to

the Senate on April 6, 1954, in which he warned of the perils of involvement in Indochina and in which he exhorted the French to leave.

527. Lindley, Ernest K., ed. *The Winds of Freedom: Selections from the Speeches and Statements of Secretary of State Dean Rusk January 1961–August 1962*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1963. 363 pp.

As Secretary of State during the Kennedy administration, Rusk made many speeches and statements about Southeast Asia. This work includes Rusk's views on the importance of SEATO, the neutralization of Laos, and aggression against South Vietnam.

528. Mahajan, Usha. "President Kennedy and United States Policy in Laos, 1961–63." *Journal of Southeast Asian Studies* 2:2 (September 1971), pp. 87–99.

During his short administration President Kennedy inherited many problems, including Laos. And yet while helping to establish Lao-tian neutrality, the policy of the Kennedy administration inadvertently assured the ultimate collapse of that neutrality. The author observes that it was but one more step for the Johnson administration to escalate the Vietnam War and virtually destroy Laos with conventional warfare.

529. Rust, William J., and the editors of U.S. News Books. *Kennedy in Vietnam*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1985. 252 pp.

The United States and President John F. Kennedy's Vietnam policy, from 1960 to 1963, is chronicled in this work. An excellent chronology is included. This work is a welcome addition to the study of American policy in Vietnam during the Kennedy administration.

530. Schlesinger, Arthur M., Jr. *A Thousand Days: John F. Kennedy in the White House*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1965. 1,087 pp.

This memoir of President Kennedy was written by his press secretary. It provides excellent coverage of JFK's campaign and election, his New Frontier program, the Bay of Pigs fiasco, Berlin, and Vietnam. Schlesinger observes that Kennedy was not briefed by Eisenhower on the situation in Vietnam after he was elected. The situation in Laos, and JFK's intervention, ultimately led to expansion of the U.S. commitment throughout Southeast Asia. A well-written account of the thousand days that John F. Kennedy was in the White House. The book is illustrated.

531. Sorensen, Theodore C. *Kennedy*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1965. 783 pp.

Kennedy the man, politician, candidate, and president are examined in this work. It discusses Kennedy's efforts at home and abroad. In Laos, Kennedy sought peaceful negotiations to restore a coalition government; he did not desire a military solution. In Vietnam he wanted to halt Communist-sponsored guerrilla warfare and to allow the South Vietnamese the right of self-determination. Unfortunately, South Vietnam was too weak to stand alone. Sorensen points out that JFK recognized that military action alone could not save Vietnam. During a 1963 television interview JFK said, "It is their war. They are the ones who have to win or lose it. We can help them, ... but they have to win it, the people of Vietnam."

532. Walton, Richard J. *Cold War and Counterrevolution: The Foreign Policy of John F. Kennedy*. Baltimore: Penguin Books, Incorporated, 1972. 250 pp.

Kennedy's foreign policy regarding Vietnam and Laos is focused on in this book. The author charges that Kennedy trusted his advisors (McNamara, Taylor, Rusk, *et al.*) who claimed that increasingly more pressure would break the Communist resistance. Seemingly insignificant measures, that did not appear drastic at the time, ultimately led to a long war of attrition. In November 1963 JFK expressed his hope for "an increased effort in the war." The author charges Kennedy, while excusing his successors – Johnson and Nixon. "Kennedy began the Vietnam War. It has been his most enduring legacy."

4. Johnson Administration

Note: The Lyndon Baines Johnson Presidential Library and Museum, Austin, Texas. Website: <http://lbjlib.utexas.edu/> Email: johnson.library@nara.gov.

533. Austin, Anthony. *The President's War: The Story of the Tonkin Gulf Resolution and How the Nation was Trapped in Vietnam*. New York: A New York Times Book, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1971. 368 pp.

The American decision to go to war in Vietnam was built around the Tonkin Gulf Resolution. This work examines the events that occurred in the Gulf of Tonkin, in the White House, Congress, and behind the scenes that influenced that decision.

534. Berman, Larry. *Planning a Tragedy: The Americanization of the War in Vietnam*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1982. 203 pp.

The decision by President Johnson, in July 1965, to increase American participation, in Vietnam, by sending combat troops. The author

surmises that Johnson chose a middle course, doing just enough to prevent the collapse of the Saigon regime while he maintained his political options and while he concentrated on legislation for his “Great Society” at home.

535. Divine, Robert A., ed. *Exploring the Johnson Years*. Austin, Texas: University of Texas Press, 1981. 280 pp.

A collection of essays concerning the Johnson era covering topics from the war on poverty to war in Vietnam are presented in this work. Of interest is the essay “The War in Vietnam,” by George C. Herring, who describes the domestic struggle between the hawks and the doves, the problems that this created for Johnson, and the search for a solution to Vietnam.

536. Donovan, Robert J. *Nemesis: Truman and Johnson in the Coils of War in Asia*. New York: St. Martin’s-Marek, 1984. 216 pp.

Donovan examines, and compares President Truman’s experience in the Korean War with that of President Johnson in the Vietnam War in this work. The author contends that both presidents had one common aim – to halt the spread of Communism. Donovan shows how both presidents were drawn into deeper commitments until both were forced to withdraw in order to avert World War III.

537. Evans, Rowland, Jr., and Robert Novak. *Lyndon B. Johnson: The Exercise of Power*. New York: The New American Library, 1966. 597 pp.

This political biography of President Johnson studies how he sought, achieved, and dispensed political power. The authors assert that in no other endeavor, during his presidency (to 1966), did Lyndon B. Johnson (LBJ) exert more effort or suffer more “political misfortune” than Vietnam. He had to overlook his 1964 campaign pledge of not sending American boys to fight an Asian war because of stepped-up Viet Cong activities ending with the Tonkin Gulf incident.

538. Galloway, John. *The Gulf of Tonkin Resolution*. Rutherford, New Jersey: Fairleigh Dickinson University Press, 1970. 578 pp.

The two “alleged” attacks made on ships of the U.S. Navy, in the Gulf of Tonkin, and the efforts of the Senate to handle the affair is examined in this work. The work includes a short bibliography.

539. Gardner, Lloyd C. *Pay Any Price: Lyndon Johnson and the Wars for Vietnam*. Chicago: Ivan R. Dee, 1995. 610 pp.

Insight into President Lyndon Johnson and Vietnam are examined in this book. The author discusses how LBJ went from a peace

candidate to a war leader. The “Johnson Doctrine” is examined as is the pause in the bombing campaign (LBJ later said that this was one of the “great mistakes” of the war), to the Tet Offensive and the end of his presidency.

540. Geyelin, Philip. *Lyndon B. Johnson and the World*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1966. 309 pp.

In this early assessment of the Johnson presidency (to 1966) the author characterizes Vietnam as an “orphan war” because President Kennedy “had never really given it his full (Kennedy) attention.” LBJ’s policy on Vietnam was “quicker peace through fiercer war.” Early signs of public disaffection began to surface in February 1966 – one year after the Viet Cong attacks on the U.S. base at Pleiku and the first escalation. This criticism was a mixture of antiwar sentiment and a clamor for a more accelerated war. The author notes that, for LBJ, the true test of his leadership was yet to come and would be over Vietnam – a prophecy realized a year later.

541. Goldman, Eric F. *The Tragedy of Lyndon Johnson*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Incorporated, 1969. 531 pp.

A former special consultant to the President, from 1963 to 1966, Mr. Goldman characterizes LBJ as the “tragic figure of an extraordinarily gifted President who was the wrong man from the wrong place at the wrong time under the wrong circumstances.” The American public worried, not so much because they felt LBJ was wrong on Vietnam, but because they felt he was the type of man who would not correct his mistake. There was no doubt, however, by 1968, that LBJ was more the “war chief” and less the domestic leader as criticism at home mounted.

542. Goulden, Joseph C. *Truth is the First Casualty: The Gulf of Tonkin Affair – Illusion and Reality*. Chicago: Rand-McNally, 1969. 285 pp.

The highly questionable accounts of August 2nd and 4th, 1964, and the attacks on the American destroyers U.S.S. *Maddox* and the U.S.S. *C. Turner Joy*. The author seeks to answer whether or not the attacks happened. Mr. Goulden is of the opinion that the U.S. reacted hastily and without good intelligence. The author would be the first to seriously question the events that occurred in the Gulf of Tonkin in 1964. The question is still debated today.

543. Graff, Henry F. *The Tuesday Cabinet: Deliberation and Decision on Peace and War Under Lyndon B. Johnson*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Incorporated, 1970. 200 pp.

This work examines the cabinet members and advisers to President Johnson. The author points out that the members who comprised the “Tuesday Cabinet” were basically inherited from the previous administration by LBJ. The author is an eminent historian who describes how LBJ sat down with this group over lunch on Tuesdays – hence “Tuesday” cabinet.

544. Helsing, Jeffrey W. *Johnson's War/Johnson's Great Society: The Guns and Butter Trap*. Westport, Connecticut: Praeger Publishers, 2000. 279 pp.

President Lyndon Johnson’s desire for what the author terms “Guns and Butter” is examined in this work. “Guns and Butter” meant that LBJ wanted to halt Communist aggression in Southeast Asia while, simultaneously, pursuing the “Great Society” at home. According to the author, Johnson failed the “nation as a leader, and he failed on his own terms, losing the war and his Great Society.”

545. Heren, Louis. *No Hail, No Farewell*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1970. 275 pp.

A former Chief Washington Correspondent for the London *Times*, the author reviews the presidency of LBJ, from 1963 to 1969. Heren questions the veracity of the Tonkin Gulf incident. He quotes LBJ to the effect that the Tonkin Gulf resolution, passed by Congress, was like “Grandma’s nightshirt – it covered everything.” Johnson felt he had received a blank check to retaliate as he saw fit. Just when he thought that victory was in his grasp, the 1968 Tet Offensive occurred followed by the realization that American strategy had failed. This, in turn, led to Johnson’s decision not to seek reelection.

546. Hoopes, Townsend. *The Limits of Intervention: (An Inside Account of How the Johnson Policy of Escalation in Vietnam Was Reversed)*. New York: David McKay Company, Incorporated, 1969. 245 pp.

Hoopes’ work is a critical account of American policies and policy-makers in the widening war in Vietnam. This work examines, specifically, a period (April 1, 1968 to January 20, 1969) of the Johnson administration beginning with the events surrounding March 31, 1968. This includes a study of the rejection of additional troops, a partial bombing halt, request for negotiations, and President Johnson’s decision not to seek reelection. These decisions were reached as Johnson recognized a huge shift in public opinion and the “absolute political imperative of yielding to it.”

547. Johnson, Lyndon Baines. *The Vantage Point: Perspectives of the Presidency 1963–1969*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1971. 636 pp.

In this personal memoir, written by the former President, he covers his years in office from 1963 to 1969, with much attention focused (over six chapters) on American involvement in Vietnam. He viewed the Tonkin Gulf incident as a challenge to which we responded. As aggression in South Vietnam continued, the U.S. escalated efforts to halt it. Speaking to the impact of the 1968 Tet Offensive, and his decision not to seek reelection, LBJ points to the “divisiveness and pessimism at home” as his major concerns about Vietnam, not Vietnam itself. The work is illustrated and includes copies of various letters. Of interest is the chart depicting U.S. peace efforts from 1964.

548. Kearns, Doris. *Lyndon Johnson and the American Dream*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1976. 432 pp.

This much acclaimed biography of President Lyndon Johnson follows his rise in politics to Senate leader, Vice-President, and President. Based upon the author's personal relationship, and upon many interviews with LBJ, while the former President prepared his memoirs. In Vietnam LBJ was constantly worried over the Sino-Soviet response and thus he chose a policy of gradual escalation. The author suggests that LBJ was afraid he might give way to “irrational emotions.” Thus he preached “rationality and compromise” while being a master bargainer, using bombs to negotiate – “bargaining without words.” The problem of Vietnam was alien to his experience yet he sought, covertly, to use force in Vietnam and that act ultimately brought about the end of his political career.

549. Kurland, Gerald. *The Gulf of Tonkin Incidents*. Charlottesville, New York: SamHar Press, 1975. 28 pp.

What happened in the Gulf of Tonkin, in August 1964, is covered in 28 pages by the author. He describes the attacks upon the two U.S. Navy destroyers – the U.S.S. *Maddox* and the *C. Turner Joy*. The attacks remain in dispute to this day.

550. Miller, Merle. *Lyndon: An Oral Biography*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1980. 645 pp.

This biography of LBJ was prepared from hundreds of oral interviews, and histories, located at the LBJ Library. It includes comments on every aspect of his years as President. This is an excellent source of quotable material about LBJ and his Vietnam policies. An excellent bibliography of LBJ is included. This work is a tribute to the craft of the oral historian.

551. Rostow, W. W. *The Diffusion of Power: An Essay in Recent History*. New York: The Macmillan Company, 1972. 739 pp.

The author offers sympathetic explanations of the decision to fight Communism, in Southeast Asia and Vietnam, from the perspective of a former presidential advisor in the Johnson administration. Rostow, as one of the architects of Johnson's Vietnam policy, defends America's position in the war. This is a personal memoir of his (Rostow's) years in government service.

552. Schandler, Herbert Y. *The Unmaking of a President: Lyndon Johnson and Vietnam*. Princeton, New Jersey: Princeton University Press, 1977. 419 pp.

Part history (based upon government documents) and part memoir, this work is highly critical of the decision-making process in the Johnson administration, regarding Vietnam. Mr. Schandler was a former Army colonel who served as a staff officer in the Pentagon during the Johnson administration. He focuses upon the Tet Offensive, 1968. He evaluates how the decisions, following Tet, were made and how they affected the domestic scene in the United States.

553. U.S. Congress Senate. Committee on Foreign Relations. *The Gulf of Tonkin, the 1964 Incidents*. 2 parts. 90th Cong., 2nd Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1968. 124 pp.

The official compilation of the documents and testimony of Secretary of Defense Robert S. McNamara, before the Senate Committee on Foreign Relations, concerning the Gulf of Tonkin incidents of August 2nd and 4th, 1964.

554. VanDeMark, Brian. *Into the Quagmire: Lyndon Johnson and the Escalation of the Vietnam War*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1991. 268 pp.

The author focuses attention upon the years 1964 and 1965 when America made the fateful decision to depart from a "limited" war to a "large-scale" war in Vietnam. The author details how President Johnson reached this decision and the consequences of it. He observes that LBJ, and his advisers, failed to "weigh American costs in Vietnam against Vietnam's relative importance to American national interests and its effect on overall American power."

555. Vandiver, Frank E. *Shadows of Vietnam: Lyndon Johnson's Wars*. College Station, Texas: Texas A & M University Press, 1997. 386 pp.

A biographical study of President Lyndon Johnson and the impact of his decisions regarding Vietnam, upon his presidency are offered in this work. The author takes you from the beginning of LBJ's presidency and his opinion of Vietnam (that "Damn Little Pissant Country") to the tortured ending of his administration. The work is illustrated.

556. Windchy, Eugene C. *Tonkin Gulf*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1971. 358 pp.

In this factual account of the events which occurred on August 2 and 4, 1964, in the Gulf of Tonkin, the author interviewed many of the crew members of the two American ships that were attacked by the North Vietnamese. The question is raised as to whether the affair was exploited to deepen American involvement.

5. Nixon Administration

Note: The Richard Nixon Library and Birthplace, Yorba Linda, California.
Website: <http://nixon.archives.gov/> Email: nixon@nara.gov.

557. Bell, Coral. *The Diplomacy of Détente: The Kissinger Era*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1977. 278 pp.

Détente, as an American foreign policy, is analyzed in this work. The author also looks at détente as a diplomatic strategy used to create a triangular balance of power among the U.S., the Soviet Union, and China. The author contends that the U.S. involvement in Southeast Asia produced the "mutation in the American national mood" that permitted détente to emerge.

558. Brown, Sam, and Len Ackland. *Why Are We Still in Vietnam?* New York: Vintage Books, Random House, 1970. 144 pp.

Written as the war was winding down, these essays question President Nixon's war strategy and conduct of the war. The authors observe that Nixon merely changed the terminology of an earlier era – from "pacification" to "Vietnamization," but the policy essentially remained the same.

559. Brown, Seyom. *The Crisis of Power: An Interpretation of United States Foreign Policy During the Kissinger Years*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1979. 170 pp.

An early interpretation of the foreign policies of the Nixon and Ford administrations is the content of this work. The author looks at the 10 years during which Henry Kissinger served as Secretary of State. The author observes that Kissinger over-estimated the determination and persistence of the North Vietnamese, in Hanoi, and this error, in turn, resulted in prolonging the agonizing end. When it finally came, Kissinger attempted to dignify his and President Nixon's prolongation of the war as "tragedy" but necessary to "gain an honorable peace." Because of both men's pride they were unable to admit defeat.

560. Bundy, McGeorge. "Vietnam, Watergate and Presidential Powers." *Foreign Affairs* 58:2 (winter 1979-80), pp. 397-407.

The author contrasts statements made by Henry Kissinger in his book *White House Years* (see entry 568) concerning promises made by President Nixon to South Vietnamese President Thieu about military aid, with public statements. The author concludes that American failure, in South Vietnam, came from supporting the Thieu government and not from any domestic event such as Watergate.

561. Evans, Rowland, Jr., and Robert D. Novak. *Nixon in the White House: The Frustration of Power*. New York: Random House, 1971. 431 pp.

The two noted journalists focus on the Nixon administration. Of Vietnam the authors state that it was Nixon's most "acute problem." Nixon's justification for the invasions of Cambodia and Laos, and the consequences at home, are discussed. The authors point out that during Nixon's term as president, the troubles he faced came just short of real calamity. His weakness was the inability to use his power and political resources to lead a "tightly coordinated administration."

562. Fanning, Louis A. *Betrayal in Vietnam*. New Rochelle, New York: Arlington Books, 1976. 256 pp.

The thesis of this work is that the Nixon administration and the U.S. government betrayed South Vietnam. The work is illustrated.

563. Hayden, Tom. *The Love of Possession is a Disease With Them*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1972. 134 pp.

The accusation that the Nixon administration, instead of limiting its war effort in South Vietnam, actually continued a policy of Western imperialism, is made in this work. The author states that this "Western imperialism" has its roots in the attempted destruction of the American Indian. The author became famous in the antiwar movement and as a peace activist and was one of the founders of the "Students for a Democratic Society" (SDS).

564. Hersh, Seymour M. *The Price of Power: Kissinger in the Nixon White House*. New York: Summit Books, Simon and Schuster, 1983. 480 pp.

The impact of Henry Kissinger upon American foreign policy during Richard Nixon's first term in the White House, is examined in this book. Consequently, a large portion of this work is devoted to Vietnam.

565. Kahn, Albert Eugene, compiler. *The Unholy Hymnal: Falsities and Delusions Rendered by Richard M. Nixon (and Others)*. New York: A Touchstone Book, Simon and Schuster, 1971. 159 pp.

This work is a collection of quotations from President Nixon and other individuals, concerning the Vietnam War. A bibliography is included. This work makes entertaining reading.

566. Kalb, Marvin, and Bernard Kalb. *Kissinger*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1974. 577 pp.

This biography of the charismatic Henry Alfred Kissinger, Harvard professor who became a controversial diplomat, is based on interviews, writings, and the speeches of Kissinger. The authors explore his early life and career and examine his role in the U.S. involvement in Vietnam. Three chapters of the book are devoted to Kissinger and the peace negotiations in Paris. The work is illustrated.

567. Kimball, Jeffrey. *Nixon's Vietnam War*. Lawrence, Kansas: University Press of Kansas, 1998. 495 pp.

An examination of President Nixon's role in making, implementing, and promulgating U.S. policy – both foreign and military, in Vietnam makes up this work. The author looks at Nixon in the role of peacemaker, war leader, to that of a weakened president. This is an excellent source of information about Nixon, the U.S. government, the policy-makers of his time, and the Vietnam War. The work is illustrated.

568. Kissinger, Henry. *White House Years*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1979. 1,521 pp.

In this memoir of his service, first as Assistant for National Security Affairs and later, as Secretary of State – from roughly 1968 to 1973, Kissinger describes his feelings on Vietnam and the policies employed to end the war. The Paris peace negotiations are covered in detail. The work is illustrated.

569. Morris, Roger. *Uncertain Greatness: Henry Kissinger and American Foreign Policy*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1977. 312 pp.

This work focuses on Henry Kissinger and the thrust of his foreign policy. In the chapter "And You and I Will End the War, 1969–73," the author reviews the whole tragic series of events that extricated the U.S. from Vietnam. The author makes a critical assessment of Kissinger's ability and observes that American wealth spawned corruption which in turn led to the decay of American foreign policy.

570. Nixon, Richard. *The Real War*. New York: Warner Books, 1980. 341 pp.

The former President describes the continuous power struggle between the United States and the Soviet Union, and the way American power can be used to win the “Real War.” In the chapter “The Vietnam Syndrome,” Nixon reviews the situation in Vietnam that he inherited as Commander-In-Chief for the last five years of the war. He defends his actions in Cambodia and Laos, in 1970–71, and claims success. The invasion of 1972, according to Nixon, served to strengthen U.S.-Soviet relations by demonstrating American power. He blames the media and “conscience-stricken ‘dissenters’” for poisoning public opinion and turning victory into defeat. Nixon admonishes the American people to prepare for a prolonged struggle of perseverance.

571. ——. *RN: The Memoirs of Richard Nixon*. New York: Grosset and Dunlap, 1978. 1,120 pp.

Nixon’s lengthy memoir recalls his years as President. In it he devotes attention to the Vietnam War and the Cambodian incursion although more attention is paid to the Watergate scandal which ultimately led Nixon to become the only President in our history (to date) to resign. The book is illustrated.

572. ——. *United States Foreign Policy for the 1970s: Building for Peace*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1971. 193 pp.

Prepared as a report for the Congress (February 25, 1971) this was the second annual presidential review of U.S. foreign policy. The President reviews the “Nixon Doctrine” as it relates to national interests. On Vietnam he observes that the United States will fight to achieve peace and that America “will not be content until all conflict is stilled.” Of Laos and Cambodia Nixon states that until there is peace in Vietnam, there can be no peace for her neighbors.

573. Rather, Dan, and Gary Paul Gates. *The Palace Guard*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1974. 326 pp.

The men closest to the President – the aides and cabinet members, the “Palace Guard” or, as the authors also refer to them later, “The Knights of the Woeful Countenance” are described in this work. The question of whether or not Peking and/or Moscow pressured Hanoi to soften its terms for negotiations, after years of war, on the eve of Nixon’s reelection, is raised. Illustrated, this book is about those individuals who pursued and exercised power during Richard Nixon’s term as President.

574. Smith, Colonel Russell H. USAF. "The Presidential Decision on the Cambodian Operation: A Case Study in Crisis Management." *Air University Review* 22:6 (September–October 1971), pp. 45–53.

The first test of the "Nixon Doctrine" came during April 1970 when the President announced, to the American people, that United States forces had been committed to Cambodia. This is a study of that decision based upon military factors, domestic policies, and international relations.

6. Ford Administration

Note: The Gerald R. Ford Presidential Library, Ann Arbor, Michigan. Website: <http://fordlibrarymuseum.gov/> Email: ford.library@nara.gov

575. Ford, Gerald R. *A Time to Heal: The Autobiography of Gerald R. Ford*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, and The Reader's Digest Association, Incorporated, 1979. 454 pp.

The former President discusses his amnesty plan for Vietnam draft evaders, his attitude on the Vietnam War, and the *Mayaguez* incident off the coast of Cambodia – the last action of the war. The book is illustrated.

576. Hugh, Sidey. *Portrait of a President*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1975. 189 pp.

A brief, illustrated, biographical sketch of the 38th President.

577. Rowan, Roy. *The Four Days of Mayaguez*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1975. 224 pp.

The author recalls the Cambodian seizure of the S.S. *Mayaguez*, and her 39 crewmen, on May 12–16, 1975. The four days of captivity, and the rescue attempt by U.S. Marines, were a crisis situation for President Gerald Ford. The book includes maps and is illustrated.

578. Wetterhahn, Ralph. *The Last Battle: The Mayaguez Incident and the End of the Vietnam War*. New York: Carroll and Graf, Publishers, Incorporated, 2001. 384 pp.

The last helicopter had barely been gone from Saigon when, on May 12, 1975, Cambodian Khmer Rouge forces seized the S.S. *Mayaguez*. President Ford negotiated for the release of the crew. Unfortunately, not knowing that the crew was being released – although at another location, Ford ordered in Marines to the rescue. They ended up fighting in what became the last military

engagement of the Vietnam War and totally unnecessary. In the confusion over the location of the crew, the Marines unknowingly attacked the wrong location and, in the end, departed with 41 dead and three missing. An excellent chronology of the entire incident, and illustrations, are included.

C. United States Congress and the Vietnam War

579. Haley, P. Edward. *Congress and the Fall of South Vietnam and Cambodia*. Rutherford, New Jersey: Fairleigh Dickinson University Press, 1982. 227 pp.

This work examines the collapse of the governments of South Vietnam and Cambodia and the role of the United States Congress.

580. Krause, Patricia A., ed. *Anatomy of an Undeclared War: Congressional Conference on the Pentagon Papers*. New York: International Universities Press, Incorporated, 1972. 217 pp.

This book contains an edited transcript of the three-day conference on the Pentagon Papers held July 27–29, 1971. The book assesses United States foreign policy concerning Vietnam and considers culpability and responsibility for the war. Some illustrations are included.

581. Robinson, Frank M., and Earl Kemp, eds. *Report on the U.S. Senate Hearings – The Truth about Vietnam*. San Diego, California: Greenleaf Classics, Incorporated, 1966. 414 pp.

A collection of documents that examines the U.S. Senate hearings of January–February 1966, concerning American involvement in Vietnam. Originally, the hearings were conducted to “amend further the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961.”

582. U.S. Congress. House Committee on Armed Services. Special Subcommittee on National Defense Posture. *Review of the Vietnam Conflict and its Impact on U.S. Military Commitments Abroad. Report ... August 24, 1968*. 90th Cong., 2nd Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1968. 84 pp.

This government report examines how the Vietnam War affected United States military commitments elsewhere.

583. U.S. Congress. Senate Committee on Foreign Relations. *Congress and the Termination of the Vietnam War*. 93rd Cong., 1st Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973. 17 pp.

This brief publication focuses on the involvement of the United States Congress in ending America’s participation in the Vietnam War.

584. "Vietnam Perspective: The Congress and the War." Washington, D.C.: Columbia Broadcasting System, Incorporated, CBS News, 1966. 75 pp.

A mimeographed typescript of a television interview with U.S. Senators Joseph Clark (D-Pennsylvania), Wayne Morse (D-Oregon), Karl Mundt (R-South Dakota), John Stennis (D-Mississippi), and Representative Hale Boggs (D-Mississippi) with CBS correspondent Eric Sevaried on the role of Congress and the Vietnam War.

D. Legal and Moral Issues

585. Drinan, Robert F. *Vietnam and Armageddon: Peace, War and the Christian Conscience*. New York: Sheed and Ward, 1970. 210 pp.

A Jesuit priest, Father Drinan examines the moral aspects of the Vietnam War. This is a comprehensive study and he examines all of the religious aspects of the war. The role of the Vatican and the War, for the Roman Catholic perspective, as well as American Protestant and Jewish viewpoints are assessed. Father Drinan openly spoke out against the war. He visited Vietnam, in 1969, and realized that the U.S. had made a huge mistake and wrote this book.

586. Falk, Richard A., ed. *The Vietnam War and International Law*. 4 vols. Princeton, New Jersey: Princeton University Press; Vol. 1 (1968), 633 pp; Vol. 2 (1969), 1,270 pp; Vol. 3 (1972), 951 pp; Vol. 4 (1976), 1,051 pp.

Sponsored by the American Society of International Law, this four-volume study examines the Vietnam War in the context of international law. Volume 1 contains essays on the background and legal appraisals, and analyzes issues of international law. Volume 2 examines the debate over the legality of the war. Volume 3 focuses upon additional legal questions raised about the war such as Cambodia, My Lai, and war crimes. Volume 4 deals with the conclusion and settlement of the war, the laws of war, and war crimes and individual responsibility.

587. Friedman, Leon, and Burt Neuborne. *Unquestioning Obedience to the President: The ACLU Case Against the Illegal War in Vietnam*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1972. 284 pp.

The U.S. government's constitutional right to be involved in Vietnam was tested in the cases of *Berk v. Laird* and *Orlando v. Laird*. The authors trace the two separate cases through each step of the

legal process. The Supreme Court refused to review the legality of the war.

588. Hull, Roger H., and John C. Novogrod. *Law and Vietnam*. Dobbs Ferry, New York: Oceana Publications, Incorporated, 1968. 211 pp.

A balanced and comprehensive presentation of both the potentially relevant facts and international law policies about Vietnam. The authors conclude that Vietnam displayed the inherent weakness and inability of the United Nations to provide an effective system of collective security. The work includes a fine bibliography.

589. Keynes, Edward. *Undeclared War: Twilight Zone of Constitutional Power*. University Park, Pennsylvania: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1982. 236 pp.

While this work is not a thorough summary of the war powers of the commander-in-chief, or Congress, it is a good recounting of the judicial reviews of many Vietnam War era cases. Perhaps the single most important constitutional legacy of the Vietnam War, and the U.S. participation in that war, is the War Powers Act. The author, however, neglected to analyze this subject.

590. Lefever, Ernest W., ed. *Ethics and World Politics: Four Perspectives*. Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 1972. 99 pp.

Moral and religious aspects of the Vietnam War are explored in this collection of essays and lectures. Originally published by the Washington Center of Foreign Policy Research, Studies in International Affairs, Christian A. Herter Lecture Series (1971).

591. Menzel, Paul T., ed. *Moral Argument and the War in Vietnam: A Collection of Essays*. Nashville, Tennessee: Aurora Publishers, Incorporated, 1971. 281 pp.

Divided into four sections, this book presents both sides of the argument concerning the American presence in Vietnam. The four sections discuss “just” war, genocide, solutions, and wide-ranging issues that have stemmed from the war.

592. Millett, Stephen M. “The Air Force, the Courts, and the Controversial Bombing of Cambodia.” *Air University Review* 27:5 (July–August 1976), pp. 80–88.

The unprecedented court injunction, ordering a halt to the bombing of Cambodia by President Nixon in the summer of 1973, is examined in this article. Ultimately, the Congress terminated funds for the bombing of Cambodia and passed the War Powers Act which

required 48 hours' notification to Congress prior to taking military action. The author doubts the constitutionality of the act, in that it infringes upon the president's power, but he suggests future unilateral military actions taken by a president will be deterred.

593. Moore, John Norton. *Law and the Indo-China War*. Princeton, New Jersey: Princeton University Press, 1972. 794 pp.

A comprehensive, balanced, well-argued and documented interpretation. The author examines specific legal issues raised by American involvement in Vietnam. Divided into four parts, the book considers international legal observations, world order perspectives, international law and the war, and the war and the structure of the National Security process. Pertinent documents are contained in the appendices and an annotated bibliography is included.

594. Mozingo, David P. *The United States in Asia: Evolution and Containment*. New York: The Council on Religion and International Affairs, 1967. 24 pp.

Written during the period of rapid escalation of the war in Vietnam, this brief work is a collection of four essays relating moral and religious insight to contemporary events. The author, a specialist on Communist China, is a former senior analyst for the RAND Corporation and has spent considerable time in Southeast Asia.

595. Standard, William L. *Aggression: Our Asian Disaster*. New York: Random House, 1971. 228 pp.

The United States is portrayed as the aggressor in Vietnam, in this work. The author focuses on that aggression in the light of international law.

596. U.S. Congress. Senate Committee on Foreign Relations. *Moral and Military Aspects of the War in Southeast Asia. Hearings ... May 7 and 12, 1970*. 91st Cong., 2nd Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1970. 108 pp.

Statements which have been inserted into the *Congressional Record* regarding basic American moral issues concerning the war, are contained in this document.

597. Wermuth, Colonel Anthony L. USA (Ret.). "Deputies of Zeus: Morality and the Vietnam War." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 100: 8/858 (August 1974), pp. 26-34.

This is a personal opinion based on a post-war assessment of the motives and morality of antiwar activities.

E. Vietnam and the United Nations

598. Bloomfield, L. P. *The U.N. and Vietnam*. New York: Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 1968. 44 pp.

A brief review of the role of the United Nations regarding Vietnam. The author is not an avid supporter of the U.N.

599. Mezerik, Avraham G., ed. *Viet Nam and the UN – 1967: National and International Policy*. Vol. 13, number 95. New York: International Review Service, 1967. 191 pp.

This dated work looks at events in the Vietnam War, and the role of the United Nations to 1967, in both the national and international context. Some maps are included.

600. U.S. Congress. Senate Committee on Foreign Relations. *Submission of the Vietnam Conflict to the United Nations. Hearings*. 90th Cong., 1st Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 206 pp.

This publication is the collected statements and letters urging the matter of Vietnam to be undertaken for resolution by the United Nations.

F. U.S. Military Policy/Joint Chiefs of Staff

601. Baral, Jaya K. *The Pentagon and the Making of U.S. Foreign Policy: A Case Study of Vietnam*. Atlantic Highlands, New Jersey: Humanities Press, 1978. 333 pp.

The author considers both civilian and military elements of the Department of Defense with regard to Vietnam policy-making. The author makes a case study of South Vietnam from 1960 to 1968.

602. Bletz, Donald F. *The Role of the Military Professional in U.S. Foreign Policy*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, Special Studies in U.S. Economic and Social Development, 1972. 320 pp.

The extent to which the professional military officer enters the arena of foreign affairs is the object of this examination. U.S. military policy and the armed forces as an arm of American foreign policy is studied.

603. Gallucci, Robert L. *Neither Peace nor Honor: The Politics of American Military Policy in Viet-Nam*. School of Advanced International Studies, "Studies in International Affairs," no. 24. Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 1975. 187 pp.

Using the premise that American involvement in Vietnam represented unwise policy, the author focuses upon the decision-making process, how participation in Vietnam continued, and why the policy decisions did not accomplish their aims. The lessons of this sophisticated study can be applied in areas other than Vietnam. The book includes a select bibliography.

604. Gough, Terrence, ed. *The Joint Chiefs of Staff and the War in Vietnam – Vol. 1: 1940–1954*. 5 vols. Wilmington, Delaware: Michael Glazier, Incorporated, 1983. 525 pp.

This, the first of five volumes of official records, examines the policies and influence of the Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS) pertaining to the roots of U.S. involvement in Vietnam. The first volume examines the JCS and Vietnam prior to the National Security Act of 1947, and then proceeds through 1954.

605. Hamilton, Wm. (sic) Alexander. “The Influence of the American Military upon United States Foreign Policy, 1965–68.” Ph.D. dissertation, University of Nebraska, 1978. 279 pp.

Mr. Hamilton explores the impact of the military establishment upon American foreign policy regarding Southeast Asia, from 1965 to 1968. He observes that Vietnam was beyond the “political grasp” of the U.S. and military efforts to save South Vietnam, after Diem, were “fatally flawed.” Consequently, attrition became the military policy of the United States.

606. Taylor, Maxwell D. *Responsibility and Response*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1967. 84 pp.

A brief collection of the author’s lectures he delivered at Lehigh University in 1966. Two of the lectures dealt with Vietnam. A good source of information concerning the Johnson administration.

607. Trewhitt, Henry L. *McNamara: His Ordeal in the Pentagon*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1971. 307 pp.

A biography of the Secretary of Defense to Presidents Kennedy and Johnson. McNamara served in this capacity during the crucial years of the Vietnam War, from 1961 to 1967. The author describes how McNamara took control as Secretary of Defense and his accomplishments and failures.

608. Weigley, Russell F. *The American Way of War: A History of United States Military Strategy and Policy*. New York: Macmillan Publishing Company, Incorporated, 1973. 590 pp.

A history of American military and naval strategy, from 1775 to 1973, has been condensed into this work. American strategy, in Vietnam, is reviewed in Chapter 18, “Strategies of Action Attempted: To the Vietnam War.” The author observes that American military policy became stagnated by the world wars and American military history to the degree that, in Vietnam, the U.S. found itself repeating past mistakes. An excellent bibliography (to 1973), arranged by periods, is included.

G. Peace Negotiations and Cease-Fires

609. Berman, Larry. *No Peace, No Honor: Nixon, Kissinger, and Betrayal in Vietnam*. New York: A Touchstone Book, Simon and Schuster, Incorporated, 2001. 334 pp.

According to the author there is but one word that describes the efforts of President Nixon and his Secretary of State, Henry Kissinger, and that is “betrayal.” The author reaches this conclusion through an examination of declassified documents relevant to the peace discussions. He offers the explanation that both Nixon and Kissinger wanted a signed peace agreement with the North Vietnamese and Viet Cong knowing that it would be violated. Thus, the U.S. would be able to continue the war because that would be the only way the American people could accept continued fighting.

610. Cutrona, Colonel Joseph F. H. USA. “Peace in Vietnam: An Acceptable Solution.” *Military Review* 46:11 (November 1966), pp. 60–68.

A twelve-step proposal is put forth, in this article, to attain peace in Vietnam. The author includes the withdrawal of United States forces (1966).

611. Dillard, Walter Scott. *Sixty Days to Peace: Implementing the Paris Peace Accords Vietnam 1973*. Washington, D.C.: National Defense University, Fort Leslie J. McNair, 1982. 240 pp.

The four-party Joint Military Commission, composed of representatives from North and South Vietnam, the Viet Cong, and the United States, created to implement certain provisions of the Paris Peace Accords are examined in this work. This work was prepared by the military members of the U.S. delegation during the 60-day life span of the commission. It includes figures, maps, illustrations, a list of acronyms, and sources.

612. Frisbee, John L. “Recon Photos: The Communist Buildup in Vietnam.” *Air Force Magazine* 57:4 (1974), pp. 32–35.

Using reconnaissance photographs of Communist installations in South Vietnam, the author demonstrates how the Communists violated the cease-fire agreement of January 1973. The pictures reveal the buildup of North Vietnamese combat troops, equipment, and supplies – all in direct violation of the agreement.

613. Goodman, Allan E. "Ending the Viet Nam Conflict: Expectations in Hanoi and Saigon." *Orbis* 16:3 (fall 1972), pp. 632–45.

The author examines the October 26, 1972, peace proposal made public by Hanoi. The proposal did not lead to involvement with the Viet Cong in South Vietnamese politics due, primarily, to the brutal Communist assaults and occupations of 1972.

614. ——. *The Lost Peace: America's Search for a Negotiated Settlement of the Vietnam War*. Stanford, California: Hoover Institute Press, 1978. 298 pp.

In this comprehensive study, the author describes the search for an end to the war in Vietnam. The author interviewed prominent officials – both American and non-Communist Vietnamese – involved in the peace negotiations from 1962 to 1974. Mr. Goodman describes the various bombing halts, the Nixon Doctrine, the Kissinger-Tho talks, and other related topics. The work is illustrated and useful data is found in the appendices.

615. Herring, George C., ed. *The Secret Diplomacy of the Vietnam War: The Negotiating Volumes of the Pentagon Papers*. Austin, Texas: University of Texas Press, 1983. 873 pp.

Based on the documents and materials located in the "Pentagon Papers" this work describes the peace negotiations to end American involvement in the Vietnam War. The work is illustrated. Herring also authored *America's Longest War: The United States and Vietnam, 1950–1975* (New York, 1979).

616. Kissinger, Henry. *Ending the Vietnam War: A History of America's Involvement in and Extrication from the Vietnam War*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2003. 635 pp.

Written by the architect of President Nixon's peace effort, then Secretary of State Henry Kissinger conducted secret negotiations with the North Vietnamese to reach a peace accord in Paris. He describes the peace talks, the widening war, the war in Laos, the bombing campaign over North Vietnam, Watergate, and the withdrawal from Saigon. Written from firsthand experience and his memoirs, this work is to be considered his definitive account.

617. Kraslow, David, and Stuart H. Loory. *The Secret Search for Peace in Vietnam*. New York: Random House, 1968. 248 pp.

The public record of the Johnson administration's peace efforts in Vietnam are compared with its secret record in this work. The authors relied upon interviews with people in the administration and their research in public records. They concluded that the Johnson administration missed opportunities to secure peace in Vietnam.

618. Nguyen Thi Binh. *Peace Initiative: Statement made by Minister Mme Nguyen Thi Binh at the Paris Conference on Viet Nam on September 17, 1970*. np. (September 1970), 6 pp.

The author outlines a ten-point program calling on the United States to end the war and withdraw all troops. The reunification of Vietnam, as one country, is demanded. This pamphlet was distributed by the Provisional Revolutionary Government (PRG) of the Republic of South Vietnam.

619. Porter, Gareth. *A Peace Denied: The United States, Vietnam, and the Paris Agreement*. Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, 1975. 357 pp.

Despite a negotiated agreement, peace did not come to South Vietnam. This work explains why diplomacy failed to bring peace to the Republic of South Vietnam. Mr. Porter examines how the treaty was negotiated, the talks in Paris, the implementation of the peace, and the final political stalemate and shifting military balance. The appendix contains the protocol of the agreement.

620. Radvanyi, Janos. *Delusions and Reality: Gambits, Hoaxes and Diplomatic One-Upmanship in Vietnam*. South Bend, Indiana: Gateway Editions, 1978. 295 pp.

This unusual study compares the roles of the Soviets, the Communist Chinese, and the East Europeans in the Vietnam peace negotiations. A detailed analysis of the Communist decision-making process is included. The author was the former *Chargé d'Affaires* at the Hungarian embassy in Washington. He defected in disgust over his country's role in the Vietnam peace process.

621. —. "Vietnam War Diplomacy: Reflections of a Former Iron Curtain Official." *Parameters* 10:3 (September 1980), pp. 8–15.

Personally involved in the peace negotiations between Washington and Hanoi, during 1965–66, the author observes that other parties were involved in the war besides the United States and Vietnam.

Consequently, other countries were involved in the diplomacy as well as the fighting.

622. Randle, Robert. "Peace in Vietnam and Laos: 1954, 1962, 1973." *Orbis* 16:3 (fall 1974), pp. 868-87.

The various peace plans put forth for Vietnam and Laos are detailed in this article. The author covers the French settlement in 1954, the Geneva Conference and, finally, the January 1973 peace proposal. He concludes that to achieve peace the major powers need to discourage Vietnam and Laos from resorting to military force and promote economic development and reconciliation.

623. Serong, Brigadier F. P. "Vietnam's Menacing Cease-fire." *Conflict Studies* 51 (November 1974), pp. 1-18.

An assessment of the military, economic, and political options of maintaining the cease-fire in Vietnam, with respect to American domestic considerations, is the focus of this article. The author weighs the options of the Americans on the one hand as opposed to President Thieu on the other.

624. Thompson, Sir Robert. "Why Did Hanoi Sign the Cease-Fire Agreement?" *Ordnance* 58:319 (July-August 1973), pp. 50-51.

According to the author the North Vietnamese invasion of South Vietnam failed in the face of stiff resistance backed by American air power. Communist interests were best served by an unenforceable pact and the U.S. got out of the war.

625. U.S. Department of Defense. "The Search for Peace in Vietnam." *Vietnam Review* 2 (September 1967). Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 4 pp.

Official DoD work which follows the peace efforts of the U.S. and the U.N. in Vietnam. It includes a discussion of the Johnson-Ho Chi Minh exchange and the U.S. "Fourteen Points" for peace with a concise examination of diplomatic initiatives from other countries. Some illustrations are included.

626. —. "Vietnam Agreement: I." *Commanders Digest* 13:15 (February 15, 1973). Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973. 16 pp.

This article discusses the peace agreement ending the Vietnam War. It includes President Nixon's "Peace with Honor" address of January 23, 1973, the basic elements of the agreement, and the protocol concerning POWs, foreign civilians, and Vietnamese. Some illustrations and maps are included.

627. —. "Vietnam Agreement: II." *Commanders Digest* 13:16 (February 22, 1973). Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973. 16 pp.

A summary of the cease-fire protocol and the protocol concerning the International Commission of Control and Supervision is the subject of this article. The last page contains Secretary of Defense Melvin Laird's message announcing the end of the draft.

628. "Vietnam Perspective: Winning the Peace." Washington, D.C.: Columbia Broadcasting System, Incorporated, CBS News, 1965. 45 pp.

The transcript of a televised interview on the Vietnam peace talks comprises this short piece. Those interviewed included Secretary of State Dean Rusk, U.N. Ambassador Arthur Goldberg, and Presidential Assistant McGeorge Bundy.

H. Allied Participation

Author's note: It is important to remember that the United States was not alone in fighting the war in Vietnam. Of course the South Vietnamese, other than the Americans, provided the largest contingent of troops. Additionally, other nations sent combat forces to South Vietnam. They include Australia, New Zealand, Thailand, the Republic of Korea, and the Philippines. Spain and Taiwan, and many other nations provided non-combat support. Although Canada did not send troops, many Canadians enlisted in the U.S. Army and fought in Vietnam.

629. King, Peter, ed. *Australia's Vietnam: Australia in the Second Indo-China War*. Winchester, Massachusetts: Allen and Unwin, Incorporated, 1983. 288 pp.

This dispassionate study documents Australia's years of involvement in the Vietnam War. Both the military and domestic fronts are covered. The contributors summarize the status of Australia's armed forces, politicians, media, and the public. The work is indexed with maps located on the end papers.

630. Larsen, Lieutenant General Stanley Robert, and Brigadier General James Lawton Collins, Jr. *Vietnam Studies: Allied Participation in Vietnam*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1975. 189 pp.

Those countries, other than the United States, who provided assistance to the Republic of South Vietnam, during the war, are discussed in this illustrated work. A glossary and maps are also included.

631. Lyman, Princeton N. "Korea's Involvement in Viet Nam." *Orbis* 12:2 (summer 1968), pp. 563-81.

In July 1964, the Republic of Korea began sending military assistance to the government of South Vietnam. By 1967 Korea had some 47,000 men in South Vietnam – second only to the United States. The author discusses the effects of Korean participation including Korea's military forces entering the international scene, the strengthening of relations with the U.S., and the economic benefits for South Vietnam. He contends that Korea's participation has increased tension with North Korea. Yet, for Korea, the primary motivation was "expelling Communist aggression" from Vietnam.

632. *New Zealand Assistance to the Republic of Vietnam*. Wellington, New Zealand: R. E. Owen, Government Printers, 1965. 72 pp.

A very brief report detailing the government of New Zealand's assistance to the Republic of Vietnam. The role of New Zealand's combat troops is also discussed.

633. Rabel, Roberto. *New Zealand and the Vietnam War: Politics and Diplomacy*. Auckland, New Zealand: Auckland University Press, 2005. 443 pp.

In this very recent account the author, as the title states, places the focus on the politics and diplomacy pertinent to New Zealand's role in the Vietnam War. The military role is the subject of a future work. The author describes New Zealand seeing the Cold War threat of Communism and how it had spread to Southeast Asia and how, although Australia was nearby, they would have to make a stand. The work is illustrated.

634. U.S. Department of Defense. "Free-World Assistance to South Vietnam." *Vietnam Review* 4A (April 1968), revised. Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1968. 4 pp.

A list of those nations who have provided aid to South Vietnam under the Free-World Assistance program. Some illustrations are included.

635. —. "Opinions of Asian and Pacific Leaders." *Vietnam Review* 9 (July 1968). Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1968. 4 pp.

Pro-American views of Asian leaders regarding U.S. involvement in Vietnam comprise this brief summary. Among those Asian leaders commenting are Souvanna Phouma (Laos); Ferdinand Marcos (the Philippines); Chung Hee Park (Republic of Korea); and Eisaku Sato (Japan). There are some illustrations.

V

The Vietnam War

A. General Studies

636. Anderson, Kenneth. *U.S. Military Operations 1945–1985*. Greenwich, Connecticut: The Military Press, Bison Books Corporation, 1984. 192 pp.

All of the military operations in which the U.S. has participated, from 1945 to 1985, are reviewed in this work. Chapters 4–7 detail the Vietnam War. Many color illustrations are included.

637. Carver, Michael. *War Since 1945*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1981. 322 pp.

The major conflicts in which British, French, and American forces have participated, since 1954, are briefly detailed in this work. The U.S. in the Vietnam War is found in Chapter 10. The author concludes that the Vietnamese people were the real victims of the conflict. The book is illustrated and contains maps and a chronology.

638. Denno, Bryce F. "Military Prospects in Vietnam." *Orbis* 9:2 (summer 1965), pp. 411–17.

The military situation is appraised (as of 1965) in this article. The author observes that wars end when the people of one side, regardless of military ability, believe that they are defeated. The imminent danger for South Vietnam, consequently, was political defeat without military defeat.

639. ——. "New War in Vietnam." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 92:3 (March 1966), pp. 70-79.

According to the author, a retired Army colonel, the war in Vietnam would be interminable and the United States should have adjusted its thinking accordingly.

640. Dougan, Clark, and Stephen Weiss. *The Vietnam Experience: Nineteen Sixty-Eight*. Vol. 5. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1983. 192 pp.

The dramatic year of 1968 is reviewed in this volume. Topics include the Tet Offensive, the fighting at Hue, and the siege at Khe Sanh. These and the dramatic turmoil created within the United States are vividly depicted in both words and illustrations.

641. Doyle, Edward, and Samuel Lipsman. *The Vietnam Experience: America Takes Over*. Vol. 4. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1982. 192 pp.

The American buildup of men and material, between 1965 and mid-1967 is portrayed in this work. The high-level political and military decisions of the Johnson administration are examined. The war is seen in both its international as well as domestic context. The illustrations are excellent – both color and black and white.

642. Esper, George. *The Eyewitness History of the Vietnam War, 1961-1975*. New York: Ballantine Books, Random House, 1983. 209 pp.

From the first combat death to the fall of Saigon, the award-winning Associated Press author tells the story of the Vietnam War in this work. Every aspect of the war is covered from the soldiers, medics, pilots, airborne troops, to the bombings, terror, and moments of peace. Illustrated. Mr. Esper has based his work upon interviews, diaries, tapes, and letters. A good basic account of the war.

643. Fincher, E. B. *The Vietnam War*. New York: Franklin Watts, 1980. 65 pp.

Designed for the juvenile reader, this very basic book presents the background and issues of the Vietnam War. What the work may lack in objectivity is countered with illustrations.

644. Fulghum, David, Terrence Maitland, and the editors of Boston Publishing Company. *The Vietnam Experience: South Vietnam on Trial: Mid-1970 to 1972*. Vol. 10. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1984. 192 pp.

American conduct of the war, from mid-1970 to 1972, is seen in this volume. Vietnamization, Operation Lam Son 719, the Easter Invasion

of 1972, and the counterattack to halt it, are all included among the topics studied.

645. Harrigan, Anthony. *A Guide to the War in Viet Nam*. Boulder, Colorado: Panther Publishers, Incorporated, 1966. 134 pp.

An early (1966) summary of the war to the mid-1960s, the author provides information regarding the Viet Cong, the ARVN, air cavalry operations, river and coastal warfare, the Buddhist "factor," and the shifting of the war to North Vietnam in 1966.

646. Kleinman, Lieutenant Colonel Forrest K. "The Cracked Crystal Ball." *Viet Nam Journal* 1 (1981), pp. 3-4.

Serving in Vietnam, in 1962, the author compares that early experience of the U.S. to that experienced in the Korean War. The author is of the opinion that, as in the landing at Inchon in Korea, the U.S. should have disembarked forces north of the Demilitarized Zone (DMZ) in Vietnam.

647. Leckie, Robert. *The Wars of America*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1968. 1,052 pp.

A single-volume history of the wars in which the United States has participated, from Colonial times to Vietnam, which is covered in Chapter 10 – "World-Wide Upheaval and the War in Vietnam." Force begets force which thus escalates the arms race, is the author's conclusion. An answer must be found to end the war but until "an answer is found the wars of America will continue."

648. Lipsman, Samuel, and Edward Doyle. *The Vietnam Experience: Fighting for Time*. Vol. 7. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1983. 192 pp.

The changing face of the Vietnam War in 1969 and 1970 is described in this volume. The peace negotiations, disengagement, the village war, and the Cambodian incursion are among the topics discussed. General Creighton Abram's approach to conducting the war, "Operation Dewey Canyon," and Laos are also included.

649. Maclear, Michael. *The Ten Thousand Day War: Vietnam: 1945–1975*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1982. 360 pp.

How the war in Vietnam evolved, from 1945 to 1975, is examined. This work is based upon thousands of interviews conducted with the war planners, negotiators, the fighting men, and even CIA operatives who conducted clandestine war. Westmoreland, Taylor, Giap, Laird, Colby, and many others were interviewed during the preparation of this work. The Canadian television series of the same

name is based upon this work. This is an excellent one-volume resource on the subject.

650. Maitland, Terrence, and Peter McInerney. *The Vietnam Experience: A Contagion of War*. Vol. 6. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1983. 192 pp.

As a companion volume to one of the series' earlier volumes – *America Takes Over* (see entry number 641), *Contagion* examines the tactics of the war. What was the war like for the Americans? The South Vietnamese? The Allies? The Viet Cong and the North Vietnamese? This volume looks at some of the countless battles and pacification efforts that occurred from 1965 to 1967. The work contains excellent illustrations.

651. —. and Stephen Weiss. *The Vietnam Experience: Raising the Stakes*. Vol. 3. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1982. 192 pp.

America during the early years of involvement in Vietnam is focused upon in this volume. Vietnamese internal disorder, the Buddhist revolts, insurgency and counterinsurgency, and the Gulf of Tonkin incidents comprise the bulk of the content.

652. McNamara, Robert S., James G. Blight, Robert K. Brigham, with Colonel Herbert Y. Schandler (USA, Ret.). *Argument Without End: In Search of Answers to the Vietnam Tragedy*. New York: Public Affairs, Perseus Book Group, 1999. 479 pp.

Excellent insight, by the former Secretary of Defense to Presidents Kennedy and Johnson, into how the leaders of both the U.S. and South Vietnam led their respective nations into war. In the end McNamara would be one of the few, in a position of power, to admit his decisions on the war were wrong. He based his research upon a series of discussions, held in Hanoi during 1997 and 1998, in which he posed a series of six questions to the parties being queried. They were asked to respond to the possibility of a neutral Vietnam, what if the Diem regime had survived, the possibility of a U.S. military victory, a U.S. withdrawal (before 1975), why did the negotiations fail, and about general misunderstandings from 1945 to 1960. This is an excellent resource.

653. —. with Brian VanDeMark. *In Retrospect: The Tragedy and Lessons of Vietnam*. New York: Times Books, a Division of Random House, Incorporated, 1995. 414 pp.

How many of the decisions made, during the Kennedy and Johnson administrations, regarding intervention in Vietnam were reached is explained by the author. A man of courage and conviction,

McNamara would later assume responsibility and apologize for errors of judgment. Among the lessons needed to be learned, according to McNamara, are, that in future conflicts involving the U.S., we need to act unilaterally following appropriate consultations with Congress and the American people; the American people must understand and accept the difficulties facing us while the American military must accept the constraints under which they will operate; we must learn how to manage “limited” wars effectively, and finally, we must avoid costly large-scale military operations.

654. Millett, Alan R. *A Short History of the Vietnam War*. Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, 1978. 169 pp.

Twelve articles which originally appeared in the *Washington Post*, from 1973 to 1975, are reprinted in this work. The articles reflect the temper of the time and are written in an intelligent fashion capturing the major causes of the war and its effects. The foreword was written by Major General Edward G. Lansdale, USAF (Ret.), who was active in American intelligence operations in Vietnam from the beginning.

655. Moss, George Donelson. *Vietnam: An American Ordeal*. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, 2002. 4th ed. 529 pp.

The American experience is summed up in this single-volume work on the Vietnam War. The French colonial empire, the Japanese occupation of World War II, the return of the French after the war, and the Americans and their longest war are dealt with. The author observes that the “specter of Vietnam lurked in the background of every American foreign policy debate of the 1970s, 1980s, and 1990s and continues to haunt the nation as it enters the new millennium.” This book is illustrated.

656. O’Ballance, Edgar. *The Wars in Vietnam: 1954–1980*. Rev. New York: Hippocrene Books, 1981. 246 pp.

Events in Vietnam are brought up to 1980 in this revision of the author’s earlier work that went to 1973. A brief, comprehensive, account of the military operations in Vietnam, between 1954 and 1973, is offered. This revision then looks at the American withdrawal and Vietnam in 1980. This is a very useful work for students.

657. Palmer, Dave Richard. *Summons of the Trumpet: U.S.-Vietnam in Perspective*. San Rafael, California: Presidio Press, 1978. 277 pp.

The conflict is divided into three phases by the author in this work: the advisory period, the quest for a military solution, and the search for a diplomatic settlement. A colonel in the U.S. Army, the author was an advisor to South Vietnamese armored units.

658. Pimlott, John. *Vietnam: The Decisive Battles*. Edison, New Jersey: Chartwell Books, 2003. 200 pp.

This oversized volume portrays the major battles and campaigns in which the U.S. forces were engaged in Vietnam. The work begins with the French defeat at Dien Bien Phu (1954) and the first American engagement examined is Ap Bac (1963). Illustrated with both color and black and white photographs. The work also details equipment, forces, and the strategy and tactics employed.

659. ——. ed. *Vietnam: The History and the Tactics*. New York: Crescent Books, Crown Publishers, Incorporated, 1982. 128 pp.

A brief, profusely illustrated, work providing insight into the French involvement in Indochina, the political dimensions, tactics and weapons, Laos and Cambodia, and the fall of South Vietnam.

660. *Report on the War in Vietnam (as of 30 June 1968) Section I Report on Air and Naval Campaigns Against North Vietnam and Pacific Command-Wide Support of the War, June 1964–July 1968 by Admiral U.S. G. Sharp, USN Commander in Chief Pacific; Section II Report on Operations in South Vietnam, January 1964–June 1968 by General W. C. Westmoreland, USA, Commander, U.S. Military Assistance Command, Vietnam*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1968. 349 pp.

The official, combined report on U.S. military and naval activities, 1964 to 1968, in the Republic of Vietnam. A list of the major operations during the period covered is included, as are illustrations and maps.

661. Welsh, Douglas. *The History of the Vietnam War*. New York: Galahad Books, 1981. 192 pp.

French and American involvement in Vietnam is described in this work. Beginning in 1945 it examines how the war began, why it began, American involvement, the Tet Offensive, Vietnamization, the collapse of South Vietnam, and the reasons for defeat.

662. Westmoreland, General William C. *Report on the War in Vietnam*. Military History Branch, Military Assistance Command, Vietnam, 30 June 1968. 328 pp.

In his final report General Westmoreland reviews U.S. participation in the war from 1954 to 1968. Among the “Special Topics” that General Westmoreland addresses are Free World Military Assistance, the RVNAF (Republic of Vietnam Armed Forces), and the state of the command. Maps, charts, and a glossary are included.

663. Young, Marilyn B. *The Vietnam Wars 1945–1990*. New York: Harper Collins Publishers, 1991. 386 pp.

Thirty years of war in Indochina/Vietnam from 1945–46 to 1990, is reviewed. Most historians, however, choose to divide the war into three: categorizing them as either the First, Second, or Third Indochina wars or, by nations, the French, American, and Chinese wars. In this work the author has multiple wars fought in the large time frame indicated. In any event, this is an excellent, concise, history of those wars – regardless of how they are categorized. The work is illustrated and includes a chronology. This is a welcome addition to those texts currently used to teach the war.

B. Specific Studies

1. Strategy, Tactics, and Doctrine

664. Barrett, Raymond. “Graduated Response and the Lessons of Vietnam.” *Military Review* 52:5 (May 1972), pp. 80–91.

The application of force against military targets is focused on in this article. The author contends that it is not surprising that the policy of “graduated response” failed to achieve its goals. The U.S. must seek alternative methods to deal with insurgency, is his conclusion.

665. Bradford, Lieutenant Colonel Zeb B., Jr. USA. “US Tactics in Vietnam.” *Military Review* 52:2 (February 1972), pp. 63–76.

A summary of the tactics employed by the U.S. Army in South Vietnam, is focused on by the author. Before the Tet Offensive of 1968 the U.S. used large forces to fight the war. Following Tet came the employment of small unit actions such as ambush, counter-ambush, and so forth.

666. Burke, Admiral Arleigh. “Alternatives in Vietnam.” *Ordnance* 50:276 (May–June 1966), pp. 611–13.

Admiral Burke suggests increasing the ground war, blockading North Vietnam, mining Haiphong Harbor, and closing the enemy supply routes from neighboring countries as possible alternatives to withdrawal in this article.

667. Carroll, Captain E. J., Jr. USN. “Limited War – Limited Peace?” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 92:12 (December 1966), pp. 30–37.

Using Korea as an example – “the war that wasn’t a war” which ended in “a peace that isn’t a peace,” the author raises questions about

U.S. involvement in Vietnam. The author observes that limited wars end in only temporary peace. Moreover, he suggests that the U.S. should take a firm course of military action.

668. Clark, Wesley K. "Gradualism and American Military Strategy." *Military Review* 55:9 (1975), pp. 3-13.

The theory of "graduated response" or "graduated pressure," and the tension acquired from the application of military power to achieve a political end is discussed. The author contends that this policy failed in Vietnam because it was adopted without a clear plan of how the conflict would end.

669. Cleland, Lieutenant Colonel John R. D. USA. "Principle of the Objective and Vietnam." *Military Review* 46:7 (July 1966), pp. 82-86.

Confusion over U.S. objectives in the Republic of Vietnam are clarified by the author in this article. He contends the objective (1966) must be "to provide protection to the population."

670. Eliot, Major George Fielding. "U.S. Strategy in Vietnam." *Ordnance* 1:272 (September-October 1965), pp. 170-71.

This early (1965) article proposes that the U.S. establish a policy of gradual expansion in Vietnam. To accomplish this, the author suggests that a series of coastal "footholds" be established backed by active naval patrols of the coastal and inland waterways.

671. —. "Teamwork in Vietnam." *Ordnance* 50:275 (March-April 1966), pp. 496-99.

Development of close coordination and cooperation between land-sea-air-based weapons and vehicles is necessary to conduct the war in Vietnam, is the contention of the author in this article.

672. Geneste, Marc E. "Vietnam ... A New Type of War?" *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 94:5 (May 1968), pp. 66-77.

Reflecting upon his own experiences in French Indochina, the author compares the U.S. efforts with those of the French to 1968. The question of using limited nuclear weapons to end the war is raised by the author.

673. Heilbrunn, Dr. Otto. "U.S. Strategy in Vietnam." *Ordnance* 52:286 (January-February 1968), pp. 356-59.

For the U.S. to challenge the enemy at every opportunity in Vietnam it must respect its intelligence and it must erect and maintain the DMZ as an effective buffer, is the strategy put forth by the author.

674. Hoang Ngoc Lung, Colonel. *Strategy and Tactics*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1980. 138 pp.

The various strategic approaches employed by the U.S. in fighting the war is the focus of this monograph. Material is included on pacification, strategic hamlets, Operation Phoenix, Vietnamization, and the various tactics used by both the Republic of Vietnam Armed Forces (RVNAF) and the U.S. North Vietnamese strategy and tactics are also discussed.

675. Michael, Stanley J., Jr. "Vietnam: Failure to Follow the Principles of War." *Marine Corps Gazette* 61:8 (1977), pp. 56-62.

The enemy followed the correct strategy and the U.S. did not, is the author's contention in this article. The United States neglected to adhere to the principles of war in Vietnam. Consequently, the U.S. failed to win the war.

676. Mueller, John E. "The Search for the 'Breaking Point' in Vietnam: The Statistics of a Deadly Quarrel." *International Studies Quarterly* 24:4 (December 1980), pp. 497-519.

Employed by the U.S. in Vietnam, this article examines the "breaking point" strategy. It was widely believed that the Communists would stop fighting once a certain level of punishment and suffering had been inflicted by the United States. However, such a collapse was never attained during the war. The author concludes that if any such "breaking point" ever existed it was beyond a level the U.S. was willing to pass.

677. Palmer, Gregory. *The McNamara Strategy and the Vietnam War: Program Budgeting in the Pentagon, 1960-1968*. Westport, Connecticut: Greenwood Press, 1978. 169 pp.

A critique of U.S. strategy in Vietnam during the years 1960 to 1968 is offered in this assessment. The tenure of Secretary of Defense Robert S. McNamara is focused upon.

678. Rhyne, Russell F. "Victory in Vietnam." *Military Review* 50:2 (February 1970), pp. 37-47.

A three-stage program to achieve victory in Vietnam is proposed in this article. First, "persuade" the North Vietnamese to abandon their invasion of South Vietnam; second, disperse Viet Cong units in South Vietnam with the methods employed by the French in Algeria; and, third, use continuous patrolling to disperse guerrillas in techniques similar to those used by the British in Malaya.

679. Summers, Harry G., Jr. *On Strategy: A Critical Analysis of the Vietnam War*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1982. 225 pp.

Using von Clausewitz's tenets concerning war, this book describes how the U.S. ignored the fundamental strategies necessary for victory and allowed the North Vietnamese to take the initiative that led to American defeat. The author relates how the U.S. disregarded Clausewitz's "trinity" of the people, the government, and the army. Moreover, the United States, by ignoring the lessons of Korea, failed in Vietnam to fulfill its strategic objectives. The author is a combat veteran of both Korea and Vietnam.

680. ———. "A Strategic Perception of the Vietnam War." *Parameters* 13:2 (June 1983), pp. 41–46.

While a strategic analysis of the U.S. participation in the Vietnam War cannot shape the consequences, it can provide insight and train us to avoid future pitfalls which were encountered in Vietnam, is the author's thesis in this article.

681. Thomas, James A. "Limited War: The Theory and the Practice." *Military Review* 53:2 (1973), pp. 75–82.

The author contends that United States involvement in the wars both in Korea and Vietnam were limited conflicts in which expectations clashed with goals. The result, in both, was dissatisfaction within the military. The author proposes that the Army thoroughly study limited war and participate in appropriate field exercises to prepare for such conflict.

682. Trager, Frank N. "Vietnam: The Military Requirements for Victory." *Orbis* 8:3 (fall 1964), pp. 563–83.

A discussion of the background, geographical and political factors, and military requirements for victory in Vietnam is offered in this article. Three areas of military attention are noted: border areas, areas of Communist concentration, and areas of Communist opportunity. Mr. Trager observes that each area requires its own war plan and forces because each sector represents a different type of warfare. He states that ultimate success can only be achieved by a "clear-cut military victory over the Viet Cong" and by winning the "political loyalty of the population."

2. Leadership

683. Blumenson, Martin, and James L. Stokesbury. *Masters of the Art of Command*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1975. 393 pp.

An analysis of military leadership through individual examples is offered in this work. From the Romans to the present day the authors examine the leadership qualities of General Charles Stone, U.S. Army Fourth Infantry Division, Vietnam, on pp. 347–60.

684. Cole, Henry G. "Leadership from Within." *Military Review* 53:2 (1973), pp. 83–91.

The author contends that as the war neared its conclusion the Army needed to develop a social awareness to avoid any isolation of the Army from American society. In this approach officers could learn how to lead young soldiers during a period of anti-militarism. The model of the Federal German Forces Leadership School is proposed by the author.

685. Furgurson, Ernest B. *Westmoreland: The Inevitable General*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1968. 347 pp.

This biography of General Westmoreland was written by a journalist. He provides information on Westmoreland's life, cadet years, military career, and his service in Vietnam to 1969. This is not a critical work on Westmoreland. The book is illustrated.

686. Hendrickson, Paul. *The Living and the Dead: Robert McNamara and Five Lives of a Lost War*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1996. 427 pp.

For two presidents – Kennedy and Johnson, Robert S. McNamara was the "official" face of the Vietnam War for Americans. Through the lives of five people, whom McNamara's policies personally affected – a wounded Marine, an Army nurse, a Vietnamese refugee, a Quaker who burned himself to death, and an enraged artist who attempted to kill McNamara, the author relates how McNamara lost faith in the war. Some illustrations are included.

687. Kinnard, Douglas. *The War Managers*. Hanover, New Hampshire: University Press of New England for the University of Vermont, 1977. 216 pp.

A retired brigadier general in the U.S. Army, the author surveys the professional attitudes of 173 Army generals who had commanded in Vietnam. Because anonymity was guaranteed to the generals the result is a fascinating look at the war. The appendix contains the questionnaire and a list of generals who had commanded in Vietnam. The author provides an excellent bibliography.

3. *Military Advisors*

Note: See entry number 1009 for the U.S. Air Force Advisor's official history.

688. Bowers, Ray L. "Americans in the Vietnamese Air Force: The 'Dirty Thirty.'" *Aerospace Historian* 19:3 (fall, September 1972), pp. 125-31.
- The first group of 30 U.S. Air Force pilots, who comprised the "Pilot Augmentation Group" – the "Dirty Thirty," are recalled in this article. Detailed to South Vietnam, in April 1962, their mission was to train the South Vietnamese Air Force.
689. Cao Van Vien General, Truong, Ngo Q., Khuyen, Dong V., Hin, Nguyen D., and Tho, Tran D. *Indochina Monographs: The U.S. Adviser*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, 1980. 205 pp.
- The American advisory role to the armed forces of South Vietnam is related in this monograph from the South Vietnamese perspective. The authors examine this role from the uppermost levels (JGS-MACV) down to that of the training advisor. Many charts, maps, and illustrations highlight the work and a glossary is included.
690. Collins, Brigadier General James Lawton, Jr. *Vietnam Studies: The Development and Training of the South Vietnamese Army, 1950-1972*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1975. 163 pp.
- The growth and development of the South Vietnamese Army is described in this work. The role of the U.S. Army is emphasized, especially with the MACV advisory system. Photographs illustrate the work.
691. Dockery, Martin J. *Lost in Translation: Vietnam: A Combat Adviser's Story*. New York: A Presidio Press Book, the Random House Publishing Group, 2003. 254 pp.
- The author was a combat advisor to a South Vietnamese infantry battalion during 1962-63 and he writes this work from his personal experiences. Useful in gaining insight into the thinking of the American military before the huge troop commitments began.
692. Hickey, G. C. *The American Military Advisor and His Foreign Counterpart: The Case of Vietnam*. Santa Monica, California: The RAND Corporation, 1965. 85 pp.
- A brief and dated (1965) report examining the relationship between American military advisors and their South Vietnamese counterparts. The report is based upon the author's 10-month inquiry in Vietnam 1965.
693. Ray, Captain James F. "The District Advisor." *Military Review* 45:5 (May 1965), pp. 3-8.

An advisor in the Nha Be district, Gia Dinh Province, South Vietnam, in 1964, this article is based upon the author's personal experiences. He describes some of the problems encountered.

694. Slaff, Captain Allan P. USN. "Naval Advisor Vietnam." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 95:4 (April 1969), pp. 38-44.

The role of the U.S. Naval Advisor to the South Vietnamese Navy is examined by the author. How the naval advisor worked with coastal forces, riverine operations, and fleet command is described. The article is illustrated. A good general account of a heretofore neglected aspect of the war.

695. Spector, Ronald H. *Advice and Support: The Early Years 1941-1960: United States Army in Vietnam*. Vol. 1. U.S. Army Center of Military History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1983. 391 pp.

This is the first volume of the official U.S. Army history of the Vietnam War. The work describes the role of the U.S. Army in Vietnam during World War II, military advice and assistance to the government of France during the immediate postwar years, and the advisory program developed after the 1954 Geneva Agreements. The book is illustrated and includes a map and bibliographical notes. Spector presents a well-written, balanced, account of American assistance during the early years in Vietnam.

696. Whitlow, Captain Robert H. USMCR. *U.S. Marines in Vietnam: The Advisory & Combat Assistance Era 1954-1964*. Vol. 1. History and Museums Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1977. 190 pp.

This first volume of the official Marine Corps history of the Vietnam War details the initial decade of Marine Corps operations in the Republic of Vietnam. The work is divided into four parts: Marines as advisors, Marine helicopter units (SHUFLY), the continuing struggle to 1963, and the expanding ground war to 1964. Illustrated with excellent photographs, the work also includes a list of senior Marine and Vietnamese Marine officers and a glossary of acronyms.

4. Guerrilla Warfare/Counterinsurgency

697. Asprey, Robert B. *War in the Shadows: The Guerrilla in History*. 2 vols. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1975. 1,622 pp.

A complete history of guerrilla warfare is detailed in this two-volume work. Chapters 52–56 cover the French involvement in Indochina while Chapters 62–66 and 75–95 cover the American participation. This work rates among the best on the subject.

698. Blaufarb, Douglas S. *The Counterinsurgency Era: U.S. Doctrine and Performance, 1950 to the Present*. New York: The Free Press, 1977. 356 pp.

Case studies of U.S. counterinsurgency efforts in Vietnam are presented in this work. Counterinsurgency in Vietnam, from 1963 to 1967, and from 1967 to 1972, is examined.

699. Burchett, Wilfred G. *Vietnam: Inside Story of the Guerrilla War*. New York: International Publishers, 1965. 253 pp.

Burchett is a noted Australian journalist who spent the end of 1963 and the beginning of 1964 with forces of the National Liberation Front (NLF). This is his account of the eight months he spent with a guerrilla force. Although the work is dated it provides valuable insight into the thinking, strategy, and tactics employed during that period in Vietnam. The NLF stated as early as 1962 that it would utilize any and all forms of struggle to liberate South Vietnam and that the U.S. "imperialists" would have to bear responsibility for the consequences. Burchett offers the U.S. some simple advice (1965) about Vietnam – Go Home!

700. Clutterbuck, Brigadier Richard L. *The Long Long War: Counterinsurgency in Malaya and Vietnam*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1966. 206 pp.

A three-part work examining the problems of counterinsurgency, and guerrilla warfare, associated with the growth of Communism in Malaya and Vietnam, is addressed. The author contends that to have an effective counterinsurgency program, South Vietnam must have a strong national police force to supplement the Army. A chronology of events for each of the three periods studied is included.

701. Conley, Dr. Michael C. "The Strategy of Communist-Directed Insurgency and the Conduct of Counterinsurgency." *Naval War College Review* 21:9 (May 1969), pp. 73–93.

An elaborate definition of insurgency, with a discussion of the response (counterinsurgency) to it is presented in this article. Organizational charts of Communist infrastructure detail the composition of the insurgent elements. The material in this article was originally delivered as a lecture at the U.S. Naval War College, October 28, 1968.

702. Delaney, Captain Robert F. USNR. "Reflections on Political Communication and Insurgency." *Naval War College Review* 22:4 (December 1969), pp. 3-9.

The author contends that the American attitude of emphasizing military responses to crisis is due, in part, to poor political communication. This lack of flexibility has created the United States problem in dealing with innovative Communist insurgent tactics.

703. Deutsch, Michael J. "Lessons of Insurgency." *Ordnance* 52:284 (September-October 1967), pp. 146-50.

Fighting a "war of national liberation" in Vietnam has taught the U.S. military many things according to the author. Among the lessons are the needs for better methods of communications, economics, logistics, and weapons technology.

704. Fall, Bernard B. "Insurgency Indicators." *Military Review* 46:4 (April 1966), pp. 3-11.

The author, a noted authority on Vietnam, discusses how best to describe and identify insurgent operations.

705. Long, Colonel William F., Jr. USA. "Counterinsurgency Revisited." *Naval War College Review* 21:3 (November 1968), pp. 4-10.

The concept of counterinsurgency in meeting Communist subversive aggression is reviewed in this article. The author poses several "dangerous illusions" for the reader to consider. These "illusions" refer to military advisors, the Viet Cong and the people, technology and foreign aid as supplements for the people, and U.S. idealism and organization as substitutes for leadership and reform. The author offers an examination of the quality of the American effort in Southeast Asia.

706. —. "Counterinsurgency: Corrupting Concept." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 105:4 (1979), pp. 56-64.

Prior to American involvement in the Vietnam War the term "counterinsurgency" was merely a concept. However, as the U.S. commitment grew in South Vietnam and the fighting increased, counterinsurgency became a strategy in itself and was detrimental to the overall American strategy. The author concludes that the adoption of counterinsurgency, by Secretary of Defense McNamara, was wrong and that the American armed forces suffered badly.

707. Michael, Franz. "The Strategy of Guerrilla Warfare in the Inter-communist Conflict." *Orbis* 9:2 (summer 1965), pp. 418-25.

Vietnam provided the United States with its first real test of strength against the Communist strategy of guerrilla warfare. According to the author, if the U.S. cannot handle guerrilla warfare in Vietnam it will have to confront it again in future wars. While this article is dated (1965) the content is still of value.

708. Paget, Julian. *Counter-Insurgency Operations: Techniques of Guerrilla Warfare*. New York: Walker and Company, 1967. 189 pp.

Although not specifically examined as a separate case study, the techniques discussed in this article were employed in Vietnam.

709. Pierson, Lieutenant Colonel Earl F. USMC. "The United States Role in Counterinsurgency." *Naval War College Review* 25:3 (January–February 1973), pp. 88–99.

American involvement in counterinsurgent activities, prior to Vietnam, are discussed in this article. From the Vietnam experience the author has compiled a list of elements needed for successful and effective counterinsurgency operations. These include leadership, a source of disaffection, the popularity of the cause, the geographical location, neighboring nations, terrain, the role of efficient and honest government, the military establishment, the police or constabulary, the source of manpower, and distance to the area of activity.

710. Simpson, Howard R. "The Guerrilla and His World: Psychological Aspects of Guerrilla Warfare." *Naval War College Review* 21:3 (November 1968), pp. 11–40.

The psychological composition of a guerrilla, with emphasis upon their motivation, is the focus of this study. The role of terror, and its effects, is also examined as is the counterguerrilla. A brief, but useful bibliography of guerrilla studies is provided.

711. Tanham, George K. "Some Insurgency Lessons from Southeast Asia." *Orbis* 16:3 (fall 1972), pp. 646–59.

Mr. Tanham presents his personal view of insurgency and the American experience in this article. One of the lessons learned by the Americans was that the U.S. has only a limited influence on foreign governments. Another lesson is the need to be more patient with other nations.

712. Thompson, Sir Robert. *Defeating Communist Insurgency: The Lessons of Malaya and Vietnam*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1966. 171 pp.

An examination of the basic theories of counterinsurgent warfare is presented in this article based upon the personal experience of the

author in both Malaya and Vietnam. The author observes that there are three indispensable qualities in conducting counterinsurgency: "patience, determination and an offensive spirit." A good explanation of the "strategic hamlet" concept is also presented.

5. Logistics and Manpower Requirements

713. Cole, Brigadier General Earl F. USA. "Replacement Operations in Vietnam." *Military Review* 48:2 (February 1968), pp. 3-8.

How the replacement system for Vietnam operated is described in this brief article.

714. Gallagher, Lieutenant Colonel Harold D. USA. "Combat Support in Wars of National Liberation." *Naval War College Review* 25:1 (September–October 1972), pp. 3-18.

The failure to regard the fundamental principles of logistics, in Vietnam, is analyzed in this article. The author observes that the current (1972) economic situation in the United States is directly attributed to the conduct, and mismanagement, of the war. He suggests that future U.S. military ventures be conducted in an atmosphere of austerity while tailoring the American commitment to the area of conflict.

715. Guelzo, Lieutenant Colonel Carl M. USA. "Managing Military Assistance Support in Vietnam." *Military Review* 49:1 (January 1969), pp. 31-35.

The logistical system used by the U.S. Army in the Republic of Vietnam is examined in this article. How U.S. military assistance was provided to South Vietnam is discussed.

716. Harber, Major B. D. *Logistical Support of Airmobile Operations Republic of Vietnam (1961–1971)*. St. Louis: U.S. Army Aviation Systems Command, 1971. 95 pp.

A brief study of the logistical effort in support of airmobile activities in Vietnam is described. Illustrated, the work also has diagrams and charts of how the logistical system operated.

717. Heilbrunn, Otto. "How Many Men to Vietnam?" *Military Review* 45:12 (December 1965), pp. 27-33.

The question is raised in this (1965) article about the number of personnel that will be required to fight the different type of war in Vietnam.

718. Heiser, Lieutenant General Joseph M., Jr. *Vietnam Studies: Logistic Support*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1974. 273 pp.

The story of the U.S. Army logistic support effort in Vietnam, is told in this work. The author makes reference to ammunition, aviation, transportation and maintenance, construction, subsistence, and support for specific groups. The work is illustrated.

719. Hooper, Vice Admiral Edwin Bickford. USN (Ret.). *Mobility, Support, Endurance: A Story of Naval Operational Logistics in the Vietnam War 1965–1968*. Department of the Navy, Naval History Division. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1972. 278 pp.

This illustrated work describes the logistical effort of the Service Force, U.S. Pacific Fleet, during the war. Admiral Hooper characterizes the Vietnam War as a “logistic” war and examines the problem of supply for both the American and enemy forces – both of which were far from their home bases. He discusses the organization and structure of the service force, tactical zones, inshore and inland waterways, construction, salvage, and other related topics.

6. Chemical Warfare (Agent Orange and Defoliation)

720. Briantais, Jean-Marie, *et al.* *Les Massacres la guerre chimique en Asie du Sud-Est (The Massacres and Chemical War in Southeast Asia)*. Paris: Francois Maspero, 1970. 136 pp.

Although this work is in French it is worthy of inclusion in this bibliography. The essays contained in this work examine the use of chemicals (herbicides, defoliants, and others) by the U.S. in Southeast Asia during the Vietnam War. It also analyzes American war crimes and atrocities. On the latter see Gisele Halimis’ essay “Rapport sur les Massacres.” Of notable interest is a map detailing the locations of 38 “massacres” committed by American troops in Vietnam.

721. Buckingham, William A., Jr. *Operation Ranch Hand: The Air Force and Herbicides in Southeast Asia 1961–1971*. U.S. Air Force. Washington, D.C.: Office of Air Force History, 1982. 253 pp.

The defoliation campaign conducted by the U.S. Air Force in Vietnam, is described in this illustrated history. “Operation Ranch Hand” – the official program for defoliation in Southeast Asia, 1961–1971, is examined.

722. —. Major. "Operation Ranch Hand: Herbicides in Southeast Asia." *Air University Review* 34:5 (July–August 1983), pp. 42–53.

To defoliate large regions of territory, unconventional weapons such as herbicides were used. The employment of those herbicides in "Operation Ranch Hand" is detailed in this article. At the time, factors such as safety, human consequences and suffering were of little consideration. The article is illustrated.

723. National Research Council. *The Effects of Herbicides in South Vietnam*. Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences, 1974.

As the title indicates this study, prepared by the National Research Council, focuses on the effects of herbicides (such as Agent Orange) employed in South Vietnam.

724. Neilands, J. B., Orians, G. H., Pfeiffer, E. W., Vennema, Alje, and Westing, Arthur H. *Harvest of Death: Chemical Warfare in Vietnam and Cambodia*. New York: The Free Press, 1972. 304 pp.

Chemical and biological agents, and their use in Vietnam and Cambodia, are studied in this work. The authors, all members of the Scientific Committee on Chemical and Biological Warfare, all served in Southeast Asia. They concluded that the use of these substances should be halted.

725. Pfeiffer, E. W. "Operation Ranch Hand: The U.S. Herbicide Program." *The Bulletin of the Atomic Scientists* 38:5 (May 1982), pp. 20–24.

The controversial use of herbicides by the U.S. in Southeast Asia is discussed in this article. In 1975 President Gerald Ford finally renounced the use of herbicides. The author writes that men of science "turned to the purpose of human misery and crop destruction; that chemical substances, whose long-term effect on human life is unknown, were loosed in staggering and heretofore unprecedented quantities by whites upon Asians. . . ."

726. Seagrave, Sterling. *Yellow Rain: A Journey Through the Terror of Chemical Warfare*. New York: M. Evans and Company, 1981. 324 pp.

The deadly mixture of supertoxins, known as "Yellow Rain," was used by the Soviets in Afghanistan, Laos, and Yemen. In this investigation the author focuses upon the use of chemical warfare, with third-generation chemical weapons, by the Russians. He details that in Laos, in the late 1970s, Hmong tribespeople reported Russian-built aircraft dropping "large bags that burst in the air and spread a fine yellow powder" over their villages. The Vietnamese

would deny that they had employed the use of chemicals during their war with the Hmong.

727. Sinclair, the Right Honorable Ian, MP. Minister for Defense. "Report on the Use of Herbicides, Insecticides, and Other Chemicals by the Royal Australian Air Force in South Vietnam." *National Vietnam Veterans Review* 4:2 (February 1984), p. 34.

This report, presented to the Australian parliament, is reprinted in the *NVVR*. The report details operations conducted by the Royal Australian Air Force (RAAF) in South Vietnam from 1967 to 1970. A brief description of crop and vegetable destruction is presented as well as insecticide operations.

7. Psychological/Political Warfare

728. Bjelajac, Slavko N. "A Design for Psychological Operations in Vietnam." *Orbis* 10:1 (spring 1966), pp. 126-37.

The basic factors to be considered in determining a government's psychological operations, and their implementation, is discussed in this article. The author surveys the underground movement, the people, propaganda, printed materials, and broadcasts. He concludes that psychological operations in the Vietnam War are indispensable.

729. Bullard, Major Monte R. USA. "Political Warfare in Vietnam." *Military Review* 49:10 (October 1969), pp. 54-59.

Vietnamese POLWAR (Political Warfare) systems are summarized in this article. Five elements comprise POLWAR: troop/dependent welfare, indoctrination/motivation, civil affairs, psychological warfare operations, and security investigation.

730. Critchfield, Richard. *The Long Crusade: Political Subversion in the Vietnam War*. New York: Harcourt, Brace and World, Incorporated, 1968. 401 pp.

A good account of Communist subversion in South Vietnam, to 1968, is presented in this work. A series of short, biographical, sketches prefaces the work in a section called "The Players" – a Who's Who of the Vietnam conflict. Critchfield was a reporter for the Washington *Evening Star* from 1964 to 1967.

731. Mallin, Jay. *Terror in Viet Nam*. Princeton, New Jersey: D. Van Nostrand Company, Incorporated, 1966. 114 pp.

In this somewhat dated (1966) work the author examines the use of terror, as a weapon of the Communists, in Vietnam to 1966. He

suggests that psychological warfare and civic action programs should be used to combat the terror. Some illustrations are included.

732. Meshad, Shad. *Captain for Dark Mornings*. Playa del Ray, California: Creative Image Associates, 1982. 242 pp.

This work details the experiences of an American Army psychologist and the problems he encountered in Vietnam and, later, at home. The author served in Vietnam in 1970.

733. Nathan, Reuben S. "Psychological Warfare: Key to Success in Viet Nam." *Orbis* 11:1 (spring 1967), pp. 182-98.

According to the author the only weapon capable of paralyzing revolutionary warfare is psychological warfare. Furthermore, psychological warfare must cease to be an "appendix" to action and become the "cause" for action.

734. —. "Psychological Warfare: Key to Success in Viet Nam." *Military Review* 48:4 (April 1968), pp. 19-28.

The author has condensed his previous writing (*Orbis* 1967) concerning the use of psychological warfare to win the Vietnam War.

8. *Pacification/Vietnamization*

735. Corson, William R. *The Betrayal*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1968. 317 pp.

The pacification program and the Civil Operations Revolutionary Development Support (CORDS) program story is recalled in this work, often referred to as the "Other War" in Vietnam. Corson was a Marine officer who served in Vietnam and is familiar with the CORDS program. This is a well-written account of America's attempt at winning the "hearts and minds" of the Vietnamese people.

736. Dunn, Colonel Jerry F. USA (Ret.). "A New Look at Pacification." *Military Review* 50:1 (January 1970), pp. 84-87.

The author states that if the U.S. enforced the pacification program, and denied the Viet Cong access to pacified areas, then and only then could pacification agencies succeed at providing health, sanitation, agricultural, and educational programs.

737. Nguyen Duy Hinh, Major General. *Vietnamization and the Cease-Fire*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1980. 194 pp.

An examination of the South Vietnamese perspective of the Nixon Doctrine and the Vietnamization program is covered in this monograph. The work details the program and covers the obstacles and challenges, the peace negotiations and cease-fire, and the Republic of Vietnam after the cease-fire. The author concludes that South Vietnam, after 30 years of war, was exhausted both spiritually and materially. On the other hand the enemy was stronger than ever before. Thus, the survival of the Republic of Vietnam depended upon American will.

738. Hunt, Richard A. *Pacification: The American Struggle for Vietnam's Hearts and Minds*. Boulder, Colorado: Westview Press, Incorporated, 1995. 352 pp.

America's "Other War" – as the Pacification program was often referred to, is detailed in this work. The program was also known as the attempt to win the "hearts and minds" of the Vietnamese people. This book describes how the U.S. and South Vietnamese governments attempted to pacify those Vietnamese living in the 44 provinces of South Vietnam during the course of the war. The author examines programs such as the "Civil Operations and Revolutionary Development Support" (CORDS) and the "Phoenix" program which attempted to cripple the Viet Cong infrastructure. While both programs enjoyed some success both ultimately failed due to the politically corrupt government in Saigon.

739. Nighswonger, William A. *Rural Pacification in Vietnam*. Special Studies in International Politics and Public Affairs. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1966. 320 pp.

The entire pacification program instituted by the U.S. in South Vietnam, to 1966, makes up this study. An in-depth analysis of the rural, national, and provincial pacification system is studied.

740. Schell, Jonathan. *The Military Half: An Account of Destruction in Quang Ngai and Quang Tin*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Incorporated, 1968. 212 pp.

Rural pacification gone awry as a result of mistaken identity and failures which bring tragic consequences is described in this account. A noted Vietnam journalist, the author describes the destruction in Quang Ngai and Quang Tin, by the U.S. Army in 1967.

741. Scoville, Thomas W. *Reorganizing for Pacification Support*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, 1982. 89 pp.

This brief history of the Civil Operations and Revolutionary Development Support (CORDS) program is described in this work. U.S.

advice and support to the Republic of Vietnam's pacification program is described.

742. Tran Dinh Tho, Brigadier General. *Pacification*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1980. 219 pp.

Pacification is defined as the military, political, economic, and social process of establishing/reestablishing a local government to, and including the participation of, the people. This monograph details this complex concept. The author examines techniques and operations, social reforms and economic developments, *Chieu Hoi* (Open Arms) efforts, and other aspects of the program.

743. U.S. Department of Defense. "Pacification in Vietnam." *Vietnam Review 11* (December 1969). Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1970. 4 pp.

This very brief government publication describes hamlet protection, "Operation Phoenix," revolutionary development, and the *Chieu Hoi* (Open Arms) program. Some illustrations are included.

9. African-American/Native American/Chicano Soldiers

744. Goff, Stanley, and Robert Sanders, with Clark Smith. *Brothers: Black Soldiers in the Nam*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1982. 201 pp.

In this oral history two highly decorated black soldiers describe what it was like for them as black infantrymen in Vietnam. Both describe the entire gamut of their service – from induction into the Army to daily survival in Vietnam. Explicit language is used.

745. Mariscal, George, ed. *Aztlán and Viet Nam: Chicano and Chicana Experiences of the War*. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1999. 324 pp.

The stories of Mexican-Americans who served in Vietnam are told in this work. The author interviewed the participants to present a collective identity between the Chicano soldiers and the Vietnamese people. This work represents a valuable addition to the scholarship on an area of the war largely neglected.

746. Parks, David M. *G. I. Diary*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1968. 133 pp.

David Parks' diary details the story of a black soldier through his basic and advanced training, his month on a troop ship to Vietnam, and his eight-month tour in Vietnam. He describes the prejudice he

felt as a civilian, as a soldier during training, and in Vietnam. This work provides a different perspective of the Vietnam War – that of the black soldier.

747. Shaw, Henry I., Jr., and Ralph W. Donnelly. *Blacks in the Marine Corps*. Washington, D.C.: History and Museums Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps, 1975. 109 pp.

Chapter 7 (pp. 69–83) covers the role of black Marines in the Vietnam War and Appendix C provides biographical sketches of Medal of Honor recipients in Vietnam.

748. TeCube, Leroy. *Year in Nam: A Native American Soldier's Story*. Lincoln, Nebraska: University of Nebraska Press, 1999. 261 pp.

These are the recollections of a Native American who served in the U.S. Army in Vietnam 1968. Mr. TeCube writes this book from the perspective of the average G.I. – that of the infantryman or “grunt.” In his epilogue the author writes that “lack of support, the enemy’s patience in waiting out the war, and the antiwar protests were the key reasons why we lost. In the end the efforts to rid Vietnam of Communist aggression failed.”

749. Terry, Wallace, ed. *Bloods: An Oral History of the Vietnam War by Black Veterans*. New York: Random House, 1984. 297 pp.

Oral interviews and personal narratives of black veterans who served in Vietnam comprise this work.

750. Vance, Samuel. *The Courageous and the Proud*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1970. 166 pp.

Samuel Vance was a Sergeant in the U.S. Army and served with the Second Battalion, Second Infantry, in Vietnam. In this personal account he expresses what he believes were the injustices that the black soldiers were subjected to in Vietnam and how they met the challenge.

751. Westheider, James E. *Fighting on Two Fronts: African Americans and the Vietnam War*. New York: New York University Press, 1997. 238 pp.

A skillful portrayal of race relations during the war in Vietnam and at home is described in this work. The author describes how the African-American soldier in Vietnam was, in effect, fighting the same racial problems that faced them at home. The author details how differences between black and white soldiers heightened racial tensions. On this aspect of the Vietnam War this is a welcome addition.

10. Women

752. Gruhzit-Hoyt, Olga. *A Time Remembered: American Women in the Vietnam War*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1999. 250 pp.

This collection of 27 essays on women describes their service in Vietnam. The largest group are nurses. The balance served in a variety of capacities. One problem with this work, on a valuable subject, is that the essays are all written in different styles which makes shifts in the story difficult to follow. In the author's introduction she concludes, about Vietnam, what is really rather obvious, writing "It was a savage war." The book is illustrated.

753. Marshall, Kathryn. *In the Combat Zone: An Oral History of American Women in Vietnam 1966-1975*. New York: Little, Brown and Company, 1987. 270 pp.

The stories of 20 women who served in Vietnam, based upon their interviews with the author, from 1966 to 1975, are told in this work. Again, the balance of the stories involves nurses who aided the wounded and dying. Collectively, their story is one of a comradeship none of them knew before their Vietnam experience and that none have enjoyed since.

754. Steinman, Ron. *Women in Vietnam*. New York: TV Books, 2000. 272 pp.

Due to poor record keeping by the U.S. government, according to the author, no real accurate figure exists as to the number of women who served in Vietnam. In this book the author has collected the stories of 15 women who served as nurses, and in other capacities, in Vietnam. This is a recent (2000) addition to the study of the role women played in the war.

755. Van Devanter, Lynda. *Home Before Morning: The Story of an Army Nurse in Vietnam*. New York: Beaufort Books, Incorporated, 1983. 320 pp.

The author recalls her service as an Army nurse in Vietnam 1969. She describes the poorly equipped and understaffed operating rooms, where she witnessed the war close-up. Upon her return home, she, like many other Vietnam veterans, suffered from Delayed Stress Syndrome.

756. Walker, Keith. *A Piece of My Heart: The Stories of Twenty-Six American Women Who Served in Vietnam*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1997. 352 pp.

The author tells the stories of 26 American women who served in Vietnam either as Army or Navy nurses, Red Cross workers, WACs

(Women's Army Corps) or entertainers. The book is illustrated with black and white photos.

11. Other Subjects

757. Allgood, Lieutenant Colonel Frank E. USMC. "Progress and Prep Fires." *Marine Corps Gazette* 51:9 (September 1967), pp. 29–31.

The pros and cons of utilizing artillery preparatory fire to ready landing zones for helicopters are argued in this article.

758. —. "MED-EVAC, Vietnam Style." *Marine Corps Gazette* 52:8 (August 1968), pp. 33–36.

The need for a more sophisticated medical evacuation system is discussed in this article.

759. "Battle Lore." *Army Digest* 23:2 (February 1968), pp. 48–49.

Combat tips from returning Vietnam veterans are offered in this article. Among the tips offered are an eight-point survival program, the use of children as decoys (by the Viet Cong), how to get quick relief from insects, and light discipline at night.

760. Brewer, Garry D. "CHIEU-HOI: The Surrender Program in Vietnam." *Air University Review* 18:6 (September–October 1967), pp. 50–60.

The author examines the program from 1963 to 1965, when it first began, and then from 1965 to 1969. Brewer observes that the program provided a "clear-cut alternative to continued hostilities." Included are figures of Viet Cong defections under the guidelines of the program.

761. Chandler, Robert W. *War of Ideas: The U.S. Propaganda Campaign in Vietnam*. Boulder, Colorado: Westview Press, 1981. 301 pp.

Vietnam represented the most massive effort and exhaustive use of leaflets in military history. This work is a study of the use of propaganda during the war.

762. Currey, Cecil Barr. *Long Binh Jail: An Oral History of Vietnam's Notorious U.S. Military Prison*. Washington, D.C.: Brassey's, 1999. 193 pp.

An interesting collection of interviews conducted by the author (a retired colonel, U.S. Army Reserve – who served as a chaplain) about the U.S. military prison at Long Binh, South Vietnam. His interviews include guards, prisoners, and jail administrators. The Long

Binh Jail (“LBJ”) was the scene of one of the worst prison riots in American history – the result of the perception of intolerable living conditions and racial tensions. This work offers a glimpse of a different aspect of the Vietnam War. The work has illustrations.

763. Doyle, Edward, Stephen Weiss, and the editors of Boston Publishing Company. *The Vietnam Experience: A Collision of Cultures*. Vol. 12. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1984. 192 pp.

A comparison and contrast of American and Vietnamese cultures, and the impact that the American presence in Vietnam made upon that society, is made in this volume. That the two nations were “worlds apart” is an understatement. The authors show how the American forces “Americanized” South Vietnam through their service clubs, USO shows, food, beer, entertainment, music, – even transforming the capital of South Vietnam – Saigon, into a pro-Western city. The work is illustrated.

764. Eliot, Major George Fielding. “Fire Support in Vietnam.” *Ordnance* 51:281 (March–April 1967), pp. 470–73.

Field artillery and the role it played in helping to defeat the Viet Cong is described in this article. Problems encountered included weather, geography, and determining whether or not an area had been pacified or had been held by the Viet Cong prior to an artillery shelling.

765. Ott, Major General David E. “FA Assistance Programs.” *Field Artillery Journal* 44:5 (September–October 1976), pp. 10–17.

Field artillery units, and how they participated in the Vietnamization process, are studied in this article.

766. Schevitz, Jeffrey M. *The Weaponsmakers: Personal and Professional Crisis During the Vietnam War*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Schenkman Publishing Company, 1979. 191 pp.

American weapons technology and the scientists and engineers that created them are examined in this work. The tools of modern warfare, employed in Vietnam, are seen in the psychological and social aspects of those who made them. The author allows the weapons designers and testers to speak for themselves concerning their self-image and the war.

767. Short, Anthony. “Man, the United States and the Vietnam War: The Pleasures and Perils of Prosopography.” *Asian Affairs* 13:2 (June 1982), pp. 148–57.

The question “where are the major causes of war found?” is raised and the author observes that the possibility exists that it is found

within Man. The author reviews Man's record, in the Vietnam War, through the recollections and scraps of information which comprise the historical record.

768. Smith, Major William A., Jr. "The Strategic Hamlet Program in Vietnam." *Military Review* 44:5 (May 1964), pp. 17-23.

In this early assessment the author supports the idea of protected villages as provided for under the strategic hamlet program.

769. Spencer, Major Wilbur P., Jr. "Chieu Hoi." *Infantry* 59:5 (September-October 1969), pp. 51-57.

The "Open Arms" program allowed members of the Viet Cong to defect, freely, to South Vietnam. This article looks at that program from 1963 to 1969. The author contends that the program worked because each Viet Cong who defected meant another convert to democracy.

770. Todd, Jack. *Desertion: In the Time of Vietnam*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 2001. 293 pp.

One man's story of how his willingness to serve his nation was set aside due to his deep opposition to the war which resulted in his desertion to Canada. While he was completing his basic training, at Fort Lewis, Washington, he made the decision to flee. After 30-plus years of living with the guilt he felt, the author was able to recall the events which led him to his decision.

771. U.S. Department of Defense. "National Reconciliation in South Vietnam." *Vietnam Review* 6 (November 1967). Washington, D.C.: Armed Forces Information Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 4 pp.

This pamphlet describes the *Chieu Hoi* (Open Arms) and *Doan Ket* (National Reconciliation) programs for Viet Cong defectors in South Vietnam. A few illustrations are included.

772. West, Francis J., Jr. *The Village*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1972. 288 pp.

A dramatic account of the Marine experiment of integrating Americans (12 Marines) with Vietnamese militia in the Combined Action Program (CAP) at the village of Binh Nghia. It is a true story of 17 months of mistakes, failures, and the consequences. The author was a captain in the Marines who visited the village during his tour of duty in the Republic of Vietnam in 1966. He prepared this work, originally, as a study for the RAND Corporation. The book is illustrated.

C. Weapons

1. Land

773. Babcock, Lieutenant R. S. "Stay Alert to Stay Alive." *Army Digest* 23:2 (February 1968), pp. 20-23.

The Army training program in ambush techniques and the use of booby traps to reduce casualties in Vietnam is reviewed in this article. Some illustrations are included.

774. Charlton, Richard G. "Vietnam Report." *Ordnance* 51:280 (January-February 1967), pp. 376-81.

This article compares American fighting men and equipment with their North Vietnamese adversaries. The emphasis is placed upon the employment of the helicopter as well as the all-purpose vehicles. The article is illustrated.

775. Doleman, Edgar C., Jr., and the editors of Boston Publishing Company. *The Vietnam Experience: Tools of War*. Vol. 13. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1984. 176 pp.

This volume in the series is an excellent, illustrated source of information on the weapons technology of the war. Both American and Vietnamese weapons are studied. The author looks at ground weapons, aerial weapons, the automated battlefield, and the legacy of technology upon warfare following the war.

776. Dunstan, Simon. *Vietnam Tracks: Armor in Battle, 1945-75*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1982. 191 pp.

The author describes the use of armored vehicles in Vietnam in this illustrated work. Weather, terrain, and the mobility of the enemy dictated that armored combat would be useless. However, technological advances and new tactics enabled armor to play a decisive part in the war. The author examines the early experiences of the French, through the use of tanks and personnel carriers, to the self-propelled guns of the Americans. The armor used by the French, the South Vietnamese, the Americans, the Australians, and the North Vietnamese are all discussed.

777. Mesko, Jim. *Armor in Vietnam: A Pictorial History*. Carrollton, Texas: Squadron/Signal Publications, 1982. 80 pp.

The armored fighting vehicles employed in the Vietnam War are described in this illustrated history. Those used in the earlier French effort in Indochina are covered as well.

778. Peterson, L. C. "Vindication of the SAM." *Ordnance* 51:282 (May–June 1967), pp. 583–86.

The author states that North Vietnamese surface-to-air (SAM) missiles did not down a large number of American aircraft. However, the SAMs did force them to fly at lower altitudes where conventional anti-aircraft fire shot them down. Some illustrations are included.

779. Tunbridge, Stephen. *M113 in Action*. Warren, Michigan: Squadron/Signal Publications, 1978. 48 pp.

The M113 Armored Fighting Vehicle is detailed in this illustrated history. The author describes the development, modification, improvement, and use of the vehicle in Vietnam.

780. *Viet Cong Mine Warfare*. np, nd. 47 pp.

This soft-cover, illustrated (drawings) work concerns the use of mines by the Viet Cong. Anti-tank, anti-personnel, anti-helicopter mines and non-explosive devices and traps (booby traps) are described.

781. Weller, Jac. "Counterguerrilla War." *Ordnance* 50:275 (March–April 1966), pp. 500–4.

In this illustrated article the "new" weapons being employed by the infantry, in Vietnam, are examined. These "new" weapons include the recoilless rifle, the M-60 machine gun, and the M-16 rifle. Each of these weapons represented important advances in military weapons technology.

782. —. "Viet Cong Arms and Men." *Ordnance* 50:276 (May–June 1966), pp. 602–10.

The weapons employed by the Viet Cong are examined in this illustrated article. The weapons described are rifles, machine guns, grenades, and booby traps. Weller observes that the Viet Cong are "first-class fighting men" and their weapons are equal to those of the Americans.

783. —. "Enemy Weapons in Vietnam." *Ordnance* 53:290 (September–October 1968), pp. 172–75.

A look at North Vietnamese/Viet Cong weaponry is provided in this article. The author details rifles, rocket launchers, and machine guns employed by the enemy. A table of organization and equipment – for Communist units, is of interest.

784. —. "Good and Bad Weapons for Vietnam." *Military Review* 48:10 (October 1968), pp. 56–64.

A noted weapons expert, the author details the advantages and disadvantages of both American and Communist weapons – light and heavy.

2. Air

785. Archer, Robert D. *The Republic F-105 Thunderchief*. Fallbrook, California: Aero Publishers, 1969. 80 pp.

The Republic F-105 Thunderchief is detailed in this illustrated history. From its inception through its use in Vietnam the author details this weapon.

786. Ballard, Jack S. *The United States Air Force in Southeast Asia: Development and Employment of Fixed-Wing Gunships, 1962–1972*. Office of Air Force History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1982. 326 pp.

The origins and development of the concept of fixed-wing gunships is discussed in this illustrated work. The various types of aircraft employed for this function are described. Detailed technical data regarding these aircraft are included.

787. Bell, Dana. *Air War Vietnam: Volume I*. Harrisburg, Pennsylvania: Arms and Armour Press, “Warbirds Illustrated No. 10,” 1982. 68 pp.

In this work the author has compiled photographs of the aircraft employed in the Vietnam War. All of the major U.S. aircraft types used in the war are included. Fighters, bombers, helicopters, gunships, transports, the pilots and ground crews – all are examined. This work will be valuable to those interested in aircraft as well as students and historians of the Vietnam War.

788. Dabney, Joseph Earl. *HERK: Hero of the Skies*. Lakemont, Georgia: Cobble House Books, 1979. 415 pp.

The Lockheed C-130 “Hercules” aircraft first appeared on the air scene in 1954. Since then this multi-role transport has been transformed into various roles. Demand for this aircraft always increased and the author tells the story of the “Herky Bird” in this book.

789. Davis, Larry. *Gunships: A Pictorial History of Spooky*. Carrollton, Texas: Squadron/Signal Publications, 1982. 64 pp.

The use of fixed-wing aircraft as gunships in Vietnam – referred to as “Spooky,” are examined in this work. The work is illustrated with both color and black and white photographs.

790. Dodd, Don. Photographer's Mate First Class. "Navy Gunship Helicopters in the Mekong." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 94:5 (May 1968), pp. 91-104.

This is an excellent photo-essay on the use of Navy helicopters, as gunships, in the Mekong River Delta.

791. Drendel, Lou. *Aircraft of the Vietnam War*. Fallbrook, California: Aero Publishers, 1980. 64 pp.

The various aircraft used in the Vietnam War are described in this brief, illustrated, history. The work covers the entire scope of the American air arsenal from helicopters to fighter aircraft.

792. —. *HUEY*. Carrollton, Texas: Squadron/Signal Publications, "Modern Military Aircraft Series," 1983. 64 pp.

This concise, pictorial, history of the Bell UH-1 Iroquois – "Huey," helicopter, is detailed in this publication. The author describes the development and employment of this helicopter. The "Huey" is one of the great symbols and reminders of the war for veterans.

793. Mikesh, Robert C. *B-57 Canberra at War 1964-1972*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1980. 160 pp.

This illustrated history details the development and use of the B-57 "Canberra" aircraft. This aircraft saw nine years of action during the Vietnam War.

794. Nalty, Bernard C., George M. Watson, and Jacob Neufeld. *An Illustrated Guide to the Air War over Vietnam: Aircraft of the Southeast Asia Conflict*. New York: Arco Publishing Company, 1981. 159 pp.

Over 50 aircraft are examined in detail in this work. Material includes information on the dimensions, armament, history, and employment of the aircraft. Many of the illustrations are in color.

795. O'Rouke, G. G. *The F-4 Phantom II*. Fallbrook, California: Aero Publishers, 1979. 64 pp.

This illustrated, brief history examines the famous fighter-bomber used in great numbers by the U.S. Navy, Marines, and Air Force. Unfortunately, the extensive role of this aircraft in the war is treated superficially.

796. Rausa, Rosario. *SKYRAIDER: The Douglas A-1 "Flying Dump Truck": The Saga of the Most Dependable Attack Bomber in Navy History – From World War II to Vietnam*. Annapolis, Maryland: Nautical and Aviation Publishing Company of America, 1982. 239 pp.

This is an in-depth, technological history of the Douglas A-1 “Skyraider” and the pilots who flew them. The work traces the evolution of the aircraft back to the late stages of the Second World War, through Korea, to Vietnam. It includes many excellent photographs and drawings and provides technical specifications and data. The introduction of this work was written by Ed Heinerman – the designer of the Skyraider. The author was a Navy pilot and a Vietnam veteran.

797. Tillman, Barrett. *MiG Master: The Story of the F-8 Crusader*. Annapolis, Maryland: Nautical and Aviation Publishing Company of America, 1980. 260 pp.

The Vought F-8 “Crusader” went into production in 1956. This work details the history of the design, construction, and employment of this aircraft. The “Crusader” attained the highest “kill ratio” of any aircraft of the Vietnam War. Tillman has included specifications, model designations, and combat records.

3. Naval Riverine

798. U.S. Department of the Navy. *Dictionary of American Fighting Ships*. 4 vols. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1964–69.

This is an illustrated, multi-volume work listing and describing the fighting ships of the U.S. Navy. Vessels used during the Vietnam War are included.

799. Whitney, Craig R. “Naval Gunfire in Vietnam.” *Ordnance* 53 (May–June 1969), np.

This article reviews the use of naval gunfire support in Vietnam, and describes the various weapons used.

800. Winter, Robert M. “Armor Afloat in Vietnam.” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 94 (November 1968), np.

The author describes the vessels used for riverine and inland water operations in Vietnam.

D. Uniforms, Equipment, Decorations, and Militaria

801. Britton, Jack, and George Washington, Jr., eds. *U.S. Military Shoulder Patches of the United States Armed Forces*. 3rd ed. Tulsa, Oklahoma: M.C.N. Press, 1981. 76 pp.

This soft-cover work is an illustrated compilation of the shoulder patches worn from World War I through the Vietnam War. The stated purpose of this book is for use as a “quick-reference identification guide.” The book is almost entirely in color. The last two pages list the wars in which U.S. Army and Marine Corps divisions fought.

802. —. “The Vietnam Special Service Medal.” *The Medal Collector* 27:5 (May 1976), pp. 20–21.

The Vietnam Special Service Medal, and the eligibility criteria, are described in this article. An illustration of the medal accompanies the article.

803. —. “The Republic of Vietnam Leadership Medal.” *The Medal Collector* 27:6 (June 1976), pp. 11–16.

A description of the RVN Leadership Medal comprises this article.

804. Brown, F. C. “Viet Cong ‘Hero Who Rises to Victory, Third Class.’” *The Medal Collector* 27:10 (October 1976), np.

This Viet Cong decoration, and the criteria for earning it, are described in this article.

805. —. “Republic of Vietnam Armed Forces Honor Medal, First and Second Classes.” *The Medal Collector* 27:10 (October 1976), pp. 22–24.

This article describes a military decoration of the Republic of Vietnam Armed Forces (RVNAF).

806. —. and C. V. Kelly, Jr. “Republic of Vietnam Medal for the Cambodian and Laotian Excursions.” *The Medal Collector* 28:7 (July 1977), pp. 14–17.

The authors describe this South Vietnamese military decoration for service in Cambodia and Laos.

807. —. “The Viet Minh War Cross.” *The Medal Collector* 29:2 (February 1978), np.

A description of an early Vietnamese military decoration awarded to members of the Viet Minh, who fought against the French in Indochina, is detailed in this article.

808. —. and V. R. Brook. “North Vietnamese Breast Insignia.” *The Medal Collector* 29:8 (August 1978), p. 31.

A description with a photograph of this North Vietnamese military decoration.

809. —. "Republic of Vietnam Armed Forces Medals and Civilian Medals." *The Medal Collector* 31:1-2 (January–February 1980), pp. 4–10.

This illustrated article describes decorations awarded both to members of the Army of the Republic of Vietnam (ARVN) and to civilians.

810. —. "Republic of Vietnam Technical Service Medal." *The Medal Collector* 31:6 (June 1980), pp. 20–22.

The decoration awarded for technical services, to members of the Army of the Republic of Vietnam (ARVN), is described in this article.

811. —. "The Viet Nam Air Force Northern Expeditionary Medal." *The Medal Collector* 33:1–2 (January–February 1982), np.

This is a description of the Republic of Vietnam Air Force Northern Expeditionary Medal.

812. —. "Viet Cong Military Exploit Liberation Medal." *The Medal Collector* 34:1–2 (January–February 1983), np.

A description of this Viet Cong decoration is detailed in this article.

813. Department of the Army. *Decorations and Awards: Illustrations of Awards*. Army Regulation 672-5-2. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 19 pp.

Dated, but still of use, this illustrated work describes the decorations and awards of the U.S. Army, including those for service in Vietnam. Most of the pictures of the service and campaign medals are in color. The work also includes various badges awarded.

814. Dorling, H. Taprell. *Ribbons and Medals: The World's Military and Civil Awards*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1974. 359 pp.

Ribbons and medals of the world are found in this authoritative work on the subject. Decorations of the U.S. are found on pp. 204–29 including medals for all branches of the military. There are many black and white illustrations with a section in color (located at the beginning) showing all of the ribbons (except Vietnam).

815. Katcher, Philip. *Armies of the Vietnam War 1962–75*. London: Osprey Publishing Limited, "Men-At-Arms Series," 1980. 40 pp.

This illustrated volume, one of an excellent series, focuses primarily on the uniforms and equipment, of both friend and foe, in Vietnam. Many photographs and excellent color drawings illustrate this useful work.

816. Kerrigan, Evans E. *The Medal of Honor in Vietnam*. Norton Heights, Connecticut: Medallie Publishing Company, 1971. np.

This work presents biographical sketches of the recipients of the Congressional Medal of Honor in Vietnam, from 1964 to 1967. A photograph of each recipient accompanies the biographical sketch.

817. Lowry, Timothy S. *And Brave Men, Too*. New York: Crown Publishers, Incorporated, 1985. 246 pp.

The memorable stories of 14 Congressional Medal of Honor recipients of the Vietnam War are recalled in this book.

818. Lulling, Darrel R. *Communist Militaria of the Vietnam War*. Rev. ed. Tulsa, Oklahoma: M.C.N. Press, 1980. 50 pp.

Designed for the collector of militaria of the Vietnam War, this short, but informative treatment of North Vietnamese equipment and uniforms is also of use to the historian and general reader for gaining insight into the enemy forces in Vietnam. The work includes over 180 very good photographs with narratives.

819. Murphy, Edward F. *Vietnam Medal of Honor Heroes*. New York: Presidio Press, Random House, Incorporated, 2005. 352 pp.

The author, head of the Medal of Honor Society, presents the true stories of over 100 recipients of the MOH in Vietnam. The author also includes a complete list of all the MOH recipients of the Vietnam War.

820. Robles, Philip K. *United States Military Medals and Ribbons*. Rutland, Vermont: Charles E. Tuttle Company, 1971. 187 pp.

This is an authoritative and exhaustive work on the subject. All medals and ribbons are illustrated in color. Chapters include information on decorations, service and campaign medals, unit awards, foreign decorations, medals awarded to U.S. forces by foreign governments, and the general rules for the wearing of medals and decorations.

821. Smyth, Cecil B., Jr. *Army of the Republic of Viet Nam Infantry Insignia*. Glendale, California: ARV-CAT, 1975. np.

This soft-cover work contains line drawings and descriptions depicting some 300-unit insignia of Army of the Republic of Vietnam (ARVN) infantry. It includes an "Order of Battle" chart of ARVN infantry divisions.

822. —. *Army of the Republic of Vietnam Ranger Insignia*. Glendale, California: ARV-CAT, 1975. np.

Hundreds of line drawings and illustrations describe 172 ARVN Ranger insignia, badges, tabs, and patches in this brief work. Also included are the patches worn by U.S. Army advisors to the ARVN Ranger forces.

823. —. *Republic of Vietnam Territorial Forces Insignia*. Glendale, California: ARV-CAT, 1975. np.

This booklet contains information regarding regional and popular forces, Provisional Reconnaissance Units (PRUs), People's Self Defense Forces, Special Zones and Sectors, and Sector Numerical Designations.

824. —. *Special Forces in Southeast Asia*. Erin, Tennessee: ARV-CAT, 1975. np.

The insignia worn by U.S. and Vietnamese Special Forces, irregular forces, and the airborne and special forces of the Khmer Republic, are described in this work. Black and white illustrations highlight the work.

825. Thompson, Leroy. *Uniforms of the Elite Forces*. Illustrations by Michael Chappell. Dorset, Great Britain: Blandford Books Limited, 1982. 121 pp.

Color and black and white illustrations comprise this book about various special forces and elite military units of the world. Those who participated in the Vietnam War are included.

826. —. *Uniforms of the Indo-China and Vietnam Wars*. Dorset, Great Britain: Blandford Press, Limited, 1984. 160 pp.

This work has color drawings, and black and white photographs of the uniforms worn during the wars in Indochina and Vietnam. Those worn by the French and the Americans are detailed. Also included are those uniforms worn by the ARVN as well as the Allied forces – Republic of Korea, Thailand, Australia, New Zealand, and the Philippines. Uniforms of the Communist forces are also included. This is an excellent reference work.

VI

The American Military Experience in Vietnam

Author's note: Obviously due to limitations of space I have not included all of the individual unit histories, *per se*, from Vietnam. I have tried to list the major division histories in which individual units may be found.

A. Combat Operations

1. Land War

a. General Accounts

827. Amos, Lieutenant Colonel Harry O. USA. "Artillery Support of Vietnamese." *Military Review* 46:8 (August 1966), pp. 30-41.

This illustrated article describes U.S. fire support for operations with the ARVN.

828. Anderson, Charles R. *The Grunts*. San Rafael, California: Presidio Press, 1976. 204 pp.

This is a true account of B Company, First Battalion, Third Marines, on a 58-day operation in the vicinity of the Demilitarized Zone (DMZ) and Con Thien. The work is divided into two parts. The first details the operations and the second examines the Marines' return to the U.S. The book deals with the various backgrounds of the men and their reasons for acts of violence, atrocities, and "fraggings." The author was a Marine rifleman in Vietnam.

829. Garland, Lieutenant Colonel Albert N., ed. USA. *Infantry in Vietnam*. Fort Benning, Georgia: *Infantry Magazine*, 1967. 409 pp.
A compendium of information of vital importance to the infantryman in Vietnam. Information is included on the enemy, intelligence, patrolling, ambushes, special operations, and pacification. The work is illustrated. A fine glossary and list of military symbols are included.
830. ——. *Combat Notes from Vietnam*. Fort Benning, Georgia: *Infantry Magazine*, 1968. 96 pp.
Small arms, air mobility, night air assaults, armed helicopters, reconnaissance, ambush, and lessons learned are just a few of the topics covered in this work. This was prepared for the professional soldier. The work is illustrated.
831. ——. *Combat Notes from Vietnam Volume II*. Fort Benning, Georgia: *Infantry Magazine*, 1968. 84 pp.
The author has included additional information in this continuation of his original work. Additional topics include hole hunting, cordon and search, and tricks of the trade, with accounts of small unit engagements. Some illustrations are included.
832. ——. *Infantry in Vietnam: Small Unit Actions in the Early Days: 1965–66*. Nashville, Tennessee: The Battery Press, 1982. 319 pp.
Small unit actions, fought by elements of the U.S. Army in Vietnam in 1965 and 1966 are examined in this work. Eight pages of photographs are included.
833. ——. (Ret.). *A Distant Challenge: The U.S. Infantryman in Vietnam, 1967–1972*. Rev. ed. Nashville, Tennessee: The Battery Press, 1983. 359 pp.
In this work the author offers an inside view of the heaviest fighting of the war from the initial American buildup to Vietnamization. It is based on a collection of accounts which first appeared in *Infantry Magazine*. The foreword is written by General W. C. Westmoreland.
834. Grossman, Frank D. "Artillery in Vietnam." *Ordnance* 52:285 (November–December 1967), pp. 268–71.
The author contends that although the tactical employment of artillery in Vietnam was different, the basic mission remained the same – providing fire support for the ground forces. The article is illustrated.
835. Harrigan, Anthony. "Ground Warfare in Vietnam." *Military Review* 47:4 (April 1967), pp. 60–67.

A general examination of how the ground war in Vietnam was being conducted, from 1965 to 1967, is the focus of this article. The author refers to the use of air mobility, hide-and-seek tactics, long-range patrols, and other topics.

836. Humphries, James F. *Through the Valley: Vietnam, 1967–1968*. Boulder, Colorado: Lynne Rienner Publishers, Incorporated, 1999. 368 pp.

Written from his personal experiences the author details the fighting by the U.S. Army's 196th Light Infantry Brigade during 1967 and 1968. This unit fought in seven battles during this time frame against a stubborn enemy. Maps and a glossary are included.

837. Mangold, Tom, and John Penycate. *The Tunnels of Cu Chi: The Untold Story of Vietnam*. New York: Random House, 1985. 294 pp.

The authors describe this remarkable campaign of the war fought in a 200-mile labyrinth of tunnels north of Saigon. This is also the story of the “Tunnel Rats” – those soldiers who risked their lives exploring the tunnels. Diagrams of the tunnel complex are included.

838. McDonald, Cherokee Paul. *Into the Green: A Reconnaissance By Fire*. New York: A Plume Book, Penguin Group, 2001. 255 pp.

A personal narrative of a young man who enlisted in the Army in 1966, went on to OCS, and ended up in Vietnam 1968. The author was an “FO” – “Forward Observer” who had the unenviable task of calling in air and artillery strikes on the enemy.

839. Ott, Major General David E. “Operations and Raids.” *Field Artillery Journal* 44:4 (July–August 1976), pp. 37–43.

How artillery was employed to support raids and other operations is discussed in this article. The author focuses upon target acquisition, the use of sensors and radars, logistics, harassing and interdiction fires, intelligence and interdiction, and civic action.

840. —. Lieutenant General. “American Artillery in Counter-insurgency.” *Field Artillery Journal* 45:2 (March–April 1977), pp. 29–33.

The use of field artillery in the Vietnam War is reviewed in this illustrated article. General Ott assesses target acquisition, fire support coordination, the weapons, and overall performance.

841. Sallah, Michael, and Mitch Weiss. *Tiger Force: A True Story of Men and War*. New York: Little, Brown, and Company, 2006. 401 pp.

Established as an elite fighting unit, the “Tiger Force” would be made up of the best fighting soldiers the U.S. Army had. The “Tiger

Force" was an element of the 101st Airborne Division – that unit's version of the Green Berets – the "Badass of the badass." The unit originated in 1965 and this story begins in 1967. This unit was sent into the jungle to seek out the enemy, and their hiding places, and destroy them. Instead, without close supervision, the force strayed from their original mission and they began committing acts outside of what would be considered acceptable. The unit's activities were covered up until October 2003 when the authors, plus one additional reporter, working for the Toledo *Blade*, received a tip and broke the story which ultimately won the Pulitzer Prize. The book is illustrated.

842. Schell, Jonathan. *The Village of Ben Suc*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Incorporated, 1967. 132 pp.

The complete destruction of this Communist-dominated village, following the evacuation of the inhabitants, is examined in this book. Mr. Schell observes that the inevitable results of mistakes in a policy are failure and tragedy.

843. Starry, General Donn A. *Armored Combat in Vietnam*. Indianapolis, Indiana: Bobbs-Merrill Company, Incorporated, 1981. 250 pp.

General Starry, who prepared the Department of the Army "Vietnam Studies" monograph *Mounted Combat in Vietnam*, has written a detailed, illustrated, overview of armored warfare in Vietnam. He describes the tactics, personnel, and innovations employed.

844. ——. *Vietnam Studies: Mounted Combat in Vietnam*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1978. 250 pp.

This work details tanks, mechanized infantry, armored cavalry, and air cavalry – all forces whose primary mission was to fight mounted. Material is included on the advisors to the South Vietnamese armored units, combined operations, enemy offensives, Cambodia, Laos, the Easter Offensive of 1972, and other subjects. A glossary is included and the work is illustrated.

845. West, Captain Francis J., Jr. USMCR. *Small Unit Action in Vietnam Summer 1966*. History and Museums Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 123 pp.

Stories of combat and civic action operations in Vietnam during the summer of 1966 have been compiled in this work. The author, who served as a Marine officer in Vietnam, describes the small unit actions that he witnessed. Maps and photographs are included and a glossary of Marine small-arms is of interest.

b. Battles, Campaigns, Operations

846. Baxter, Gordon. *13/13, Vietnam: Search and Destroy*. Cleveland, Ohio: World Publishing Company, 1967. 120 pp.

Tha Binh is a village in Phuoc Thanh Province and the action which occurred there on February 13, 1966, is recorded in this photo-narrative. The author was a reporter with the Marines who were engaged in the action and who lost 13 men in the fighting.

847. Besch, Captain Edwin W. USMC (Ret.). "North Vietnamese Offensive – Turning Point in 1972." *National Defense* 60:335 (March–April 1976), pp. 371–73.

The 1972 North Vietnamese offensive is discussed in this article. The author contends that North Vietnam forced the hand of the South Vietnamese Army (ARVN) which suffered from poor military leadership.

848. Cash, John A., Major, John N. Albright, and Lieutenant Colonel Allan W. Sandstrum. *Seven Firefights in Vietnam*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1970. 159 pp.

Various small unit actions in South Vietnam are examined in this illustrated work.

849. ——. "Ambush at Phuoc An." *Viet Nam Journal* 1 (1981), pp. 22–26.

On January 18, 1967, the Third Battalion, 21st Infantry, was struck by the Viet Cong in a night ambush at Phuoc An, Vietnam. This article describes the action. A map of the ambush detailing the disposition of forces is provided.

850. Craig, Specialist Fifth Class Robert. "Hill 882: Dak To, Vietnam." *Army Digest* 23:3 (March 1968), pp. 8–12.

This illustrated article describes the fighting at Hill 882, Dak To, South Vietnam, by the First Battalion, 503rd Infantry, 173rd Airborne Brigade, on November 18, 1967. Excellent color photographs of the fighting are included. The author notes that he tape-recorded the sounds of combat during this fight.

851. Galvin, Lieutenant Colonel John R. USA. "The Relief of Khe Sanh." *Military Review* 50:1 (January 1970), pp. 88–94.

A condensed version about the air lift to relieve the 77-day siege at Khe Sanh in 1968 is described in this illustrated article.

852. Hoang Ngoc Lung, Colonel. *The General Offensives of 1968–69*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1981. 157 pp.

The 1968–69 offensives conducted by the North Vietnamese, in the Republic of Vietnam – including the Tet Offensive, are detailed in this monograph. Many maps and illustrations highlight the work. The author observes that the Communists failed to achieve a military victory but did attain a political victory and thus the event marked an important turning point in the war.

853. Irving, Lieutenant Colonel Frederick F. USA. “The Battle of Hue.” *Military Review* 49:1 (January 1969), pp. 56–63.

A good description of the heavy fighting at Hue, during the Tet Offensive of 1968, is given in this illustrated article. A map of Hue is included.

854. Marshall, S. L. A. *Ambush: The Battle of Dau Tieng: Also Called the Battle of Dong Min Chau, War Zone C, Operation Attleboro, and other Deadfalls in South Vietnam*. New York: Cowles, 1969. 242 pp.

The noted military historian describes the battle of Dau Tieng in November 1966, during “Operation Attleboro.” The action described is typical of the Viet Cong in terms of use of terrain and booby traps.

855. ——. Brigadier General. *Battles in the Monsoon: Campaigning in the Central Highland, South Vietnam, Summer 1966*. New York: William Morrow and Company, Incorporated, 1967. 408 pp.

Of the many studies written by the eminent battlefield historian this was his first on Vietnam. This is an excellent, comprehensive, tactical study of three battles fought in the Central Highlands of South Vietnam during the summer of 1966. Maps and illustrations are included.

856. ——. *BIRD: The Christmastide Battle*. New York: Cowles, 1968. 206 pp.

On Christmas Day, 1966, nearly 800 North Vietnamese regulars overran a small force of Americans at Landing Zone Bird. The NVA lost. Maps and illustrations are included.

857. ——. *The Fields of Bamboo: Dong Tre, Truong Luong and Hoa Hoi – Three Battles Just Beyond the South China Sea*. New York: The Dial Press, 1971. 242 pp.

Three battles in South Vietnam, in which elements of the First Cavalry Division fought, are described by the author in anecdotal fashion. The battles occurred in 1966.

858. ——. *Vietnam – Three Battles*. New York: Da Capo Press, 1982. 242 pp. (Reprint ed., New York: Dial Press, 1971.)

This work is a reprint of the author's earlier *Fields of Bamboo*. See entry number 857.

859. Middleton, Drew. "TET: Military Victory – Political Defeat." *Campaigns* (January–February 1984), pp. 6–15.

Although the U.S. won a military victory in the 1968 Tet Offensive, it was a political defeat at home for President Lyndon Johnson. This brief, illustrated article summarizes the events of the offensive and the repercussions. As a result of Tet 1968, the U.S. was forced into a "no-win" position.

860. Nalty, Bernard C. "Khe Sanh: No Dien Bien Phu: 77-Day Siege – Sorry About That, Charlie." *Soldier of Fortune* (May 1980), pp. 36–42.

The 77-day siege of the Marines stationed at the Khe Sanh Combat Base, located in northwestern South Vietnam, is recalled in this article. From January to April 1968 this siege captivated President Johnson. The North Vietnamese Army (NVA) wanted to duplicate their defeat of the French at Dien Bien Phu, 1954. The NVA were denied the opportunity by a massive air re-supply effort and a vigorous bombing campaign. Some color illustrations are included.

861. Ngo Quang Truong, Lieutenant General. *The Easter Offensive of 1972*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1980. 183 pp.

In the U.S. 1972 was an election year. And, as in 1968, North Vietnam threw its entire military weight behind an invasion to conquer South Vietnam – this time during Easter. South Vietnam had to rely solely upon U.S. assistance as all Free World Military Assistance combat forces had been withdrawn by this time. This monograph details the invasion of Quang Tri, the fighting at Kontum, the siege of An Loc, and the enemy offensive in the Mekong Delta. Illustrations and maps are included.

862. Nolan, Keith William. "Battle at Hue City." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 108: 4/950 (April 1982), pp. 50–58.

A brief glimpse of the battle for Hue, during the 1968 Tet Offensive, is provided in this illustrated article.

863. ——. *Battle for Hue: Tet, 1968*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1983. 201 pp.

Americans at Hue experienced, for the only time during the Vietnam War, the street fighting that characterized World War II and some of Korea. This is a detailed account of the 32-day battle for Hue during the 1968 Tet Offensive. The book is illustrated.

864. Oberdorfer, Don. *Tet!* Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1971. 385 pp.

A first-rate journalistic treatment of the Communist 1968 offensive launched throughout South Vietnam. This authoritative account includes coverage of the attack on the American embassy during Tet, the massacre at Hue, the impact at home, and the impact upon the eventual outcome of the war. Illustrations highlight the book.

865. Ott, Major General David E. "The Battle of Khe Sanh." *Field Artillery Journal* 44:2 (March–April 1976), pp. 44–48.

The role that air power played at Khe Sanh has received much attention. Often overlooked, however, was the role of the artillery. This article looks at the battalion located at the "Rockpile" and the one stationed at "Camp Carroll" during the siege of Khe Sanh. Some maps detailing the locations of the artillery batteries are included.

866. —. "1968 the TET Offensive." *Field Artillery Journal* 44:1 (January–February 1976), pp. 27–31, 38.

General Ott presents a good, general description of the 1968 Tet Offensive in South Vietnam. He gives particular attention to the role of artillery support during the fighting at Hue.

867. —. "1968–69 A Shau Valley." *Field Artillery Journal* 44:3 (May–June 1976), pp. 53–57.

Following the 1968 Tet Offensive the most significant, although not the largest, operation was "Delaware-Lam Son 216," conducted in April 1968. This operation in the A Shau Valley relied upon artillery support and this article focuses on that.

868. —. Lieutenant General. "1972 Enemy Offensive." *Field Artillery Journal* 45:1 (January–February 1977), pp. 42–47.

Ott describes events which occurred during the 1972 Communist Easter Offensive and the problems encountered during the U.S. "phase-down" in this article.

869. —. "Operations into Cambodia." *Field Artillery Journal* 44:6 (November–December 1976), pp. 13–18.

This brief article examines the Cambodian incursion of 1970 as well as the “Vietnamization” program.

870. Peake, Louis A. “Tet 1968: The Battle for Hue.” *Viet Nam Journal* 1 (1981), pp. 8–14.

The 1968 Tet Offensive is described in this article with particular attention upon the battle for Hue in Thua Thien Province. The heavy fighting encountered by the Marines and the U.S. Army’s 1st Cavalry Division (Airmobile) to recapture the city, are described.

871. Pearson, Lieutenant General Willard. *Vietnam Studies: The War in the Northern Provinces, 1966–1968*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1975. 115 pp.

North Vietnamese attempts to seize control of Quang Tri and Thua Thien provinces in South Vietnam, are examined by the author. This work discusses the response of the Free World Military Assistance Forces and, in particular, U.S. Army units. Photographs, maps, and a glossary are included.

872. Pham Van Son, Lieutenant Colonel, senior ed. *The Viet Cong “Tet” Offensive (1968)*. Translated from Vietnamese, translator unknown. Printing and Publishing Center (A.G./Joint General Staff), Republic of Vietnam Armed Forces, nd. 490 pp.

This illustrated work is the South Vietnamese account of the 1968 Tet Offensive.

873. Pisor, Robert. *The End of the Line: The Siege of Khe Sanh*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1982. 319 pp.

Mr. Pisor considers the battle for Khe Sanh to be the turning point of American involvement in the Vietnam War. Furthermore, he questions whether Khe Sanh was a cleverly conceived diversionary attack by the North Vietnamese to mask the forthcoming Tet Offensive in the South. This account relives the 77-day siege of the U.S. Marine fire-support base at Khe Sanh. Pisor was a war correspondent in Vietnam during the siege.

874. Rogers, Major General Bernard W. *Vietnam Studies: Cedar Falls–Junction City: A Turning Point*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1974. 172 pp.

Two of the largest, early operations conducted in the war, between January and March 1967, were considered to be decisive events in the war. Both were joint U.S.–ARVN operations with high enemy casualty figures. Maps and photographs are included.

875. Shore, II, Captain Moyers S. USMC. *The Battle for Khe Sanh*. Historical Branch, G-3 Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1969. 203 pp.

Compiled from official Marine Corps records this work covers the 77-day siege at Khe Sanh. Excellent photographs are included along with maps and a chronology of events. From Khe Sanh came the prophecy, from an anonymous Marine, "For those who fight for it, life has a special flavor the protected never know."

876. Stapleton, Major Homer L. USA. "Trung Luong – Setpiece Vietnam." *Military Review* 47:5 (May 1967), pp. 36-44.

The Viet Cong attack on Trung Luong, August 11, 1966, is examined in this article. The author explains how this was a classic set-piece battle.

877. Turley, Colonel G. H. USMCR (Ret.). *The Easter Offensive: Vietnam, 1972*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1985. 344 pp.

The final U.S.-South Vietnamese joint campaign against the North Vietnamese in the Spring or Easter Offensive of 1972 is detailed in this account. The work is illustrated.

878. Zaffiri, Samuel. *Hamburger Hill: May 11–20, 1969*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1988. 304 pp.

Vietnam 1969 and the battle for Ap Bia Mountain (Hill 937) is described in this work. For almost two weeks in May 1969 elements of the 101st Airborne Division, the 9th Marine Regiment, and the 3rd ARVN Regiment, fought this battle which became a human meat grinder. The author describes one of the really "big" battles in a war that had more firefights, ambushes, and small unit actions. This action was a part of "Operation Apache Snow" which was designed to destroy NVA bases in the A Shau Valley. The work is illustrated with black and white photographs.

2. Air War

a. General Accounts

879. Broughton, Colonel Jack. USAF (Ret.). *Thud Ridge*. Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott Company, 1969. 254 pp.

Broughton focuses upon one wing of U.S. Air Force F-105's (Thuds), based in Thailand, and the missions they flew over North Vietnam.

880. DeSaussure, Hamilton. "The Laws of Air Warfare: Are There Any?" *Naval War College Review* 23:6 (February 1971), pp. 35-47.

The author questions the international legality of air warfare. He reviews the various positions taken by the U.S., the International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC), the Hague Laws of War Conventions of 1899 and 1907, the Geneva Conventions, and other international organizations in regards to this issue. He concludes that historical precedent is the basis for the protection and humane treatment of pilots and air crews in time of war, and not the threat of being declared criminals.

881. Drendel, Lou. *Air War over Southeast Asia: A Pictorial Record*. 3 vols. Carrollton, Texas: Squadron/Signal Publications: Vol. 1 (1982), 80 pp; Vol. 2 (1983), 80 pp; Vol. 3 (1984), 80 pp.

Within the pages of these three volumes the author presents a concise, illustrated picture of the air war over Vietnam from 1962 to 1975.

882. Duncan, Scott. "The Combat History of the F-105." *Aerospace Historian* 22:3 (fall/September 1975), pp. 121-28.

The air war over North Vietnam, from 1965 to the final missions in 1972, are examined in this article. Information regarding the use of the F-105 Thunderchief, or "Thud," is included with illustrations.

883. Eade, General George J. "Reflections on Air Power in the Vietnam War." *Air University Review* 25:1 (November-December 1973), pp. 2-9.

General Eade surmises that air power alone did not end the Vietnam War but it can be credited for hastening the peace negotiations and the cease-fire agreement.

884. Greenhalgh, William H., Jr. "AOK Airpower over Khe Sanh." *Aerospace Historian* 19:1 (spring/March 1972), pp. 2-9.

This illustrated article describes how "Operation Niagara" – the air lift and resupply of the besieged Khe Sanh combat base, succeeded.

885. Gropman, Lieutenant Colonel Alan L. *Air Power and the Airlift Evacuation of Khe Sanh*. U.S. Air Force Southeast Asia Monograph Series, Vol. 5, Monograph 7. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1979. 87 pp.

How the rescue of over 1,500 Americans and South Vietnamese military personnel and civilians, from Kham Duc in May 1968, was conducted is recalled in this monograph. The rescue was conducted

under difficult conditions and this work describes both the pilots and air controllers, as well as the relationship of airpower to tactical ground efforts. Illustrations and a glossary of Air Force terms are included.

886. Gurney, Colonel Gene. USAF (Ret.). *Vietnam: The War in the Air: A Pictorial History of the U.S. Air Forces in the Vietnam War: Air Force, Army, Navy, and Marines*. New York: Crown Publishers, 1985. 277 pp.

Gurney provides a comprehensive study of the air war, in Vietnam, with reference to all branches of the U.S. military. Air operations are studied in two sections: from 1962 to 1964 and from 1965 to 1972. Many color illustrations and a glossary are included.

887. Lavalle, Major A. J. C., ed. *Airpower and the 1972 Spring Invasion*. U.S. Air Force Southeast Asia Monograph Series, Vol. 2, Monograph 3. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1976. 113 pp.

This study examines the “Easter Offensive” or the March 1972 spring invasion of the Republic of Vietnam by the North Vietnamese. The work describes the opening moves, the U.S. response, the battles, and the impact of airpower during the campaign. Excellent maps and photographs illustrate this work.

888. ——. Lieutenant Colonel, ed. *Last Flight from Saigon*. U.S. Air Force Southeast Asia Monograph Series, Vol. 4, Monograph 6. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1978. 138 pp.

The closing months of the Vietnam War terminating with the evacuation from Saigon in April 1975, is the subject of this monograph. The author examines the largest air evacuation in history – “Operation Frequent Wind.” Maps and photographs illustrate the work.

889. ——. Major, ed. *The Tale of Two Bridges and the Battle for the Skies Over North Vietnam*. U.S. Air Force Southeast Asia Monograph Series, Vol. 1, Monographs 1-2. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1976. 193 pp.

The first monograph in this volume covers the destruction of the Thanh Hoa and Paul Doumer bridges as a measure of interdicting North Vietnamese supply routes from 1965 to 1972. The second monograph reviews the strategy and tactics of gaining air superiority in the skies over North Vietnam. Other topics include the early use of airpower, and operations “Rolling Thunder” and “Linebacker II.” Many excellent photographs illustrate the monographs.

890. Littauer, Ralph, and Norman Uphoff, eds. *The Air War in Indochina*. Rev. ed. Boston: Beacon Press, 1972. 289 pp.

Prepared under the auspices of the Cornell University Program on Peace Studies, this book contains a wealth of statistical information and technical data, concerning the use of airpower in Southeast Asia. The authors examine the air war against North Vietnam, the air war in South Vietnam, Laos, and Cambodia, and present trends.

891. McLaughlin, Major General Burl W. USAF. "Khe Sanh: Keeping an Outpost Alive: An Appraisal." *Air University Review* 20:1 (November–December 1968), pp. 57–77.

This illustrated article summarizes the employment of a tactical airlift to break the siege at Khe Sanh. General McLaughlin predicts that future tactical airlifts will be based upon the Khe Sanh operation.

892. Mersky, Peter B., and Norman Polmar. *The Naval Air War in Vietnam 1965–1975*. Annapolis, Maryland: Nautical and Aviation Publishing Company of America, 1981. 224 pp.

The first full account of Naval and Marine aircraft in action in Vietnam, from 1965 to 1975 is covered in this work. From the aerial response following the Gulf of Tonkin incidents, until the final evacuation in 1975, Naval and Marine air power played a significant role. Some of the topics reviewed are close air support, air-sea rescue, helicopters in riverine operations, and coastal patrols. The work is fully illustrated.

893. Morrocco, John. *The Vietnam Experience: Thunder from Above: Air War, 1941–1968*. Vol. 9. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1984. 192 pp.

From the days of the "Flying Tigers" of World War II, to the aerial resupply of Khe Sanh in 1968, this volume examines the air war in the skies over Vietnam – both North and South. Profusely illustrated (many photographs in color) this work depicts the air operations of the U.S. Air Force, Army, Navy, and Marines.

894. —. and the editors of Boston Publishing Company. *The Vietnam Experience: Rain of Fire: Air War, 1969–1973*. Vol. 14. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1985. 192 pp.

The author provides a comprehensive examination of the air war in Southeast Asia, from 1969 to 1973, in this illustrated study. He looks at the "secret" air war in Laos. A chapter is devoted to those who kept the aircraft flying. The remaining chapters are devoted to

Operation Linebacker, the 1972 Christmas bombings of North Vietnam, and the legacy of air power.

895. Nalty, Bernard C. *Air Power and the Fight for Khe Sanh*. Office of Air Force History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973. 134 pp.

This work examines the siege at Khe Sanh in 1968, and the use of air power to lift it. Nalty analyzes air operations, resupply by air, and fighter and bomber support. Illustrations and maps are included.

896. Robbins, Christopher. *Air America*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1979. 323 pp.

From 1947 to 1976 Air America was the airline operated by the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA). This work details Air America's inception in 1937, as the Civil Air Transport (CAT) to the "Flying Tigers" of Claire Chennault in China, through its demise in 1976. Two chapters provide insight into AA's operations in Vietnam and one chapter is devoted to Cambodia. Much of the material in this book was compiled from former AA pilots and personnel.

897. Sherwood, John Darrell. *Fast Movers: America's Jet Pilots and the Vietnam Experience*. New York: The Free Press, 1999. 268 pp.

Jet aircraft and the pilots who flew them (Marine, Navy, Air Force) in Vietnam from 1966 to 1972 are examined in this account. Relying on over 300 interviews of pilots, the author allows them to describe their stories as well as their aircraft. A glossary of almost exclusive terms that pilots would relate to is included. The author observes that even though the U.S. had technologically advanced equipment, i.e. Doppler radar, it often could not be employed effectively. The work is illustrated.

898. Smith, Myron J., Jr. *Air War Southeast Asia 1961–1973: An Annotated Bibliography and 16mm Film Guide*. Metuchen, New Jersey: Scarecrow Press, 1979. 298 pp.

This comprehensive bibliographical examination of the air war in Southeast Asia, from 1961 to 1973, includes entries for the U.S. Air Force, Navy, Marines, Army, South Vietnamese Air Force, and the Royal Australian Air Force. Entries examine books, periodicals, monographs, doctoral and master's theses as well as unpublished theses from the Air University. The work includes a film guide to all currently available 16-mm motion pictures with information on the location and availability. A very useful work.

899. U.S. Congress. Senate Committee on Armed Services. Preparedness Investigating Subcommittee. *Air War Against North Vietnam*.

Hearings ... August 9-10, 1967. Part 1 of 5. 90th Cong., 1st Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 515 pp inclusive.

This work documents the testimony of Admiral Ulysses G. Sharp, USN, Commander-In-Chief, Pacific; General John Ryan, Pacific Air Force; and Admiral Roy Johnson, Commander-In-Chief, Pacific Fleet, before the Congressional Preparedness Investigating Subcommittee, on the conduct of the air war against North Vietnam.

900. —. *Air War Against North Vietnam. Hearings ... August 16, 1967.* Part 2. 90th Cong., 1st Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967.

The testimony of General Earle G. Wheeler, USA, Chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff, and Lieutenant General William Momoyer, USAF, Commander, Seventh Air Force, on the air war against North Vietnam.

901. —. *Air War Against North Vietnam. Hearings ... August 22 and 23, 1967.* Part 3. 90th Cong., 1st Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967.

The testimony of General John McConnell, U.S. Air Force Chief of Staff, and Admiral Thomas H. Moorer, USN, Chief of Naval Operations, on the air war being conducted against North Vietnam.

902. —. *Air War Against North Vietnam. Hearings ... August 25, 1967.* Part 4. 90th Cong., 1st Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967.

The testimony of Secretary of Defense Robert S. McNamara, on the air war against North Vietnam.

903. —. *Air War Against North Vietnam. Hearings ... August 28 and 29, 1967.* Part 5. 90th Cong., 1st Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967.

The testimony of General Harold K. Johnson, Chief of Staff, USA; General Wallace M. Greene, Commandant, U.S. Marine Corps; and Major General Gilbert Meyers, U.S. Air Force (Retired).

904. Watts, III, Major Claudius E. USAF. "Aerial Resupply for Khe Sanh." *Military Review* 52:12 (December 1972), pp. 79-88.

This illustrated article examines the importance of the employment of an airlift to end the siege at Khe Sanh, and aerial resupply in general.

b. Bombing Campaigns

905. Hopkins, Charles K. "Linebacker II – A Firsthand View." *Aerospace Historian* 23:3 (fall/September 1976), pp. 128–35.

This article summarizes the aerial operation conducted in late December 1972 – "Linebacker II," and the B-52 bombings of North Vietnam. The author observes that, as a result of Linebacker II, negotiations resumed and within a month a cease-fire agreement was signed.

906. McCarthy, Brigadier General James R., and Lieutenant Colonel George B. Allison. *Linebacker II: A View from the Rock*. Edited by Colonel Robert E. Rayfield. U.S. Air Force Southeast Asia Monograph Series, Vol. 6, Monograph 8. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1979. 208 pp.

The subject of this monograph is "Operation Linebacker II" – the "Eleven Day" War conducted from December 18 to 29, 1972. The focus of this work is upon the Strategic Air Command (SAC) bombing operations against Hanoi and the bases from which they operated on Guam, called simply the "rock." The work is illustrated.

907. Parks, W. Hays. "Linebacker and the Law of War." *Air University Review* 34:2 (January–February 1983), pp. 2–30.

The U.S. response in 1972, to the Communist Easter Offensive by way of operations Linebacker I and II are examined in this article. The author has also written a companion article on Operation "Rolling Thunder."

908. —. "Rolling Thunder and the Law of War." *Air University Review* 33:2 (January–February 1982), pp. 2–23.

The 43-month U.S. air operation and bombing campaign against North Vietnam known as "Operation Rolling Thunder," is examined in this article. Initiated by President Johnson the author questions the legality of the campaign. The author looks at how the targets were selected and by whom.

909. Thompson, James Clay. *Rolling Thunder: Understanding Policy and Program Failure*. Chapel Hill, North Carolina: University of North Carolina Press, 1980. 199 pp.

This work addresses Operation "Rolling Thunder" and the decision to halt it. The author raises three questions concerning the campaign: what errors were committed in the planning; what mistakes

were made in the implementation; and how the defense establishment reacted to the failure of the campaign. The author concludes that the use of "conventional bombing against a non-industrial country organized to fight and win a revolutionary war will fail."

c. *Helicopter War (Airmobility)*

910. Babbs, First Lieutenant Kenneth J. USMC. "A Special Gazette Report." *Marine Corps Gazette* 47:7 (July 1963), p. 5.

This is a one-page summary of Marine Corps helicopter operations in South Vietnam, up to 1963. Although the information in the article is dated it provides information on the early use of helicopters in Vietnam.

911. Chapelle, Dickey. "Helicopter War in South Viet Nam." *National Geographic* 122:5 (November 1962), pp. 722-54.

In this excellently illustrated article the initial role that helicopters played in the fighting in South Vietnam is depicted. The author won the "George Polk Memorial Award" of the Overseas Press Club for her coverage of the fighting. She was later killed in Vietnam. Many of the photographs are in color.

912. Drendel, Lou. *Gunslingers in Action*. Carrollton, Texas: Squadron/Signal Publications, 1974. 49 pp.

An illustrated history of helicopter gunships, and the men who piloted them, is depicted in this work. Most of the illustrations are in black and white although color drawings are included.

913. Fails, Lieutenant Colonel William R. USMC. *Marines and Helicopters 1962-1973*. History and Museums Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1978. 262 pp.

The difficulties and obstacles faced and conquered by the Marine Corps, with respect to helicopters, is described in this work. How the Marine Corps refined the tactic of amphibious vertical assault is explained. A wealth of technical data and information, as well as a chronology from 1962 to 1974, is included. Many excellent photographs are provided. A highlight of this work is the "Standard Aircraft Characteristics" of each of the Marine Corps helicopters of the period.

914. Keating, Bern. *Chopper*. New York: Rand McNally, 1976. 223 pp.

An illustrated history of the helicopter, from its creation and formative years, through the Korean War to the Vietnam War. Profusely illustrated with both color and black and white photographs.

915. Kent, John L. "The Helicopter War." *Ordnance* 52:284 (September–October 1967), pp. 160–63.

This illustrated article summarizes the various types of helicopters, their use and armament, in Vietnam.

916. Mertel, Colonel Kenneth D. "Combat Night Air Assaults." *Aviation Digest* 15:6 (June 1969), pp. 2–6.

The author asserts that airmobile units, with good records of conducting daylight operations, can execute effective night air assaults.

917. Rawlins, Lieutenant Colonel Eugene W. USMC. *Marines and Helicopters 1946–1962*. Edited by Major William J. Sambito, USMC. History and Museums Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1976. 113 pp.

This Marine Corps history traces the early stages of helicopter development, through the Korean War, to the beginning of U.S. involvement in Southeast Asia. It provides much technical data and information along with an interesting chronology of Marine Corps helicopter history, from 1932 to 1962. Many fine historical photographs are included.

918. Tippin, Major Gerold L. USA. "Assault by Air." *Infantry* 58:6 (November–December 1968), pp. 12–17.

In this illustrated article the use of helicopters and the concept of air mobility are discussed. Tippin details the planning of an attack (air assault) and includes a flight leader's checklist.

919. Tolson, Lieutenant General John L. *Airmobility in Vietnam: Helicopter Warfare in Southeast Asia*. New York: Arno Press, 1981. 304 pp.

The evolution of the concept of airmobile warfare, in the U.S. Army through the Vietnam War, is the focus of this work. After the introduction to the concept of airmobile warfare the author traces its application in Vietnam. One of the reminders of the American military involvement in Vietnam, is that the strategy and tactics of airmobility have been refined and are now an integral part of our nation's defense. There are many illustrations and an Army aviation glossary. The appendix of Army aircraft photographs and specifications is worth examining. The author was Commanding General, First Cavalry Division (Airmobile), Vietnam, from April 1967 to July 1968.

3. Naval War

a. General Accounts

920. Alexander, Captain Joseph H. USMC. "An Amphibious Operation in Vietnam." *Marine Corps Gazette* 50:1 (January 1966), pp. 37-40.

Problems which occurred during the Marine landings in South Vietnam of March and April 1965 are discussed in this article.

921. Cagle, Vice Admiral Malcolm W. USN. "Task Force 77 in Action off Vietnam." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings Naval Review Issue* (May 1972), pp. 66-109.

Admiral Cagle summarizes the activities of the U.S. Navy aircraft carriers stationed at "Yankee" and "Dixie" stations as part of Task Force 77. The article is illustrated.

922. Colwell, Vice Admiral John B. USN. "Naval Action – Vietnam." *Ordnance* 51:279 (November–December 1966), pp. 262-64.

In this article, naval support of U.S. ground forces in Vietnam is examined. The author discusses air strikes, amphibious operations, counter-sea-infiltration, riverine operations, and naval gunfire support.

923. de Gast, Robert. "A New Challenge for the U.S.S. *New Jersey* (BB-62)." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 94:9 (September 1968), pp. 88-101.

This photo-essay details the reactivation of the battleship U.S.S. *New Jersey* for duty off the coast of Vietnam. A diagram of the ship is included.

924. Haugland, Vern. "Navy Wings for Vietnam." *Ordnance* 52:287 (March–April 1968), pp. 471-74.

The ready capability of the naval air arm to conduct a guerrilla war in Vietnam, is described in this illustrated article.

925. Kalbenschlag, Lieutenant George R. USN. "Minesweeping on the Long Tao River." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 93:6 (June 1967), pp. 88-102.

Minesweeping operations are described in this photo-essay. The author looks at specific operations on the Long Tao and Soirap Rivers.

926. McCauley, Rear Admiral Brian. USN. "Operation End Sweep." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 100:3/853 (March 1974), pp. 18-25.

Clearing North Vietnam's Haiphong Harbor of mines, sown earlier to blockade the port (as part of the cease-fire agreement), is reviewed in this article. The operation was known as "End Sweep."

927. Moeser, Chief Journalist Robert D. USN. "Yankee Station." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 93:7 (July 1967), pp. 90–105.

Daily carrier operations being conducted off the coast of Vietnam, at "Yankee Station," are described in this illustrated article.

928. Powers, Commander Robert C. USN. "Linebacker Strike." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 100:8/858 (August 1974), pp. 46–51.

A personal assessment of the effectiveness of naval gunfire support, as part of "Operation Linebacker," off the coast of Vietnam, 1972, is offered in this article.

929. Schreadley, Commander R. L. USN. "The Naval War in Vietnam, 1950–70." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings Naval Review Issue* (May 1971), pp. 180–209.

This illustrated article reviews the role of the U.S. Navy in the Republic of Vietnam, from the advisory period of the late 1950s to the riverine patrols of the 1960s.

930. Vito, Captain A. H., Jr. USN. "Carrier Air and Vietnam ... an Assessment." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 93:10 (October 1967), pp. 66–75.

The author enthusiastically endorses the use of aircraft carriers as a means of bringing the war to North Vietnam in this illustrated article.

931. West, Francis J., Jr. "Stingray '70." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 95:11 (November 1969), pp. 27–37.

The author describes the employment of Navy "Sea-Air-Land" (SEALS) commandos and Army Long-Range Reconnaissance Patrols (LRRPs), as well as the Australian Special Air Service's (SAS) teams, in fighting the Viet Cong in remote areas in this illustrated article.

b. Riverine Operations/Inland Waters

932. Abel, Lieutenant J. G. Christopher A. USCG. "Forgotten Lessons of Riverine Warfare." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 108:1/947 (January 1982), pp. 64–68.

In Vietnam the U.S. failed to learn from the French, or from much earlier lessons of the American Civil War, about the use of the “Brown Water” Navy. In this article the author observes that the Marine Corps should adapt to this special type of warfare for future operations.

933. Baker, Lieutenant Colonel John W. USA., and Lieutenant Colonel Lee C. Dickson, USA. “Army Forces in Riverine Operations.” *Military Review* 47:8 (August 1967), pp. 64–74.

The authors describe the joint effort in coordination between the Army and the Navy in conducting riverine operations. They discuss the tactics employed and the equipment used in this illustrated article.

934. Cracknell, Lieutenant Commander William H., Jr. USN. “The Role of the U.S. Navy in Inshore Waters.” *Naval War College Review* 21:3 (November 1968), pp. 65–91.

Several areas of inshore operations are explained in this article. The author examines the threat to riverine and coastal operations, then gives the historical background of inshore operations from the American Civil War to the French in Indochina, 1945–54. Finally, the balance of the article deals with the present, the future, and an appreciation of the significance of this naval function.

935. Croizat, Colonel Victor. USMC (Ret.). *The Brown Water Navy: The River and Coastal War in Indochina and Vietnam, 1948–1972*. Dorset, United Kingdom: Blandford Press, Limited, 1984. 160 pp.

A historical background of inland and coastal water operations presented by the author in this work. Both the French and American experiences in the art of riverine warfare are described in this illustrated work.

936. Cutler, Thomas J. *Brown Water, Black Berets: Coastal and Riverine Warfare in Vietnam*. Annapolis, Maryland: Bluejacket Books, Naval Institute Press, 2000. 448 pp.

A recent evaluation of the role of the U.S. Navy in inland and coastal waters of Vietnam focusing primarily on the southernmost parts of South Vietnam.

937. Department of the Navy. *Riverine Warfare: The U.S. Navy's Operations on Inland Waters*. Naval History Division. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1968. 53 pp.

In this illustrated monograph the role of the U.S. Navy in riverine warfare is depicted. A short introduction to the topic is followed by

concise descriptions of Navy operations in Vietnam to 1968. The work concludes with the prophecy that “he who controls the sea controls the destiny of the world.”

938. Dodd, Chief Photographer's Mate Don. USN. “The Mobile Riverine Force.” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 95:6 (June 1969), pp. 80–95.

Riverine operations conducted by the U.S. Navy in South Vietnam are examined in this excellent photo-essay.

939. Fulton, Major General William B. *Vietnam Studies: Riverine Operations, 1966–1969*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973. 210 pp.

A review of the U.S. Army's riverine planning and operations during the three-year period of 1966–69 in Vietnam. The study calls attention to significant trends and changes in riverine operations. The work is illustrated.

940. Mastin, Lieutenant Thomas M. USN. “The River War.” *Ordnance* 53:290 (September–October 1968), pp. 176–78.

The author reviews the first 18 months of duty for the U.S. Navy's river patrol boats (PBRs), on the Mekong River, in this illustrated article.

941. Meyer, Major Richard M. USA. “The Ground-Sea Team in River Warfare.” *Military Review* 46:9 (September 1966), pp. 54–61.

The author contends that for the concept of riverine warfare to be successful in South Vietnam, the U.S. military forces must have both patrol and assault capabilities. The article is illustrated.

942. Rozier, William B. *To Battle a Dragon*. New York: Vintage, 1971. 90 pp.

This book examines the U.S. Navy's river/jungle counter-guerrilla warfare operations in Vietnam. The author is a U.S. Navy veteran.

943. Schreadley, Commander Richard L. USN. “Nothing to Report: A Day on the Vam Co Tay.” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 96:12/814 (December 1970), pp. 23–27.

A typical day in the life of a U.S. sailor on riverine duty in South Vietnam comprises this illustrated article.

944. —. “Sea Lords.” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 96:8/810 (August 1970), pp. 22–31.

Riverine operations used to block infiltration routes from neighboring Cambodia into South Vietnam by the U.S. Navy, are examined in this illustrated article.

945. Swarztrauber, Commander S. A. USN. "River Patrol Relearned." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings Naval Review Issue 96:5* (May 1970), pp. 120-157.

This article provides a concise summary of the creditable performance of the U.S. Navy's river patrol boats (PBRs) in South Vietnam. The author reviews the history of PBRs, from their initial employment in 1966, through Tet 1968 up to 1969. Swarztrauber recommends that the Navy, instead of learning by trial and error during wartime, maintain river patrol boats during peacetime. The article is illustrated.

4. Personal Accounts

a. Land

946. *American Heroes of Asian Wars*. Editors of *Army Times*. New York: Dodd, Mead, 1968. 128 pp.

Americans who fought in Korea and Vietnam have their heroic deeds recalled in this illustrated work.

947. Bartecchi, Carl E. M.D. *Soc Trang – A Vietnamese Odyssey*. Boulder, Colorado: Rocky Mountain Writers Guild, 1980. 181 pp.

This personal narrative tells of the experiences of a military doctor and his men stationed at Soc Trang in the Mekong Delta. The author is a Vietnam veteran who served as an Army Flight Surgeon, at Soc Trang, in the mid-1960s.

948. Briscoe, Edward G. M.D. *Diary of a Short-Timer in Vietnam*. New York: Vintage, 1970. 117 pp.

Beginning in November 1967 until May 1968, the author served as a doctor in Vietnam. Without dwelling on the glory or horrors of war the author presents a factual account of his service. The book is illustrated.

949. Brown, Captain Gerald Austin. *No Sad Songs*. Fort Worth, Texas: Branch-Smith, Incorporated, 1973. 196 pp.

This is the story of one Army officer's life, from college days to his death in Vietnam, as told in a collection of letters written to his mother. The book is illustrated.

950. Caputo, Philip. *A Rumor of War*. New York: Ballantine Books, 1978. 328 pp.

The author was both a Marine officer and, later, a correspondent in Vietnam. This is a personal narrative of his experience in Vietnam with the First Battalion, Third Marine Division, operating in the Da Nang area during an eight-week period in 1965. The book is a thought-evoking work on the brutal aspects of war on men. The epilogue contains the author's account of the collapse of Saigon and the Republic of Vietnam. Destined to become a classic of the war.

951. Cundiff, Colonel Robert W., with Charles H. Bogart. "One Year and One Day." *Viet Nam Journal* 1 (1981), pp. 26-28.

The author's story of his exploits with the Second Battalion, 138th Field Artillery, activated from the Kentucky National Guard to duty in Vietnam, during 1968 and 1969. A very good description of how this National Guard unit accounted themselves during their tour of duty in Vietnam.

952. Donlon, Roger H. C. *Outpost of Freedom*. New York: Avon Books, 1965. 191 pp.

The author was a U.S. Army Green Beret captain and the first Medal of Honor recipient in Vietnam. In this book he recalls his family and boyhood, his time at West Point, the history of the Special Forces, his team's stateside training, the battle in which he participated and for which he received the MOH, and the award ceremony at the White House.

953. Downs, Frederick. *The Killing Zone: My Life in the Vietnam War*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1978. 240 pp.

The author relates his personal experiences as an Army lieutenant with the First Platoon, "D" Company, Third Brigade, Fourth Infantry Division, in diary fashion. Downs spent four months in Vietnam until he lost an arm at Chu Lai in 1968. The work is very descriptive.

954. Duncan, Donald. *The New Legions*. New York: Random House, 1967. 275 pp.

This is an early, personal account of the U.S. Army "Green Berets." Duncan served as a Green Beret in Vietnam for 18 months before resigning in protest against the U.S. government's actions.

955. Ehrhart, W. D. "Once a Marine. . . ." *Viet Nam Journal* 1 (1981), pp. 14-22.

This personal narrative recalls the author's boot camp experiences at Parris Island, South Carolina, in 1966, and his experiences in Vietnam from 1967 to 1968. Ehrhart points out that the rugged

training during boot camp saved his life in Vietnam. The language in the book is explicit.

956. ——. *Vietnam-Perkasie – A Combat Marine Memoir*. Jefferson, North Carolina: McFarland and Company, Incorporated, 1983. 208 pp.

Ehrhart served in Vietnam from 1967 to 1968 as an intelligence assistant with the First Battalion, First Marine Regiment. This is his personal narrative of his experience.

957. Eilert, Rick. *For Self and Country: For the Wounded in Vietnam the Journey Took More Bravery Than Going into Battle, A True Story*. New York: William Morrow and Company, Incorporated, 1983. 320 pp.

Wounded by a Viet Cong grenade, Rick Eilert was saved on the battlefield by dedicated corpsmen and Med-Evac helicopters. This story recalls his struggle to survive the pain, the physical disfigurement, the endless medical treatment, and the psychological impact. A very good account of the plight of the wounded Vietnam War veteran. The book is illustrated and describes explicit medical procedures.

958. Glasser, Ronald J. M.D. *365 Days*. New York: George Braziller, 1971. 292 pp.

The author was an Army doctor stationed at Camp Zama, Japan in 1968. This is a collection of stories about the patients returning from Vietnam that he treated. The work includes a glossary of military and medical terms.

959. Goldman, Peter, and Tony Fuller. *Charlie Company: What Vietnam Did to Us*. New York: William Morrow and Company, Incorporated, 1983. 358 pp.

The authors, who were reporters for *Newsweek* magazine, interviewed 65 members of Charlie Company, 28th Infantry Regiment, First Infantry Division, who served in Vietnam 1968–69. The book offers a revealing look through the eyes of the enlisted men, the NCOs, and the company commander, as they fought to survive in Vietnam and shows the problems they encountered upon their return home. The work is illustrated and uses explicit language.

960. Groom, Winston, and Duncan Spencer. *Conversations with the Enemy: The Story of PFC Robert Garwood*. New York: The Putnam Publishing Group, 1983. 416 pp.

This book describes the 11 years of captivity of PFC Robert Garwood who, even though a POW, was singled out to stand trial for desertion and treason. Garwood earned the nickname of the “White

Cong." While a POW he served as an interpreter for, as well as a guard over, fellow American prisoners.

961. Herbert, Lieutenant Colonel Anthony B. *Soldier*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1973. 498 pp.

This career officer of 20 years discusses, in no uncertain terms, the series of confrontations which made up his military career. He concentrates on his tour of duty, 1968-69 in Vietnam, where he served as the Inspector General of the 173rd Airborne Brigade and as Commander of the Second Battalion, 503rd Airborne Infantry. An aggressive, outspoken man Colonel Herbert exposes the many problems of Vietnam. The book is illustrated.

962. Herr, Michael. *Dispatches*. New York: Avon Books, 1978. 260 pp.

This is a well-written exposé of the meaning of fear, war, and death based upon the author's personal experiences in Vietnam from 1967 through 1968. Rated a best-seller, the book includes a fine description of the Tet Offensive of 1968, the battle for Hue, and siege of Khe Sanh. The book is written using the jargon of the American fighting man in Vietnam. A very good work.

963. Hughes, Larry. *You Can See a Lot Standing Under a Flare in the Republic of Vietnam: My Year at War*. New York: William Morrow and Company, Incorporated, 1969. 340 pp.

Hughes was stationed in the Central Highlands of Vietnam, from 1966 to 1967, as a U.S. Army information specialist. This is his story.

964. Hutchens, Major James. *Beyond Combat*. New York: Pyramid Books, 1968. 142 pp.

The author was a U.S. Army chaplain with the 70th Engineer Battalion and the 173rd Airborne Brigade in Vietnam, from 1965 to 1966. In this book he stresses the value of scripture to fighting men, the various officers he met, and the religious services he conducted.

965. Jason, Alexander. *Heroes: The True Account of the Medal of Honor Winners Southeast Asia 1964-1975*. Pinole, California: Anite Press, 1979. 258 pp.

Of the two million soldiers who went to Vietnam, 236 won the Congressional Medal of Honor. Many of that number received the decoration posthumously. A full page is devoted to each individual's story of gallantry. The book is illustrated.

966. Kovic, Ron. *Born on the Fourth of July*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1976. 208 pp.

This work deals with Kovic's experiences as a Marine in Vietnam. The work focuses on his life after he was paralyzed from the waist down. It includes vivid descriptions of his hospitalization, rehabilitation, and involvement in the anti-war movement. There are descriptions of boot camp, his accidental shooting of another Marine, and other Vietnam experiences. A very readable, worthwhile contribution to the literature of the Vietnam War.

967. Kukler, Mike. *Operation Baroom*. Gastonia, North Carolina: TPC, 1980. 153 pp.

Kukler has collected various types of information concerning Vietnam in this personal narrative. The casualty lists and numbers are noteworthy. The author served as Chief Information NCO for MACV and spent 32 months in Vietnam. The work is illustrated.

968. Lovy, Andrew. D.O. *Vietnam Diary October 1967–July 1968*. New York: Exposition Press, 1970. 129 pp.

Almost a daily record of the author's experiences as a surgeon with the 101st Airborne Division in Vietnam. The content of Dr. Lovy's book is taken from the letters he wrote to his wife during his tour of duty.

969. McDonough, James R. *Platoon Leader*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1985. 195 pp.

A personal account of the author's experience as a platoon leader in Vietnam with the 173rd Airborne Brigade. McDonough takes you from his cadet days at West Point to Vietnam.

970. Marks, Richard E. *The Letters of PFC Richard E. Marks, USMC*. Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott Company, 1967. 190 pp.

Nearly 100 letters that PFC Richard Marks wrote, primarily to his parents, during his 15 months in the Marines are collected in this work. PFC Marks was killed in combat at the age of nineteen.

971. Marshall, S. L. A. *Bringing Up the Rear: A Memoir*. San Rafael, California: Presidio Press, 1979. 358 pp.

This work, by the renowned military historian, reads like a "Who's Who" of the people who made political and military history. In this memoir the author spans the years from World War I through Vietnam. He devotes approximately 40 pages to his Vietnam experiences. The book is illustrated.

972. Mason, Robert. *Chickenhawk*. New York: The Viking Press, 1983. 339 pp.

The author served in Vietnam as a helicopter pilot – a “Chickenhawk” – with the First Cavalry Division during 1965–66. This is his personal narrative of his experiences. Written in explicit language, the book is illustrated.

973. Morris, Jim. *War Story*. Boulder, Colorado: Paladin Press, 1979. 342 pp.
- A detailed examination of the elite U.S. Army Special Forces. The author – a former captain in the Green Berets, describes his tours of duty in Vietnam. The book contains useful information about the Vietnamese people – specifically the Montagnards.
974. O'Brien, Tim. *If I Die in a Combat Zone: Box Me Up and Ship Me Home*. New York: Delacorte Press/Seymour Lawrence, 1973. 199 pp.
- A well-written personal narrative of the author's experiences in Vietnam as an infantryman in “A” Company, Fourth Battalion, Twentieth Infantry, from 1969 to 1970. O'Brien's unit operated in and near Chu Lai. There are very good descriptions of booby traps and mines in the chapter “Step Lightly.” O'Brien points out that these were greater killers than the actual enemy. While the language is graphic this is an excellent work describing one man's experience.
975. Parrish, John A. M.D. *12, 20 & 5: A Doctor's Year in Vietnam*. New York: E. P. Dutton, 1972. 315 pp.
- Dr. Parrish was assigned as the general medical officer to “A” Medical Company, Third Medical Battalion, Third Marine Division, at Phu Bai. In this book he recalls his tour of duty in Vietnam during 1967–68. It offers a detailed account of how sick call functioned, of casualties, surgery, and graves registration.
976. Regan, David. *Mourning Glory: The Making of a Marine*. Old Greenwich, Connecticut: Devin-Adair Company, 1981. 172 pp.
- From his boot camp training to combat in Vietnam this is the personal narrative of one young Marine's experience. The author uses graphic language and descriptions of violence.
977. Sack, John. *M*. New York: The New American Library, 1967. 199 pp.
- This personal account describes the author's experience with “M” Company, First Advanced Infantry Training Brigade, at Fort Dix, New Jersey. Later, the author served with the First Infantry Division in Vietnam 1966.
978. Sadler, Staff Sergeant Barry. *I'm a Lucky One*. New York: Macmillan Company, 1967. 191 pp.

An ex-Green Beret, the author describes his youth, Special Forces training, his tour of duty in Vietnam, and his music career in this autobiography. Sadler wrote the song “The Ballad of the Green Berets.”

979. Steer, John, and Cliff Dudley. *Vietnam: Curse or Blessing*. Harrison, Arkansas: New Leaf Press, 1982. 192 pp.

The personal narrative of John Steer, who lost an arm to a 750-pound bomb while serving with the 173rd Airborne in Vietnam. The book is illustrated.

980. Steinman, Ron. *The Soldier's Story: Vietnam in Their Own Words*. New York: TV Books, 2000. 367 pp.

Through this collection of interviews the author pieces together an accurate depiction of the Vietnam War through the words of those who fought it. He categorizes his work into six chapters – each dealing with a different phase of the war. He begins with the fighting in the Ia Drang Valley (1964), the siege at Khe Sanh (1968), the Tet Offensive (1968), the “Secret War” (operations in Cambodia and Laos, 1967–70), the air war, and the fall of Saigon (1975). Biographies of the interviewees are included and the work is illustrated.

981. Taylor, Maxwell D. *Swords and Plowshares*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1972. 434 pp.

The author recalls his service, both military and diplomatic, in this personal memoir. The closing chapters of the book cover Vietnam and his role in the war. In Chapter 34, “Lessons from Vietnam,” Taylor provides his own analysis of how the U.S. became deeply involved and could not get out.

982. Van Buskirk, Robert. *Tailwind: My Story*. With Fred Bauer. Waco, Texas: Word Books, 1983. 216 pp.

This is the true story of a former Special Forces captain who fought, and was decorated, in Vietnam and then ended up in prison. The title of the book comes from one of the incursions into Laos code-named “Tailwind.” The author was wounded five times.

983. Walt, General Lewis W. USMC. *Strange War, Strange Strategy: A General's Report on Vietnam*. New York: Funk and Wagnalls, 1970. 208 pp.

General Walt was the Marine commander in Vietnam, from 1965 to 1966. This is his personal memoir. Walt describes engagements and events that went largely unreported by the media. He supports the U.S. efforts in Vietnam. Some maps and illustrations are included.

984. Wesseler, David. *Half a World Away*. New York: Vantage Press, 1981. 96 pp.

This personal narrative describes the life of a soldier serving with the First Infantry Division in Vietnam during 1967–68. The author recalls the sights and sounds of his days in the war.

985. Westmoreland, General William C. USA (Ret.). *A Soldier Reports*. Garden City: New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1976. 446 pp.

General Westmoreland was the military commander in Vietnam from 1964 to 1968. This is his story. Westmoreland contends that he fought a “large-unit” war, with a strategy of attrition, because that was the only option available to him due to political impediments and restraints. Westmoreland is candid and philosophical in his writing. The book includes photographs and maps.

986. Williams, Fenton A. *Just Before the Dawn: A Doctor's Experiences in Vietnam*. New York: Exposition Press, 1971. 127 pp.

From October 1968 to October 1969, Dr. Fenton served with the medical battalion of the Ninth Infantry Division in Vietnam. He writes not only about the military and medical experiences, but about the black market as well. He talks about prostitution, racial discrimination, the morale of the soldiers, and other related topics. The book is illustrated.

987. Yezzo, Dominick. *A G.I.'s Vietnam Diary 1968–1969*. New York: Franklin Watts, Incorporated, 1974. 92 pp.

The author kept a diary while he served with the First Cavalry Division (Airmobile) in Vietnam, from 1968 to 1969. His diary has a simple, yet sensitive quality.

b. Air

988. *Air War – Vietnam*. By Officers of the U.S. Air Force. New York: Arno Press, 1978. 361 pp.

A compilation of articles, by 30 contributors, all of whom were Air Force officers, are reprinted in this book. All flew in combat in Southeast Asia. Subjects include the use of tactical air power and technical innovations, the use of electronics, “Smart bombs,” SAMs, infrared equipment, and others. A short glossary of Air Force terms is provided.

989. Anderson, William C. *BAT-21*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Incorporated, 1980. 188 pp.

The true story of U.S. Air Force Lieutenant Colonel Iceal E. Hambleton's 12 harrowing days spent evading his would-be North Vietnamese captors in the DMZ, after his EB-66 aircraft was downed in the early days of the Easter Offensive 1972. Hambleton's eventual rescue was the largest single one-man rescue in Air Force history.

990. Basel, G. I. *PAK SIX*. La Mesa, California: Associated Creative Writers, 1982. 175 pp.

This personal narrative describes the life of a U.S. Air Force F-105 "Thunderchief" pilot in the skies over North Vietnam.

991. Drury, Richard S. *My Secret War*. Fallbrook, California: Aero Publishers, 1979. 224 pp.

The author was an Air Force pilot who spent his tour of duty in Southeast Asia flying an A-1H Skyraider over Laos. The book is illustrated.

992. Flood, Charles Bracelen. *The War of the Innocents*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1970. 480 pp.

Based on the author's experiences as a pilot/journalist attached to a fighter-bomber wing of the U.S. Air Force from 1966 to 1967. He describes activities in both Cambodia and Vietnam. A graduate of Harvard, the author was a noted novelist prior to his service in Vietnam.

c. Naval

993. Bennett, Curtis P. "Khe Sahn [sic] Resupply: A Short Story." *Aerospace Historian* 23:4 (winter/December 1976), pp. 189-96.

This illustrated personal narrative describes the author's service, as a Navy pilot, flying resupply missions to Khe Sanh in 1968.

994. Elkins, Lieutenant Frank C. USN. *The Heart of a Man*. Edited by Marilyn R. Elkins. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1973. 139 pp.

In this work the author recalls his service as a carrier-based pilot of an A-4 aircraft over Vietnam in 1966. For his service he was awarded the Distinguished Flying Cross and seven Air Medals. In October 1966, he was shot down over North Vietnam and was listed as "Missing in Action."

995. Hovis, Lieutenant Commander Dobbi, NC, USN (Ret.). *Station Hospital Saigon: A Navy Nurse in Vietnam, 1963–1964*. Annapolis, Maryland: Naval Institute Press, 1991. 167 pp.

Stationed in Saigon during the early years of the war (1963–64) this book is written from the firsthand experiences of a Navy nurse. The author is partially fulfilling a void in the lack of printed material about the role of women during the war. She was present in Saigon when the bloody coup that overthrew the Diem regime occurred.

996. O'Connor, Chaplin John J. USN. *A Chaplain Looks at Vietnam*. New York: The World Publishing Company, 1968. 256 pp.

A Navy chaplain, the author served in combat with the Marines in Vietnam. Relying upon his personal experiences he answers questions about Vietnam and why the U.S. is involved. As a priest and a scholar, the author presents what he perceives to be the facts supporting the U.S. commitment to the Republic of Vietnam.

997. Rausa, Captain Rosario. USNR. *Gold Wings, Blue Sea: A Naval Aviator's Story*. Annapolis, Maryland: Naval Institute Press, 1981. 216 pp.

Captain Rausa, a Navy pilot, flew 150 combat missions off the deck of the aircraft carrier U.S.S. *Coral Sea*. This is his autobiography.

998. Trott, Captain John. USMC. *Phantom Over Vietnam*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1984. 272 pp.

A Marine fighter pilot, the author recalls his personal experiences and opinions of the Vietnam War. He served two tours of duty in Vietnam as a “zoomie,” – pilot, of an F-4 Phantom. From the excitement of aerial combat to the boredom of base life, the author describes what it was like to be a Marine flier in Vietnam. The book is illustrated.

999. Zumwalt, Elmo R., Jr. *On Watch: A Memoir*. New York: Quadrangle/The New York Times Book Company, 1976. 568 pp.

The former Chief of Naval Operations and Commander, U.S. Naval Forces in Vietnam, Admiral Zumwalt describes his years of service to the U.S. Navy in this memoir.

d. Oral Histories

1000. Baker, Mark. *Nam: The Vietnam War in the Words of the Men and Women Who Fought There*. New York: William Morrow and Company, Incorporated, 1981. 269 pp.

A collection of hundreds of personal accounts of anonymous men and women, transcribed from the author's oral interviews, is presented in this book. Fighting men, support personnel, nurses, and others provide the reader with an accurate firsthand account of what the Vietnam War – and surviving it, meant. Explicit language and violence are used throughout the work. A glossary is included.

1001. Maurer, Harry. *Strange Ground: An Oral History of Americans in Vietnam 1945–1975*. New York: Da Capo Press, 1998. Originally published New York: H. Holt, 1989. 634 pp.

A compendium of personal accounts of those who experienced Vietnam beginning with the story of one American's recollection of his time there in 1945. The author takes the reader through 30 years of personal experiences.

1002. Santoli, Al. *Everything We Had: An Oral History of the Vietnam War by Thirty-Three Soldiers Who Fought it*. New York: Random House, 1981. 265 pp.

Santoli is a Vietnam veteran who served in the U.S. Army's 25th Infantry Division. This is a collection of transcripts from 33 oral interviews that provide the reader with the true essence and meaning of the Vietnam War. The interviews are presented in chronological order from 1962 to 1975. There is a glossary of terms and slang expressions of the period and biographical sketches of the individuals who were interviewed for the book. The language and dialogue is graphic. Despite the tone this work is well worth reading.

B. Combat Arms – United States

1. U.S. Air Force

Author's note: also see entries in Chapter V concerning the air war and air weapons.

1003. Berger, Carl, ed. *The United States Air Force in Southeast Asia, 1961–1973*. Office of Air Force History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1976. 381 pp.

A general account of U.S. Air Force participation in Southeast Asia, from 1961 to 1973, is examined in this work. There are some 600 illustrations and photographs plus a list of Air Force MOH winners.

1004. ——. and Mary Ann Cresswell. *United States Air Force History: An Annotated Bibliography*. Office of Air Force History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1971. 106 pp.

An annotated bibliography encompassing military aviation, this work includes the role of the U.S. Air Force in Vietnam and Southeast Asia. A useful source in locating Air Force related materials.

1005. Drendel, Lou. *TAC: A Pictorial History of the USAF Tactical Air Forces 1970–1977*. Carrollton, Texas: Squadron/Signal Publications, Aircraft Special Series, 1983. 64 pp.

This illustrated work explains the role that tactical air played in the Vietnam War and how that involvement thrust tactical air into the future.

1006. Eastman, James N., Jr., Walter Hank, and Lawrence J. Paszek. *Aces and Aerial Victories – The United States Air Force in Southeast Asia, 1965–1973*. Office of Air Force History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1976. 188 pp.

A collection of first-hand accounts of Air Force fighter crews who flew combat missions over North Vietnam, comprise this work. Included is an official list of credits cited by the USAF for the destruction of aircraft in Southeast Asia, a list of the units that participated, and descriptions of the weapons used by both sides. Illustrated, the work also contains maps.

1007. Faulbaum, Margaret C. *Air Weather Service in Southeast Asia 1961–1976: A Pictorial Account*. Scott Air Force Base, Illinois: Military Airlift Command, 1979. 156 pp.

The services rendered by the Air Weather Service (AWS) in Southeast Asia from 1961 to 1976, are covered in this work.

1008. Fox, Roger P. *Air Base Defense in the Republic of Vietnam*. Office of Air Force History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1979. 278 pp.

The problem of defending air bases, during the Vietnam War, and U.S. efforts to defend 10 bases in the Republic of Vietnam are examined in this study.

1009. Futrell, Robert F. *The United States Air Force in Southeast Asia: The Advisory Years to 1965*. Vol. 1. Office of Air Force History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1981. 398 pp.

This first volume in the U.S. Air Force's series on the Vietnam War describes involvement in Southeast Asia from the end of World War II until the major U.S. troop commitment in 1965. The principal role of the Air Force during this period, was to advise the Vietnamese Air Force. The work is illustrated.

1010. Hopkins, Charles K. *SAC Tanker Operations in the Southeast Asia War*. Office of the Historian, Headquarters, Strategic Air Command, 1979. 153 pp.

This illustrated account looks at the Strategic Air Command tanker/refueling operations in Southeast Asia. The names of SAC unit commanders in Southeast Asia, from 1964 to 1975, are found in the appendix.

1011. Lane, Lieutenant Colonel John L., Jr. *Command and Control and Communications Structures in Southeast Asia*. Maxwell Air Force Base, Alabama: Air University, 1981. 230 pp.

A study of the command, control, and communication structures, used in Southeast Asia, which influenced the USAF during the war, are examined in this study. Illustrations and maps are included.

1012. Mason, Herbert Molloy, Jr. *The United States Air Force: A Turbulent History*. New York: Mason/Charter, 1976. 287 pp.

The USAF experience in Vietnam is covered in the chapter "War Without End" in this concise history. The appendices contain useful information on air operations in Vietnam, aircraft losses, and USAF Medal of Honor recipients in Vietnam.

1013. Miller, Samuel Duncan. *An Aerospace Bibliography*. Office of Air Force History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1978. 341 pp.

A bibliography of published works and periodical literature pertinent to the USAF comprises this work. Comprehensive in scope, the work covers over 40 specific topics. The USAF in Vietnam is found on pp. 75–90. A bibliography of bibliographies is listed.

1014. Paszek, Lawrence J. *United States Air Force History: A Guide to Documentary Sources*. Office of Air Force History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973. 245 pp.

Various depositories for the Air Force are listed and described in this work. These include the National Archives Air Force materials, various university collections, miscellaneous depositories, and other sources related to Air Force history. Individual entries are described and indexed.

1015. Pletcher, Lieutenant General Kenneth E. USAF (Ret.). "Aero-medical Evacuation in Southeast Asia." *Air University Review* 19:3 (March–April 1968), pp. 16–29.

Removing combat casualties by way of aeromedical airlift is described in this illustrated article.

1016. Schneider, Major Donald K. *Air Force Heroes in Vietnam*. U.S. Air Force Southeast Asia Monograph Series, Vol. 7, Monograph 9. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1979. 86 pp.

The stories of 12 USAF officers and enlisted men, who were awarded the Congressional MOH for their actions in the Vietnam War, are told in this work. Maps and photographs are included.

1017. Tilford, Earl H., Jr. *Search and Rescue in Southeast Asia, 1961–1975*. Office of Air Force History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1980. 212 pp.

Air rescue efforts and the role of the USAF Air Rescue Service (ARS), during the Vietnam War, are examined in this work. The major error made by the Air Force, regarding air rescue, was in the late 1950s when they decided that there was no difference between peacetime and wartime rescue efforts of downed airmen. Consequently, the ARS found itself poorly equipped in the 1960s, when it was plunged into the war in Vietnam and Laos. This work describes the dramatic efforts of an organization whose motto is “That Others Might Live.” The book is illustrated.

1018. U.S. Air Force. *Mission Vietnam*. Seventh Air Force, Directorate of Information, nd. 64 pp.

This brief, illustrated soft-bound work examines the mission of the U.S. Seventh Air Force in Vietnam. Some of the illustrations are in color.

2. U.S. Army

1019. Allen, Lieutenant Colonel Alfred M. MC, USA. *Medical Department, United States Army, Internal Medicine in Vietnam. Volume I; Skin Diseases in Vietnam 1965–72*. Office of the Surgeon General and Center of Military History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1977. 185 pp.

This medical work examines skin diseases that affected U.S. Army troops in Vietnam. Special situations brought on by the tropical environment are stressed. Many color illustrations showing the effects of the diseases upon the men are included. Not for the general reader.

1020. Burns, First Lieutenant John C., ed. 1969: *Vietnam – The U.S. 25th Infantry Division*. 220 pp.

A profusely illustrated yearbook showing the activities of the 25th Infantry Division in Vietnam. A history of the 25th Infantry Division is included.

1021. Clark, Captain Michael H., ed. *Tropic Lighting Vietnam: 1 October 1967 to 1 October 1968*. Doraville, Georgia: Albert Love Enterprises, Incorporated, 1968. 208 pp.

A yearbook review of the 25th Infantry Division's tour of duty in Vietnam, in 1967-68. Information on operations "Yellowstone," "Camden," and others is included.

1022. Crawford, First Sergeant Marion C. (Ret.). "Vietnam: Another First for WACS." *Women's Army Corps Journal* 3:1 (January-March 1972), pp. 8-11.

A personal reminiscence of service with the WACS detachment, Headquarters, U.S. Army, Republic of Vietnam, is told in this article.

1023. Croix, Philip de Ste., ed. *Airborne Operations: An Illustrated Encyclopedia of the Great Battles of Airborne Forces*. New York: Crescent Books, Crown Publishers Incorporated, 1978. 224 pp.

This illustrated history studies paratroopers and airborne operations from the Second World War to 1977. A technical section on the evolution of parachutes, transports, and related information is included. Separate chapters cover the French in Indochina and the Americans in Vietnam.

1024. Department of the Army. *Military Operations: Lessons Learned: Vietnam Primer*. Department of the Army Pamphlet 525-2. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967. 55 pp.

Some of the lessons discussed include assault, security, communications, ruses, decoys, ambushes, defensive perimeter, and "The Strange Enemy." This pamphlet was prepared by Brigadier General S. L. A. Marshall, USA (Retired), and Lieutenant Colonel David Hackworth in 1966 while they were on a 90-day mission training combat historians in the technique of post-combat interviewing. Sketches and illustrations highlight the work.

1025. *A Distant Challenge: The US Infantryman in Vietnam, 1967-70*. Birmingham, Alabama: Birmingham Publishing Company for *Infantry Magazine* (U.S. Army Infantry School, Fort Benning, Georgia), 1971. 400 pp.

Prepared for the professional soldier, this is an excellent guide. The book covers the Vietnam War from 1967 to 1970, and examines each year in detail. It discusses how the war was conducted and the various changes in strategy. Several brief unit histories are found at the end of the work. Some illustrations and maps are included.

1026. Dorland, Peter, and James Nanney. *Dust Off: Army Aeromedical Evacuation in Vietnam*. U.S. Army Center of Military History. Washington, D.C. U.S. Government Printing Office, 1982. 134 pp.

Evacuation, or “Dust Off,” units in Vietnam are described in this history. The work traces the early history of military medical evacuation through the MASH helicopters of the Korean War to the Bell UH-1 helicopters in Vietnam, from 1965 to 1969. The work is based, in part, on official records as well as oral interviews with former “Dust Off” pilots and commanders.

1027. Dunn, Lieutenant General Carroll H. *Vietnam Studies: Base Development in South Vietnam, 1965–1972*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1972. 164 pp.

Tasks and problems confronting U.S. Army engineers as they served in various capacities in Vietnam are examined. These include constructing airfields, storage areas, ammunition dumps, ports, housing, bridges, roads, and other facilities. The work is illustrated.

1028. Eckhardt, Major General George S. *Vietnam Studies: Command and Control 1950–1969*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1974. 103 pp.

The U.S. military command and control structure in Vietnam is examined in this study. The author focuses on the Military Assistance Command, Vietnam (MACV) and the U.S. Army in Vietnam (USARV). Maps and photographs are included as well as a glossary and a list of military commanders in Vietnam.

1029. Engelman, Rose C., ed. *Medical Department: United States Army: A Decade of Progress: The United States Army Medical Department, 1959–1969*. Office of the Surgeon General and Center of Military History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1971. 214 pp.

The modernization of the Army Medical Department, and the problems encountered during the Vietnam War, are described in this illustrated work.

1030. Ewell, Lieutenant General Julian J., and Major General Ira A. Hunt, Jr. *Vietnam Studies: Sharpening the Combat Edge: The Use of Analysis to Reinforce Military Judgement*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1974. 248 pp.

The authors concentrate on the utilization of analysis in combat operations, of the various techniques employed, in this study. Based in part on personal experience, the work covers the systematic

blending of military judgment, the collection of data, and problem-solving techniques utilized within the Ninth Infantry Division and the Second Field Force, Vietnam, 1968 to 1970. Photographs and maps complete the work.

1031. *Faces of the Famous Fighting Fourth – Vietnam*. U.S. Army: Fourth Infantry Division, 1970. 24 pp.

The accomplishments of the Fourth Infantry “Ivy” Division, in Vietnam are recalled in this soft-bound work.

1032. *First Air Cavalry Division – Memoirs of the First Team – Vietnam: August 1965–December 1969*. Tokyo: Dai Nippon Printing Company, Limited, 1969. 296 pp.

A profusely illustrated history of the First Air Cavalry Division’s service in Vietnam is told in this work. A historic summary of the division, from 1921 to 1965 is provided and sections of the book cover all the units which comprised the division.

1033. *First Infantry Division in Vietnam July 1965–April 1967*. Vol. 1. Tokyo: Dai Nippon Company, Limited, 1967. 272 pp.

The U.S. Army’s First Infantry Division’s service in Vietnam 1965 to 1967, is recalled in this illustrated book.

1034. *First Infantry Division in Vietnam 1 May 1967–31 December 1968*. Vol. 2. nd. 300 pp.

The U.S. Army’s First Infantry Division’s service in Vietnam, from 1967 to 1968, is covered in this volume. This volume was dedicated to Major General Keith Ware who was killed in a helicopter crash in South Vietnam in September 1968. Many of the illustrations are in color.

1035. *The First Infantry Division in Vietnam – 1969*. Vol. 3. np, nd.

This volume reviews the activities of the First Infantry Division in Vietnam during 1969. The work is illustrated.

1036. Foster, Frank, Robert Barrett, and Norma Brandt. “Project Sigma, Detachment B-56, 5th Special Forces Group 1966–67.” *Military Collector and Historian* 30:3 (fall 1978), pp. 128–29.

The authors describe detachment B-56 of the U.S. Army Special Forces, comprised of personnel from the 3rd, 6th, and 7th Special Forces Groups and designated “Project Sigma.” Assigned to Vietnam from 1966 to 1970, the unit became one of several Long Range Reconnaissance Units.

1037. *Fourth Infantry Division*. U.S. Army: Fourth Infantry Division, 1967. np.

A yearbook of the Fourth Infantry "Ivy" Division in Vietnam during 1966. The book is illustrated, some in color.

1038. Gurney, Gene. *A Pictorial History of the United States Army: In War and Peace, from Colonial Times to Vietnam*. New York: Crown Publishers, 1977. 815 pp.

Prepared by a career officer of both the U.S. Army and Air Force, this is a profusely illustrated history of the Army. The Army's role in Vietnam is described in general terms. A separate, brief chapter on weapons is included as is a section, in color, on Army insignia and decorations.

1039. Hay, Lieutenant General John H., Jr. *Vietnam Studies: Tactical and Materiel Innovations*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1974. 197 pp.

The more important tactical and materiel innovations, from the perspective of the infantry division commander in Vietnam, are discussed. The work includes photographs and maps.

1040. Hoyt, Edwin P. *Airborne – The History of American Parachute Forces*. New York: Stein and Day, 1979. 220 pp.

Due to the way the Vietnam War was conducted the use of airborne troops and paratroops was rendered ineffective. Nevertheless, this work is a concise history of American airborne forces. The brief section on Vietnam focuses upon the switch from airborne troops to airmobile forces.

1041. Hymoff, Edward. *The First Air Cavalry Division, Vietnam*. New York: M. W. Lads Publishing Company, 1967. 153 pp.

The exploits of "The First Team" in the Republic of Vietnam are recalled in this work. The author examines the unit's activities from 1965 to 1966 and the campaigns in which they participated. The work is illustrated and includes lists of the division's award winners.

1042. Kelly, Colonel Francis J. *Vietnam Studies: U.S. Army Special Forces, 1961–1971*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973. 227 pp.

The development and progress of the U.S. Army Special Forces training program for South Vietnamese forces and paramilitary personnel, are examined in this study. Problems, successes, and failures of the program are described. The work is illustrated with photographs.

1043. Krepinevich, Andrew F., Jr. *The Army and Vietnam*. Baltimore, Maryland: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 1986. 318 pp.

The author was a Major in the U.S. Army and he writes this account from personal experience. He reviews the role of the U.S. Army in Vietnam, during the Advisory Years (1954–65), the Years of Intervention (1965–68), to the Years of Withdrawal (1968–73). He provides insight into the mindset of Army leaders during each of these periods. In his concluding chapter – “Paths Untaken, Paths Forsaken,” he writes that the Army should have learned that America’s enemies are not going to fight the traditional type of previously experienced warfare but to “exploit its (America’s) weak points.”

1044. McChristian, Major General Joseph A. *Vietnam Studies: The Role of Military Intelligence 1965–1967*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1974. 182 pp.

Written from first-hand experience, this is a study of the development and role of military intelligence in Vietnam. The author was General Westmoreland’s intelligence officer, from July 1965 to June 1967, and he focuses on three areas in this study: first, the challenge; second, development; and third, U.S.-ARVN combined intelligence activities. The remainder of the work is devoted to intelligence operations, counter-intelligence, and support. The work is illustrated.

1045. MacDonald, Charles B. “Official History and the War in Vietnam.” *Military Affairs* 32:1 (September 1968), pp. 2–11.

Mr. MacDonald describes how the U.S. Army intends to write its official history of the Vietnam War. He also examines how other branches of the military service intend to write their histories.

1046. Mertel, Colonel Kenneth D. *Year of the Horse – Vietnam*. New York: Exposition Press, 1968. 380 pp.

The First Battalion, Airborne, Eighth Cavalry of the First Air Cavalry Division – the “Jumping Mustangs,” activities and operations in the Central Highlands of Vietnam are detailed in this account. The story covers the period from activation in 1965, until the author – the commanding officer, completed his tour with the battalion in 1966.

1047. Morris, Jim. “Death-Dealing Project Delta.” *Soldier of Fortune*, 3 parts: (July 1981), pp. 26–31; (August 1981), pp. 20–25, 71; (September 1981), pp. 47–51.

In this three-part series the author details the activities of “Project Delta,” Special Forces Detachment B-52, of the Fifth Special Forces

Group. The time frame of the events described is around Tet 1968. The author describes the mission and the methods of how they accomplished their mission in this illustrated series. Morris is the author of *War Story* (Paladin Press, 1979).

1048. Myer, Major General Charles R. *Vietnam Studies: Division-Level Communications*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1980. 119 pp.

The primary focus of this study is on the level of the division signal battalion, as well as Army communications-electronics activities in Vietnam. The study includes material on command relations, procedures, organization, and problems. The work is illustrated with photographs and maps.

1049. Neel, Major General Spurgeon. *Vietnam Studies: Medical Support of the U.S. Army in Vietnam, 1965–1970*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973. 196 pp.

Significant medical problems encountered and decisions made with regard to Army medical support are reviewed in this study. Achievements and mistakes, and lessons learned are described in this illustrated work.

1050. Ognibene, Brigadier General Andre J., and Colonel O'Neill Barrett, Jr. *Medical Department: United States Army: Internal Medicine in Vietnam. Volume II. Infectious Diseases and Malaria*. Office of the Surgeon General and Center of Military History. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1980.

The major problems encountered by internists in Vietnam, with regard to the treatment of malaria, gastrointestinal diseases, renal diseases, and other infectious diseases such as plague are studied in this work. The work is illustrated.

1051. "101st (One Hundred First) Airlifted to Vietnam." *Army Digest* 23:3 (March 1968), pp. 1–15.

This illustrated article describes the deployment of the two remaining brigades of the 101st Airborne Division, from Fort Campbell, Kentucky, to join the division's First Brigade at Bien Hoa, Republic of Vietnam.

1052. Ott, Major General David Ewing. *Vietnam Studies: Field Artillery, 1954–1973*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1975. 253 pp.

Some of the more important activities of the U.S. Army's Field Artillery in Vietnam are explored in this illustrated work.

1053. Passarella, Private First Class Sal. "Vietnam-Bound Nurse." *Army Digest* 23:2 (February 1968), pp. 27-28.
- The indoctrination and training program of Army Nurse Lieutenant Marie Kozma is the focus of this article. From Fort Gordon, Georgia, to her tour of duty in the Republic of Vietnam, her story is recalled in this illustrated article.
1054. Ploger, Major General Robert E. *Vietnam Studies: Army Engineers, 1965-1970*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1974. 240 pp.
- A study of the U.S. Army Engineers' activities in, and contributions to, the Vietnam War from 1965 to 1970. Photographs illustrate this work.
1055. *Procurement Support in Vietnam 1966-1968*. Japan: Tosho Printing Company, Limited, 1968. 200 pp.
- "First with the Most" is the motto of the U.S. Army Procurement Agency. This illustrated history describes the efforts of that agency in Vietnam, from 1966 to 1968. Information on the history, organization, and various functions of the agency are contained in the work.
1056. Prugh, Major General George S. *Vietnam Studies: Law at War Vietnam 1964-1973*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1975. 161 pp.
- U.S. military legal services, the Vietnamese legal system, the Judge Advocate advisory role, POWs and war crimes, claims, status of forces, discipline, and criminal law as applied to American soldiers in Vietnam are among the topics described in this study. The appendices contain information including a list of the JAG judges in Vietnam, a Geneva Conventions checklist, "The Enemy in Your Hands" (instructions for handling prisoners), and legal services in Vietnam. The work is illustrated.
1057. Richard, Staff Sergeant Duke. "MPs in Vietnam – The New Image." *Army Digest* 23:2 (February 1968), pp. 8-11.
- The author discusses the image of the Military Police, in Vietnam, in this brief article. The many duties of an MP are covered, the article contains color illustrations, and one page is devoted to the crests of the various MP units around the world.
1058. Rienzi, Major General Thomas N. *Vietnam Studies: Communications-Electronics, 1962-1970*. Department of the Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1972. 184 pp.

Some of the Army's most important experiences, problems, and accomplishments in its communications-electronics work in Vietnam during the years from 1962 to 1970, are examined in this illustrated study.

1059. Rottman, First Lieutenant Larry, ed. *The 25th Infantry Division "Tropic Lightning" in Vietnam 1 October 1966 to 1 October 1967*. Doraville, Georgia: Albert Love Enterprises, Incorporated, 1967. np.
- A yearbook of the division's activities in the Republic of Vietnam from 1966 to 1967. Illustrated, many in color, the book covers operations "Attleboro," "Cedar Falls," "Gadsden," "Junction City," "Manhattan," and others.
1060. Simpson, Charles M. *Inside the Green Berets: The First Thirty Years*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1983. 231 pp.
- The U.S. Army Special Forces are studied in detail in this work. The role of peacetime Special Forces, guerrilla and counterinsurgency operations, the duties of the Special Forces in relation to the Army, and missions are among the topics examined. However, the primary focus of the book concerns Special Forces operations in Vietnam and Southeast Asia. The author spent nine years in the Special Forces and is a Vietnam veteran. Illustrations and maps are included and the work, in part, is based on the unpublished memoirs of Colonel Robert B. Rheault.
1061. Sochurek, Howard. "American Special Forces in Action in Viet Nam." *National Geographic* 127:1 (January 1965), pp. 38-65.
- The efforts of the U.S. Army Special Forces assigned to the Central Highlands of South Vietnam are focused on in this early, illustrated article. Information on the Montagnards is included.
1062. Stanton, Shelby L. Captain, USA (Ret.). *Vietnam Order of Battle*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. News Books, 1981. 396 pp.
- A definitive reference of U.S. Army and Allied ground forces in the Vietnam War. The book lists every U.S. Army unit that served in Vietnam from 1961 to 1973. Included are designations, type, insignia, arrival and departure dates, previous duty station, location, and strength of the unit. Many color illustrations of distinctive insignia, patches, badges, and drawings of unit insignia. Valuable maps plus a 50-page section of photographs showing aircraft, helicopters, artillery, armored vehicles, and weapons used are included. This is an invaluable reference work.
1063. Taylor, Major General Leonard B. *Vietnam Studies: Financial Management of the Vietnam Conflict, 1962-1972*. Department of the

Army. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1974. 109 pp.

Some of the major steps taken in budgeting for the Vietnam War are examined in this study.

1064. *Vietnam the First Year: A Pictorial History of the 2nd Brigade 1st Infantry Division*. Tokyo: Dai Nippon Printing Company, Limited, 1966. np.

This illustrated yearbook reviews the service of the Second Brigade, First Infantry Division in South Vietnam from July 1965 to July 1966. Some of the illustrations are in color. A map of the brigade's operations is included.

1065. Walthall, Melvin C. *Lightning Forward: A History of the 25th Infantry Division (Tropic Lightning) 1941-1978*. 25th Infantry Division Association, 1978. 214 pp.

Walthall has managed to summarize the 25th Infantry Division's contributions to the Vietnam War in eight pages in this unit history (150-58). The appendix contains personal accounts of individual soldiers of the division – some from Vietnam.

1066. Weed II, A. C. "Army Special Forces and Vietnam." *Military Review* 49:8 (August 1969), pp. 63-68.

The author examines the current (1969) mission of the Special Forces in Vietnam. He suggests that Special Forces, and Civilian Irregular Defense Groups (CIDGs), could be more effective if their method of employment was changed. The author spent four years in the Special Forces and served in Vietnam.

1067. Weigley, Russell F. *History of the United States Army*. 4th ed. The Wars of the United States Series, Louis Morton, general ed. New York: Macmillan Publishing Company, Incorporated, 1974. 688 pp.

The Army as an institution is the focus of this work. The Army in the Vietnam War is found in the chapter "The Army of the 1960's." The work is illustrated.

3. U.S. Coast Guard

1068. Bandell, Kurt L. "The US Coast Guard: Forgotten Warriors of Vietnam." 3 parts. *National Vietnam Veterans Review* 3:3/4 (March–April 1983), pp. 32-33; 3:5/6 (May–June 1983); 3:7 (July 1983), pp. 14-15.

The author examines the role of the U.S. Coast Guard, in Vietnam, in this three-part article. He describes the activities of Coast Guard Squadrons One and Three and the operations in which they participated such as “Market Time.” The article is illustrated.

1069. Kaplan, H. R. *Coast Guard in Vietnam*. Washington, D.C.: Public Information Division, U.S. Coast Guard, 1967. 8 pp.

A very brief illustrated work summarizing Coast Guard activities in Vietnam.

1070. ——. “Coast Guard Played Vital Role in Viet War.” *Navy: The Magazine of Sea Power* 13:11 (November 1970), pp. 31–34.

A summary of the USCG’s five years of service in Southeast Asia and the Vietnam War is described in this brief article.

1071. Larzelere, Alex. *The Coast Guard at War: Vietnam, 1965–1975*. Annapolis, Maryland: Naval Institute Press, 1997. 345 pp.

On coastal patrols and on inland waterways, this work describes the role that the U.S. Coast Guard played in the Vietnam War. Among the duties the Coast Guard performed included searching for pilots who had been shot down, searching boats such as junks and fishing trawlers, and providing naval gunfire support. The author is a retired USCG captain who served in Vietnam. He writes from his own personal experience as well as 75 Coast Guardsmen who served there as well. The work is illustrated.

1072. Moreau, Rear Admiral James W. USCG. “The Coast Guard in the Central and Western Pacific.” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings Naval Review* Issue 98:843 (May 1973), pp. 270–95.

Admiral Moreau discusses the U.S. Coast Guard’s participation in the Vietnam War. Specifically, he examines topics such as the Coast Guard’s role in Operation “Market Time,” the command structure, and Coast Guard aviators who were assigned to the U.S. Air Force’s 37th Aerospace Rescue and Recovery Squadron.

1073. Scotti, Paul C. *Coast Guard Action in Vietnam: Stories of Those Who Served*. Central Point, Oregon: Hellgate Press, a division of PSI Research, 2000. 231 pp.

A little known fact of the Vietnam War is that over 8,000 U.S. Coast Guardsmen served there. Scotti, who served aboard a USCG patrol boat in Vietnam, tells their story in this illustrated work. From 1965 until 1975 the USCG Squadrons One and Three participated in missions against the enemy along the coast and inland waterways of Vietnam.

1074. Tulich, Lieutenant Eugene N. USCG. *The United States Coast Guard in Southeast Asia During the Vietnam Conflict*. Washington, D.C.: Public Affairs Division, United States Coast Guard, 1975. 65 pp.

A brief monograph about the USCG in Southeast Asia. The author has included an annotated bibliography and listings of patrol boat and cutter assignments, statistics, and major engagements involving Coast Guard units. A glossary is included.

4. U.S. Marine Corps

1075. Bartlett, Tom, ed. *Ambassadors in Green*. Washington, D.C.: Leatherneck Association, Incorporated, 1971. 160 pp.

A pictorial account of the USMC in the Republic of Vietnam from 1965 to 1969 is provided in this work. A list of the major Marine Corps operations during this period is included as are maps.

1076. Bendell, Lieutenant Colonel Lee R. USMC. "Marine Patrol." *Marine Corps Gazette* 52:11 (November 1968), pp. 99-102.

Types of patrols utilized by the Marines are discussed in this article.

1077. Chapman, General Leonard F., Jr. USMC. "State of the Corps." *Marine Corps Gazette* 53:5 (May 1969), pp. 28-33.

Commandant of the Marine Corps, General Chapman summarizes the accomplishments of the Marines in the Republic of Vietnam during 1968 in this article.

1078. Greene, General Wallace M., Jr. USMC. "The Marines in Vietnam." *Ordnance* 52:283 (July-August 1967), pp. 38-42.

In this illustrated article General Greene, Jr. summarizes the Marines' first year in the Republic of Vietnam.

1079. Hennessy, Major Michael A. USMC. *Strategy in Vietnam: The Marines and Revolutionary Warfare in I Corps, 1965-1972*. Westport, Connecticut: Praeger Publishers, 1997. 210 pp.

Beginning with the Marines' landing at Da Nang, South Vietnam in 1965, this work examines the fighting by Marine elements in I Corps. The author concludes that, following Tet, the U.S. realized that it had "chosen to support a bad ally." This was due, in part, to the government of South Vietnam which was weak, often ineffective, and corrupt. A quote from Cicero concludes the work: "An Army abroad is of little use unless there are prudent counsels at home."

1080. Hymoff, Edward. *First Marine Division, Vietnam*. New York: M. W. Lads Publishing Company, 1967. 130 pp.

The First Marine Division, in Vietnam to 1967, has its story recalled in this illustrated work. Color photographs are included along with a list of the division's combat award recipients.

1081. Lippard, Karl C. *The Warriors: The United States Marines*. Lancaster, Texas: Vietnam Marine Publications, 1983. 239 pp.

From Camp Pendleton, California, to Okinawa, and to Vietnam and back, this work describes what it was like to be a Marine during the Vietnam War years. Profusely illustrated, the book also contains an alphabetical listing of all of the Marines killed in action in Vietnam – over 12,000 names.

1082. McCutcheon, Lieutenant General Keith B. USMC. "Marine Aviation in Vietnam, 1962–70." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings Naval Review Issue* (May 1971), pp. 122–55.

An illustrated summary of Marine Corps aviation from 1962 to 1970, and the role it played in the Republic of Vietnam is recalled in this article.

1083. Moskin, J. Robert. *The U.S. Marine Corps Story*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1977. 1,039 pp.

This single-volume history of the U.S. Marine Corps focuses on the engagements in which Marines have participated. Vietnam is covered from 1954 to 1975. The author has included black and white photographs, maps, and a list of the Marine Corps' MOH winners.

1084. Parker, Lieutenant Colonel Gary W. USMC. *A History of Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 161*. History and Museums Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1978. 47 pp.

This brief monograph traces the history of Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 161 – one of the oldest helicopter squadrons in the Marine Corps. Organized in January 1951, the work covers the origin of the squadron, through the Korean War, to Vietnam. Squadron 161 was in Vietnam from 1965 to 1970.

1085. Parker, Captain William D. USMCR. *A Concise History of the United States Marine Corps 1775–1969*. Historical Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1970. 143 pp.

The role of the Marines in Vietnam is covered in the last chapter of this concise Marine Corps history. It discusses the landing, buildup, Operation Starlite, Tet 1968, and the beginning of the troop withdrawals in 1969. Maps and photographs illustrate the work.

1086. Platt, Major General Jonas M. USMC. "Military Civic Action." *Naval War College Review* 22:8 (April 1970), pp. 29-36.

The Military Civic Action program conducted by the Marines in Vietnam, is described in this article. The five ingredients considered necessary for an effective civic action program are meeting the people's needs and getting them involved, involving local government officials, coordinating U.S.-Vietnamese agencies, commanding attention at all levels, and respecting people as individuals.

1087. Shulimson, Jack. *U.S. Marines in Vietnam: An Expanding War 1966*. Vol. 3. History and Museums Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1982. 390 pp.

The third volume in the Marine Corps "Vietnam Operational Histories Series," this volume reviews events in South Vietnam during 1966. Marine Corps operations during this period are examined. Many photographs and maps are included.

1088. —. and Major Charles M. Johnson. USMC. *U.S. Marines in Vietnam: The Landing and the Buildup 1965*. Vol. 2. History and Museums Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1978. 261 pp.

The second volume of the official Marine Corps history of the Vietnam War covers events surrounding Marine Corps activities in 1965 – the year the war escalated and major American combat units were committed. The authors trace the landing of the Ninth Marine Expeditionary Brigade, and its transformation into the Third Marine Amphibious Force (MAF). Many official Marine Corps photographs illustrate the work.

1089. Simmons, Brigadier General Edwin H. USMC. "Marine Corps Operations in Vietnam, 1968." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings Naval Review* Issue 96:5 (May 1970), pp. 290-320.

General Simmons reviews the military situation in South Vietnam, prior to and following Tet. He describes the fighting at Khe Sanh, Hue, and the Tet Offensive in general. Maps of operations are included. This represents a complete assessment of the military situation confronting the Marines in 1968.

1090. ——. (Ret.). "Marine Corps Operations in Vietnam, 1969–72." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings Naval Review Issue* (May 1973), pp. 196–223.
- Beginning with a summary of Operation "Taylor Common," in 1969, and ending with the Communist Easter Offensive of 1972, this article reviews Marine Corps operations in South Vietnam during that period. The article is illustrated and includes maps.
1091. ——. *The Illustrated History of Marines: The Vietnam War*. New York: Bantam Books, 1987. 158 pp.
- A concise, illustrated history of the U.S. Marine Corps in the Vietnam War, in which General Simmons takes you from the Da Nang landing (1965), through the Easter Offensive (1972), to the withdrawal from Saigon (Operation "Frequent Wind," 1975). The work offers a glimpse of how the war was fought from the Marine perspective. No conclusions are drawn.
1092. ——. *The United States Marines 1775–1975*. New York: The Viking Press, 1976. 273 pp.
- General Simmons has written a compact history of the Marine Corps in which he covers Marine activities in Chapters 16 and 17 (pp 198–232). Written for the general reader.
1093. ——. "Vietnam Histories: Where We Are." *Fortitudine* 12:4 (spring 1983), pp. 3–7.
- General Simmons, the Director of the Marine Corps History and Museums Division, describes the status of the *U.S. Marine Corps in Vietnam* series and forthcoming volumes in the series.
1094. Stolfi, Captain Russel H. *U.S. Marine Corps Civic Action Effort in Vietnam, March 1965–March 1966*. Washington, D.C.: Marine Corps Historical Center, 1968. 96 pp.
- The author examines the first year of the Third Marine Amphibious Force Civic Action Program in South Vietnam.
1095. U.S. Marine Corps. *The Marines in Vietnam 1954–1973: An Anthology and Annotated Bibliography*. History and Museums Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1974. 277 pp.
- An anthology of 13 articles compiled from the pages of the *United States Naval Institute Proceedings*, *Naval Review*, and the *Marine Corps Gazette* providing a general overview of Marine Corps involvement in the Vietnam War. This bibliography is a good basic source of information concerning the Marines.

5. U.S. Merchant Marine

Author's note: while not a branch of the military *per se*, the U.S. Merchant Marine served on the ships that brought the supplies and equipment to Vietnam. They also brought many of the troops in, and many of the dead home. At wars end the Merchant Marine assisted in the evacuation of refugees from the Republic of Vietnam. Upon the flag of the Merchant Marine the motto "In Peace and War" is found. There were approximately 55 unsung mariners who gave their lives in service in Vietnam.

1096. Butler, John A. *Sailing on Friday: The Perilous Voyage of America's Merchant Marine*. Washington, D.C.: Brassey's, 1997. 287 pp.

Mr. Butler has written a complete history of America's Merchant Marine – from its earliest beginnings to 1996. The role the Merchant Marine played in the Vietnam War is described in Chapter 15, "Reaching for Leadership: 1945–70." The author is a former naval officer who has made a significant contribution to the scholarship of the Vietnam War with this work covering an aspect usually overlooked by all. The work is illustrated.

6. U.S. Navy

1097. Browne, Lieutenant David L. USN. "Dust and Mud and the Viet Cong." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 96:9/811 (September 1970), pp. 52–57.

Despite the usual problems associated with construction projects sponsored by the U.S. Navy in South Vietnam, attacks by the Viet Cong failed to halt them. This article describes some of those projects which were subjected to Viet Cong attacks. The article is illustrated.

1098. Collins, Commander Frank C., Jr. USN. "Maritime Support of the Campaign in I Corps." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings Naval Review Issue* (May 1971), pp. 156–79.

The history of the Naval Support Activity located at Da Nang, South Vietnam, is described in this illustrated article.

1099. Department of the Navy. *United States Naval History: A Bibliography*. 6th ed. Naval History Division. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1972. 92 pp.

The role of the U.S. Navy in Southeast Asia, is summarized on pp. 38–40. The Marine Corps, in Vietnam, is cited on p. 70. This work also contains entries on ships, aircraft, armament, strategy and tactics, uniforms and insignia, biographies, and other subjects.

1100. Hooper, Vice Admiral Edwin Bickford, Dean C. Allard, and Oscar P. Fitzgerald. *The United States Navy and the Vietnam Conflict: The Setting of the Stage to 1959*. Vol. 1. Department of the Navy, Naval History Division. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1976. 419 pp.

The first volume of the U.S. Navy's official history of the Vietnam conflict, this work serves a dual purpose. First, it portrays the historical setting and background up to 1959 and, second, it describes Vietnam-related actions of the U.S. Navy during the first five years following the French defeat in 1954. The work is illustrated and contains maps and a bibliography.

1101. McClendon, Commander F. O., Jr. Medical Service Corps, USN. "Doctors and Dentists, Nurses and Corpsmen in Vietnam." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings Naval Review Issue* 96:5 (May 1970), pp. 276-89.

The activities of the USN Medical Service Corps in Vietnam are summarized in this illustrated article. The author also discusses the work of the hospital ships *Repose* and *Sanctuary*. Other topics discussed include medical support for the Marines, the provincial health assistance program, the Civic Action Program, and other work.

1102. Marolda, Edward J., and G. Wesley Pryce III. *A Select Bibliography of the United States Navy and the Southeast Asian Conflict 1950-1975*. Rev. ed. Washington, D.C.: Operational Archives, Naval Historical Center, 1983. 59 pp.

This select bibliography covers 19 categories including air, riverine, special operations, coastal patrols, amphibious warfare, the Gulf of Tonkin incident, and other subjects.

1103. Merdinger, Captain Charles J. Civil Engineer Corps, USN. "Civil Engineers, Seabees, and Bases in Vietnam." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings Naval Review Issue* 96:5 (May 1970), pp. 254-75.

Seabee construction activities in South Vietnam are reviewed in this illustrated article. The author points out the various problems encountered by the Americans before 1965 – before the arrival of the Seabees.

1104. Middleton, Commander W. D. USN. "Seabees in Vietnam." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 93:8 (August 1967), pp. 54-64.

Seabee operations conducted in South Vietnam from 1965 to 1967, are reviewed in this photo-essay. Their record of construction

achievements is rivaled only by their accomplishments in civic action programs such as erecting schools, improving water supplies, building roads, and other projects. Many excellent photographs illustrate this article.

1105. Miller, Captain William O. USN. "Belligerency and Limited War." *Naval War College Review* 21:5 (January 1969), pp. 19-27.

Originally delivered as a lecture at the Naval War College, in this paper Captain Miller compares several current (1968) issues in Vietnam with historical antecedents. He discusses a naval blockade as an effective measure in a limited war.

1106. Moeser, Robert D. *U.S. Navy: Vietnam*. Annapolis, Maryland: U.S. Naval Institute, 1969. 248 pp.

This work is an excellent photographic record of the USN in Vietnam. It contains photographs of carrier operations, naval gunfire, hospital ships, amphibious operations, riverine operations, and other related subjects. Brief descriptions and captions accompany each photograph.

1107. ——. Chief Journalist, USN. "USS *Repose* (AH-16)." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 94:4 (April 1968), pp. 80-94.

The activities aboard a USN hospital ship, the U.S.S. *Repose*, are recorded in this photo-essay.

1108. Oliver, Captain Edward F., USCG, and Chief Journalist Byron S. Whitehead, Jr. USN. "A Chain of Ships." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 95:11 (November 1969), pp. 92-107.

The operations of the Military Sea Transportation Service (MSTS) in South Vietnam, are reviewed in this photo-essay. The MSTS moved approximately 97 percent of the U.S. war materiel in South Vietnam.

1109. Olsen, Lieutenant Commander A. N. Civil Engineer Corps, USN. "Teaming Up to Build a Nation." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 95:10 (October 1969), pp. 34-43.

How 13-man Seabee teams were utilized in the Republic of Vietnam, is recalled in this article. The teams acted under joint military-civilian control. The article is illustrated and contains a list of the men and equipment that made up a team.

1110. Sheehan, Neil. *The Arnheiter Affair*. New York: Random House, 1971. 279 pp.

Captain Marcus A. Arnheiter commanded the destroyer U.S.S. *Vance*, off the coast of Vietnam for 99 days, before being relieved of

his command for “irregular practices” and “detrimental” policies. This is a compelling story of his attempt to exonerate himself of the charges. The author is the noted journalist who obtained the Pentagon Papers for the *New York Times*.

1111. Tregaskis, Richard. *Southeast Asia: Building the Bases, The History of Construction in Southeast Asia*. Department of the Navy. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1975. 466 pp.

This work examines U.S. naval construction in Southeast Asia.

C. Allied Arms

Author's note: In addition to the United States, which had more than 500,000 troops in the Republic of Vietnam at the height of the war, other nations contributed combat forces to South Vietnam. Obviously, the Republic of Vietnam committed the most. Other combat troops came from Australia, New Zealand, the Philippines, the Republic of Korea, and Thailand. Spain and Taiwan, along with 34 other nations, provided for non-combat support. Although Canada did not send troops many Canadians enlisted in the U.S. Army and fought in Vietnam. This section of this chapter provides a listing of the scholarship relevant to this part of the war effort.

1. Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam)

1112. Brigham, Robert K. *ARVN: Life and Death in the South Vietnamese Army*. Lawrence, Kansas: University Press of Kansas, 2006. 178 pp.

A first, in-depth look at the daily life of the average South Vietnamese soldier in the Army of the Republic of Vietnam (ARVN). In five chapters the author looks at conscription, training, morale, battles, and their families. For the much maligned ARVN soldier this work provides a different view. Illustrated.

1113. Brown, F. C. “Kit Carson Scouts in the Vietnam Conflict.” *Military Collector and Historian* 30:3 (fall 1978), pp. 109–12.

The “Kit Carson Scouts” were former Viet Cong guerrillas who defected to the South Vietnamese under the *Chieu Hoi* (Open Arms) program. The scouts were first used by the Marines in late 1966. The Army first used them in 1967. There are several pictures of the scouts, their emblem, and insignia.

1114. Cao Van Vien, General. *Leadership*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1981. 201 pp.

This monograph analyzes leadership successes and failures within the South Vietnamese military.

1115. Croizat, Colonel Victor J. USMC (Ret.). "Vietnamese Naval Forces: Origin of the Species." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 99:2/840 (February 1973), pp. 48–58.

This illustrated article summarizes the United States responsibility for organizing, equipping, and training the South Vietnamese naval forces from mid-1955.

1116. Dong Van Khuyen, Lieutenant General. *The RVNAF*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1980. 410 pp.

This monograph is an analysis of the Republic of Vietnam's Armed Forces (RVNAF). The author looks at personnel, training, support, and motivation. The author was a former South Vietnamese officer.

1117. —. *RVNAF Logistics*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1980. 460 pp.

This monograph examines the various aspects of logistics as seen by the Vietnamese through the post-cease-fire period.

1118. Hoang Ngoc Lung, Colonel. *Intelligence*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1982. 243 pp.

A former South Vietnamese officer examines South Vietnamese intelligence organizations, and their successes and failures, in this monograph. Communist intelligence is also examined. The work covers the period from 1965 to 1975.

1119. Kane, Lieutenant Colonel Douglas T. USMC. "Vietnamese Marines in Joint Operations." *Military Review* 48:11 (November 1968), pp. 26–33.

This illustrated article portrays how the Vietnamese Marine Corps, 15 years after its inception, has benefited from participation in joint operations with U.S. forces.

1120. Lavalle, Major A. J. C., ed. *The Vietnamese Air Force, 1951–1975: An Analysis of its Role in Combat and Fourteen Hours at Koh Tang*. U.S. Air Force Southeast Asia Monograph Series, Vol. 3, Monographs 4–5. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1977. 161 pp.

The first monograph in this volume examines the Vietnamese Air Force (VNAF) from 1951 to 1975. The author concludes that the VNAF was good in operations over South Vietnam but became

fragmented in the air war over North Vietnam. The second monograph deals with the 14-hour rescue attempt for the ship and crew of the SS *Mayaguez*, captured by Cambodian forces on May 12, 1975, which was conducted at Koh Tang Island on December 29, 1975. The work is illustrated with photographs and maps.

1121. Miller, Major General E. J., USMC, and Rear Admiral W. D. Toole, Jr., USN. "Amphibious Forces: The Turning Point." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 100:11/861 (November 1974), pp. 26-32.

The amphibious landing of South Vietnamese Marines at Quang Tri City in April 1972, helped to stem the tide of the Communist Easter Offensive. This article also examines the support provided by U.S. naval forces.

1122. Ngo Quang Truong, Lieutenant General. *RVNAF and US Operational Cooperation and Coordination*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1980. 188 pp.

Operational cooperation and coordination between U.S. and Republic of Vietnam Armed Forces (RVNAF) is the focus of this monograph. The author looks at the Joint General Staff (JGS) and Military Assistance Command, Vietnam (MACV), the Army of the Republic of Vietnam (ARVN) Corps and U.S. Field Forces, RVNAF-US Joint Combat Operations, and other subjects. The monograph is illustrated.

1123. ——. *Territorial Forces*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1981. 154 pp.

This monograph evaluates South Vietnamese efforts at counter-insurgency, through the employment of various military and paramilitary units – especially territorial forces. The work includes photographs, maps, a glossary, and an explanation of territorial and paramilitary forces insignia.

1124. Nguyen Duy Hinh, Major General. *Lam Son 719*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Army Center of Military History, Indochina Monograph, 1979. 179 pp.

The South Vietnamese incursion into Laos – Operation Lam Son 719, in February 1971, is recalled in this monograph. Lam Son 719 was a combined operation of U.S.-RVNAF forces which operated with restrictions. No American troops were permitted in Laos and no joint command for control of operations was established. The work is illustrated.

1125. Weller, Jac. "RVNAF Training: The Vital Element in Vietnamization." *Military Review* 52:10 (October 1972), pp. 35-49.

For the policy of Vietnamization to succeed, the RVNAF must be well-trained in order to survive on its own without U.S. support. Weller looks at the RVNAF training program to prepare for this role.

2. Australia

1126. Battle, Captain M. R. *The Year of the Tigers*. Australia: Printcraft Press, 1970. 208 pp.

This is a unit history of the Fifth Battalion, Royal Australian Regiment, in the Republic of Vietnam from 1969 to 1970. The book is illustrated and includes maps.

1127. Coe, John J., ed. *Desperate Praise: The Australians in Vietnam*. Perth, Australia: Artlook Books, 1982. 137 pp.

In this work the editor looks at those Australians who fought in the Vietnam War. It is a collection of stories, memoirs, and diaries. The editor has included stories of both Australian regulars and National Servicemen who served. Coe is a Vietnam veteran who served as a sapper in the Australian First Field Squadron.

1128. Dwyer, John B. "Aussies in Vietnam." *National Vietnam Veterans Review* 2:3 (April 1982), p. 34.

A one-page summary of Australian military operations in the Republic of Vietnam. Dwyer describes, briefly, Australian operations in Phuoc Tuy Province.

1129. —. "The Australian Special Air Service (SAS) in Vietnam." *National Vietnam Veterans Review* 2:5 (June 1982), p. 10.

The Australian Special Air Service (SAS), whose motto is "Who Dares Wins," is described in this brief article which includes SAS service in Vietnam.

1130. —. "The Valiant Team: The Australian Army Training Team, Vietnam." *National Vietnam Veterans Review* 3:1-2 (January-February 1983), pp. 12-13.

The author describes the activities of the Australian Army Training Team, Vietnam, in this brief article. Several operations in which the AATTV were involved are described and some illustrations are included.

1131. Fairfax, Denis. *Navy in Vietnam: A Record of the Royal Australian Navy in the Vietnam War 1965-1972*. Department of Defence.

Canberra, Australia: Australian Government Publishing Service, 1980. 232 pp.

As the title states this work describes the activities of the Royal Australian Navy (RAN), in the Vietnam War from 1965 to 1972. The work is illustrated.

1132. Frankum, Ronald B. *The United States and Australia in Vietnam, 1954–1968: Silent Partners*. Lewiston, New York: The Edwin Mellen Press, Studies in American History, 2001. 356 pp.

The author has undertaken a study of the joint relations between the United States and Australia regarding the latter's involvement in the Vietnam War. He offers insight into the administrations of presidents Kennedy and Johnson and their relationships with the Australian government. Australian foreign and defense policy is described, as are the goals each nation had with regards to their commitment to the war in Vietnam.

1133. King, Peter, ed. *Australia's Vietnam: Australia in the Second Indo-China War*. Sydney, Australia: Allen and Unwin, 1983. 226 pp.

Australia's involvement in the Vietnam War was partly due to a fear of Communist China's attempt to spread its influence across Southeast Asia. For Australia the conflict in Vietnam was known as the Second Indo-China War. King offers insight into Australia's Prime minister Robert Menzies, his policies, and the war.

1134. Stuart, Major R. F., ed. *3 RAR in South Vietnam 1967–1968*. Australia: Printcraft Press, 1968. 104 pp.

This unit history describes the activities of the Third Battalion, Royal Australian Regiment (RAR), in the Republic of Vietnam during 1967–68. The work is illustrated and contains a chronology of events and a list of the unit's personnel.

1135. Williams, Captain Iain McLean. *Vietnam: A Pictorial History of the Sixth Battalion the Royal Australian Regiment*. Australia: Printcraft Press, 1967. 136 pp.

This illustrated unit history portrays the service of the Sixth Battalion, Royal Australian Regiment (RAR) in the Republic of Vietnam.

3. New Zealand

1136. *Brief History of the New Zealand Army in South Vietnam 1964–1972*. Wellington, New Zealand: Army Public Relations, Defence Headquarters, 1973. 15 pp.

New Zealand's first contribution to the war, in the Republic of Vietnam, was made in June 1964. This very short work describes New Zealand's participation in the war to 1972. It provides a list of New Zealand forces deployed in South Vietnam, the dates of their service, plus a list of New Zealand abbreviations.

1137. Gleeson, Shenagh. *New Zealand's Involvement in Vietnam: A Bibliographical List of Books Held in General Assembly Library*. Wellington, New Zealand: New Zealand Library Association, 1972. 6 pp.

A brief, annotated list of works pertinent to New Zealand's participation in the Vietnam War.

1138. Lyles, Kevin. *Vietnam ANZACS: Australian and New Zealand Troops in Vietnam 1962–72*. Oxford, Great Britain: Osprey Publishing, Elite Series Number 103, 2004. 64 pp.

The author, who is also the illustrator of this excellent work, details the uniforms and equipment used by the Australian ("Diggers") and New Zealand ("Kiwis") forces in the Vietnam War. ANZAC is an acronym for "Australian and New Zealand Corps" – a term first used in the First World War. Lyles devotes much attention to the Australian Army Training Team, Vietnam (AATT) which spent 10 years in Vietnam. Although this is not a comprehensive history of the ANZAC, it does include a chronology and an order of battle from 1962 to 1972.

1139. Rabel, Roberto. *New Zealand and the Vietnam War: Politics and Diplomacy*. Auckland, New Zealand: Auckland University Press, 2005. 443 pp.

In this work the author contends that New Zealand had accepted the belief that Communism did, in fact, pose a threat to the peace and stability of Southeast Asia for which New Zealand adopted the policy of "forward defense" against it. In this work the author's focus is upon the diplomatic and political impact of the war, and the involvement of New Zealand, as well as the social implications. The author does not describe the role of New Zealand's military forces that were sent to Vietnam. The work begins with the First Indochina War, in the 1950s, and describes how New Zealand's government became involved.

4. Republic of Korea (South Korea)

1140. Armstrong, Charles K. *America's Korea, Korea's Vietnam*. New York: Routledge, "Critical Asia Studies," Vol. 33, Number 4, 2001. 152 pp.

Between 1965 and 1973 the Republic of Korea (ROK) sent over 300,000 combat troops to South Vietnam. In this work the author details the impact of the Vietnam War upon South Korea. A little publicized fact is that ROK forces committed atrocities against Vietnamese civilians. Even though the ROK fought in the war in Vietnam for eight years, their story, until recently, has not been told. This work is a welcome addition to the scholarship on this subject.

1141. Rasmussen, Major Ronald R. USA. "ROK Operations in Central Vietnam." *Military Review* 48:1 (January 1968), pp. 51–55.

The performance of the two ROK Army divisions, deployed in South Vietnam, are assessed in this article. In examining some of the operations in which they participated the author observes that the ROK soldiers were well adapted to fighting the war.

1142. *Three Years in Vietnam*. Republic of Korea Forces in Vietnam, nd. 101 pp.

The ROK Army, in Vietnam, is portrayed in this photo-essay on their service from 1965 to 1968.

1143. *Unit History*. Headquarters, Republic of Korea Forces Vietnam (September 25, 1968). 5 pp.

The services of ROK forces in South Vietnam from 1965 to 1968 are detailed in this typescript.

1144. Weller, Jac. "The Fighting ROKs." *Ordnance* 53:292 (January–February 1969), pp. 383–87.

ROK troops and their service in Vietnam are depicted in this illustrated article. Weller observes that the ROK Army has adapted well to the fighting in Vietnam.

5. Thailand

1145. Glasser, Jeffrey D. *The Secret Vietnam War: The United States Air Force in Thailand, 1961–1975*. Jefferson, North Carolina: McFarland and Company, 1995. 263 pp.

The author served in Thailand during the Vietnam War, and this work details the service performed by the USAF personnel stationed there. Glasser uses information gathered from USAF unit histories, coupled with personal narratives of those who flew missions, to describe the U.S. "Secret War." During the war the USAF maintained seven major airbases in Thailand, for their strategic and

tactical aircraft and personnel which numbered between 250 and 300,000. The work is illustrated and contains technical munitions information in the appendix.

6. The Philippines

1146. Lockwood, Kathleen O. "The Philippines: Allies During the Vietnam War." *Vietnam Magazine* (June 1999), np.

As early as 1964 the Philippines began sending small contingents of military personnel to South Vietnam in response to President Lyndon Johnson's proposed "More Flags" program – an attempt to get other nations to support South Vietnam. In this article the author details how military contingents, from the Philippines, came to be involved in the Vietnam War. By 1969 the personnel from the Philippines (PHILCAG – Philippine Civic Action Group) had been withdrawn.

D. Enemy Arms

1. North Vietnam

1147. Danner, Major Malcolm A., and Major Billy J. Biberstein. "The Enemy." *Infantry* 59:3 (May–June 1969), pp. 6–14.

The authors examine the NVA's basic training, means of transport to South Vietnam, and the life of an NVA soldier during a typical day.

1148. Fisch, Adrian. "Uncle Ho's Foreign Legions." *National Vietnam Veterans Review* 2:9 (October 1982), pp. 22–23.

Did the enemy in Vietnam have outside advisory help? The author observes that an Army of the Republic of Vietnam (ARVN) military intelligence report, in the fall of 1967, stated that North Vietnam had advisors from Communist China, Poland, Czechoslovakia, East Germany, and North Korea. Little documentation, however, is provided.

1149. Neglia, Captain Anthony V. "Different Enemies, Different Tactics." *Infantry* 60:5 (September–October 1970), pp. 50–55.

As the title states, the difference in tactics between the NVA regulars, and the Viet Cong, were obvious. The author compares and contrasts these differences. He contends that the Viet Cong soldiers were much tougher fighters in this illustrated article.

1150. Nguyen Cong Luan, Major. "The NVA: A New Look." *Infantry* 65:2 (March–April 1975), pp. 20–27.

Who were the North Vietnamese soldiers? The author provides a good answer. He discusses their training, commanders, discipline, political education, tactics, and foreign support. The article is illustrated.

2. Viet Cong

1151. Henderson, William Darryl. *Why the Vietcong Fought: A Study of Motivation and Control in a Modern Army in Combat*. Westport, Connecticut: Greenwood Press, 1979. 163 pp.

This study examines the sophisticated motivation and control systems, and other measures used by the North Vietnamese command in getting the Viet Cong to fight. The work is based upon captured Communist documents and recorded interviews conducted with captured Viet Cong members.

1152. Herrington, Stuart A. *Silence Was a Weapon: The Vietnam War in the Villages*. San Rafael, California: Presidio Press, 1982. 240 pp.

Mr. Herrington examines the differences in the makeup between the Viet Cong and the North Vietnamese regulars. He served as an intelligence officer in South Vietnam, and participated in "Operation Phoenix" – designed to combat Viet Cong village and hamlet governments. The work is illustrated.

1153. Hosmer, Stephen T. *Viet Cong Repression and its Implications for the Future*. Studies in International Development and Economics. Lexington, Massachusetts: D. C. Heath and Company, 1970. 176 pp.

The Communist use of repression as an instrument of revolutionary warfare in South Vietnam, is studied in this work. The RAND Corporation published a slightly different version of this work. The research contained in this work was based on captured Communist documents.

1154. Knoebel, Kuno. *Victor Charlie: The Face of War in Vietnam*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1967. 304 pp.

The author, a German, was an Australian journalist who had access to both sides during the Vietnam War. He presents a view of life behind the lines, and in the villages, of the Viet Cong – or "VC" or "Victor Charlie" in U.S. military parlance. This is one of the early works written about the enemy in the Vietnam War.

1155. Ladd, Lieutenant Colonel Jonathan F. USA. "Viet Cong Portrait." *Military Review* 44:7 (July 1964), pp. 67–80.

There were two types of guerrilla warriors in Vietnam: the hard-core from North Vietnam or Communist China, and the Viet Cong. In this illustrated article the author describes the typical Viet Cong guerrilla.

1156. Truong Nhu Tang with David Chanoff and Doan Van Toai. *A Vietcong Memoir*. New York: Vintage Books, a Division of Random House, 1986. 350 pp.

One of the founders of the National Liberation Front (NLF), and Minister of Justice in the Provisional Revolutionary Government (PRG) of the Viet Cong, the author – as noted on the cover, provides an “inside” account of the Vietnam War and its aftermath, as seen through the eyes of the Viet Cong. In the epilogue he writes that the “national democratic revolution itself became a casualty, choked by the arrogance of power among those who were responsible for the nation’s fate.”

1157. *Viet Cong Terminology Glossary*. Saigon: U.S. Military Assistance Command, Vietnam, 1968. 284 pp.

This useful compendium contains Viet Cong military phrases and terminology, with English translations. It includes an interesting list of Viet Cong weapons, abbreviations, and map symbols.

Author’s note: Several works were mistakenly left out of this chapter by the author. To ensure that these works are included please see the section at the end of this bibliography titled “Overlooked But Not Forgotten.”

VII

The Media War

A. General Accounts

1158. Braestrup, Peter. *Big Story: How the American Press and Television Reported and Interpreted the Crisis of Tet 1968 in Vietnam and Washington*. Abridged ed. New Haven, Connecticut: Yale University Press, 1983. 613 pp.

American media coverage of the Communist Tet Offensive, in 1968, reported that it was a disaster. This reporting eventually led to the downfall of President Johnson and changed the course of the war. Braestrup examines that media coverage in this work. He points out that historians conclude that Tet was a disaster for Hanoi because popular support for the people's war was never gained in South Vietnam as expected. Braestrup details the press and television coverage of the events and where the media erred. This work was first published in two volumes (Boulder, Colorado: Westview Press, 1977, 1,466 pp). The work is illustrated.

1159. Faulkner, Francis D. "Bao Chi: The American News Media in Vietnam 1960–1975." Ph.D. dissertation, University of Massachusetts, 1981. 806 pp.

This extensive dissertation analyzes media coverage of the Vietnam War. The author has organized his study in chronological order according to the oriental calendar – Year of the Tiger, Cat, Monkey, and so forth, from 1962 to 1975.

1160. Hammond, William M. *Reporting Vietnam: Media and Military at War*. Lawrence, Kansas: University Press of Kansas, 1998. 362 pp.

An assessment of how the American news media and U.S. military leaders came to the point of mistrust of each other. Beginning with the Diem coup, and afterwards, journalists reporting on the war would have their stories submitted to military censors. Adding fuel to the fire would be the events at My Lai, the Cambodian incursion, and Laos. This work is certainly worthy of reading.

1161. Herz, Martin F., and Leslie Rider. *The Prestige Press and the Christmas Bombing, 1972: Images and Reality in Vietnam*. Washington, D.C.: The Ethics and Public Policy Center, 1980. 116 pp.

The authors refer to the major accepted newspapers, magazines, and commercial television networks, as the "Prestige" press. In this work they examine the coverage of the 1972 Christmas bombing campaign by these media and the reaction to it.

1162. Keylin, Arleen, and Suri Boiangiu, eds. *Front Page Vietnam – As Reported by the New York Times*. New York: Arno Press, 1979. 248 pp.

A collection of headlines and stories reporting events in Vietnam as printed in the *New York Times* from February 1950 to March 1979. The work focuses primarily on the period from 1964 to 1973, depicting only the front page of the paper. Consequently, many of the stories are incomplete. The work is illustrated.

1163. MacDonald, Glenn. *Report or Distort*. New York: Exposition Press, 1973. 248 pp.

A war correspondent's point of view on the press coverage of the war in Vietnam is presented in this work. The appendices contain a selection of outstanding writing on the war and a list of correspondents who were killed, wounded, or were missing from 1964 to 1972. Many striking photographs are included. This book covers 10 years of war reporting and attempts to present both sides of the news media.

1164. Rigg, Colonel Robert B. USA (Ret.). "How Not to Report a War." *Military Review* 49:6 (June 1969), pp. 14–24.

The pros and cons of the media coverage of the best documented – and least understood, war is discussed in this article. Rigg cites specific failures of the media including reporting on the war, in general terms when the objectives were so vague, providing the enemy with propaganda about public opinion on the home front, and use of the "body count."

1165. Sheehan, Neil. "The Press and the Pentagon Papers." *Naval War College Review* 24:6 (February 1972), pp. 8–12.

The author contends that the American press failed to question the substance of American policy in Indochina. Sheehan cites examples based upon his personal experience as a reporter for the *New York Times* in Vietnam from 1962 to 1964. He concludes that Americans need to be suspicious of power and to question those who possess it. The Pentagon Papers are used to demonstrate examples.

1166. Wyatt, Clarence R. *Paper Soldiers: The American Press and the Vietnam War*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 1993. 272 pp.

How the press evolved from dealing with the cloak of secrecy which emerged during the Cold War era and how this would affect coverage of the war in Vietnam is explored in this work. The author observes that the press played a major role in the U.S. failure in Vietnam and that is not a point of contention. He very succinctly presents how the media coverage progressed during the war – from the beginning, to the Buddhist crisis of 1963, into open warfare, and, finally, to the departure of the Americans from Vietnam.

B. Television Coverage

1167. Arlen, Michael J. *Living-Room War: Writings about Television*. New York: The Viking Press, Penguin Books, 1982. 256 pp.

In nearly 40 essays the author examines the role of the televised news media in shaping the American public's perception of the Vietnam War. These essays were originally published in *The New Yorker* from 1966 to 1968.

1168. Jacobsen, Lieutenant K. C. USN. "Television and the War: The Small Picture." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 101:3/865 (March 1975), pp. 54–60.

With the advent of televised journalism, and the coverage of modern warfare, the problems of reporting the war, in Vietnam, must be – according to the author, forgiven and forgotten and chalked-up to experience.

1169. Lefever, Ernest W. *TV and National Defense: An Analysis of CBS News, 1972–73*. Reston, Virginia: Institute for American Strategy Press, 1974. 209 pp.

Chapter 5 of this work examines how the Columbia Broadcasting System (CBS) news portrayed the Vietnam War during 1972–73.

C. Correspondents/Journalists/Reporters

1170. Bartimus, Tad, Wood, Tracy, Webb, Kate, Palmer, Laura, Lederer, Edith, and Kazickas, Jurate. *War Torn: Stories of War from the Women Reporters Who Covered Vietnam*. New York: Random House, 2002. 291 pp.

The lives of nine women who covered and reported on the war in Vietnam, and whose lives were changed by their experience, are recounted in this work. The introduction is written by Gloria Emerson and appropriately titled “Remembering Women War Correspondents in Vietnam.” This work is a welcome addition to the scholarship on the role of women in the war.

1171. Briand, Rena. *No Tears to Flow – Women at War*. Melbourne, Australia: Heinemann, 1969. 202 pp.

The author of this work was a freelance journalist in Vietnam and describes the Vietnamese people and the war, up to 1967. The author lived in Vietnam for several years before returning to Australia. The book is illustrated.

1172. Browne, Malcolm W. *The New Face of War*. Indianapolis, Indiana: The Bobbs Merrill Company, Incorporated, 1965. 284 pp.

The “new face of war” is characterized by the implementation of helicopters, ambush, terror, and propaganda – all of which make Vietnam significantly different from previous wars. Many striking photographs illustrate the horrors of war. Browne was an Associated Press reporter in Vietnam early in the war. It was he who photographed the famous sequence of a Buddhist monk immolating himself in 1963.

1173. Dudman, Richard. *40 Days with the Enemy*. New York: Liveright, 1971. 182 pp.

The author, a journalist, was held captive by Cambodian guerrillas for 40 days. This is his story.

1174. Fall, Bernard B. *Last Reflections on a War*. New York: Schocken Books, 1972. 288 pp.

The noted and well-respected journalist spent a great deal of his life in Vietnam. This was his last book and was published by his wife after his death (in Vietnam). This work is a collection of reprinted articles, lectures, and the transcript of his last tape prior to his death. It provides excellent material for background and personal insight into the war in Vietnam. Fall was the victim of a booby trap.

1175. Harris, J. D. *War Reporter*. New York: Manor Books, Incorporated, 1979. 285 pp.

This personal narrative describes the author's experiences covering wars in Vietnam, Cyprus, Africa, Northern Ireland, and the Middle East.

1176. Jones, James. *Viet Journal*. New York: Delacorte Press, 1974. 257 pp.

This is a record of the author's trip to Vietnam in 1973, sponsored by the *New York Times Magazine*, describing the country during the post-cease-fire period. The noted war novelist describes many places he visited in South Vietnam including Saigon, Kontum, Quang Tri, Da Nang, My Lai, and Pleiku among others.

1177. Just, Ward S. *To What End: Report from Vietnam*. Boston: Houghton-Mifflin Company, 1968. 209 pp.

This personal narrative recalls the atmosphere and events encountered by the author in Vietnam, from 1965 to 1967. Just was a correspondent for the *Washington Post* and has the distinction of receiving the "Combat Infantry Badge." He does not attempt an exposé. He offers no explanation of how the U.S. became involved nor does he suggest how the U.S. should get out of Vietnam. He merely provides a description of what he witnessed.

1178. Kirk, Donald. *Tell it to the Dead: Memories of a War*. Chicago: Nelson-Hall, 1975. 229 pp.

Kirk was a war correspondent who spent much of the time from 1965 to 1974, in Vietnam. This is a personal narrative of his experiences in Vietnam.

1179. Knightley, Phillip. *The First Casualty: From the Crimea to Vietnam: The War Correspondent as Hero, Propagandist, and Myth Maker*. New York: Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovich, 1975. 465 pp.

The role of the war correspondent, and war reporting in general, is analyzed in this critical work. Two chapters are devoted to the war in Vietnam covering the period from 1954 to 1975. There are a few illustrations included. This is an indispensable work on this subject.

1180. Larteguy, Jean. *The Face of War: Reflections on Men and Combat*. Indianapolis, Indiana: The Bobbs-Merrill Company, Incorporated, 1979. 349 pp.

As a journalist the author covered many wars including Vietnam. This is a collection of anecdotes and reflections from those wars.

1181. Lucas, Jim G. *Dateline: Viet Nam*. New York: Award House, 1966. 334 pp.

Lucas was a correspondent in Vietnam and this work is a collection of his war stories. It is divided into four parts, each covering a different period. The first covers the war from January to June 1964; the second is from September 1964 to April 1965; the third is from April to December 1965; and the final part is from February to April 1966. There are many excellent accounts about the Americans and the Vietnamese people. Although this work is dated the material is still useful.

1182. Mulligan, Hugh A. *No Place to Die: The Agony of Vietnam*. New York: William Morrow and Company, Incorporated, 1966. 362 pp.

The author was a war correspondent who covered events in Vietnam. He relates his observations of two six-month visits in 1965 and 1966. He discusses topics such as the air war, the sea war, the use of helicopters, American advisors, psychological warfare, the North Vietnamese, the Viet Cong, and other subjects.

1183. Reed, David E. *Up Front in Vietnam*. New York: Funk and Wagnalls, 1967. 217 pp.

Reed, a war correspondent, relates stories which he gathered during his three months in Vietnam. He conducted interviews with American fighting men from the Mekong Delta to the Demilitarized Zone (DMZ).

1184. Schuyler, Philippa Duke. *Good Men Die*. New York: Twin Circle Publishing Company, 1969. 256 pp.

This personal narrative was written by a young, black correspondent in Vietnam in 1967. He was the second correspondent to die in Vietnam – killed in a helicopter crash.

1185. Sivaram, M. *The Vietnam War: Why?* Rutland, Vermont: Charles E. Tuttle Company, Publishers, 1966. 175 pp.

Following a review of events to 1965, the author concludes in the epilogue that there is little likelihood of “further escalation” of the Vietnam War (1966). The author spent four months in Vietnam during 1965, as a reporter.

1186. Tiede, Tom. *Your Men at War*. New York: Newspaper Enterprise Association, Incorporated, 1966. 111 pp.

A collection of war stories written by the author while on assignment in Vietnam, from 1965 to 1966. The work is useful in gaining personal insight about the men fighting the war. Color and black and white photographs illustrate the book. Tiede won the coveted “Ernie Pyle Memorial Award” in 1966, as a war correspondent.

1187. Tregaskis, Richard. *Vietnam Diary*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1963. 401 pp.

Tregaskis was a war correspondent who covered events in Vietnam early in the war – from 1962 to 1963. This is the diary of those days and events from this early period. Tregaskis is best known for his World War II book *Guadalcanal Diary*. The book is illustrated and maps are located on the lining pages.

1188. Webb, Kate. *On the Other Side: 23 Days with the Viet Cong*. New York: Quadrangle Books, 1972. 160 pp.

A reporter for United Press International, the author was captured by the Viet Cong, on April 7, 1971, during the fighting in Cambodia. This is the story of her captivity. Not only was she a prisoner, she had to convince her captors that, as a reporter, she was neutral in her position on the war. The book is illustrated.

1189. Willwerth, James. *Eye in the Last Storm: A Reporter's Journal of One Year in Southeast Asia*. New York: Grossman Publishers, 1972. 178 pp.

Willwerth volunteered to go to Southeast Asia as a reporter for *Time Magazine*. This is a daily record of his impressions of the war in Vietnam from 1970 to 1971.

D. Foreign Coverage

1190. Burchett, Wilfred G. *Vietnam Will Win!* 2nd ed. New York: Guardian Books, Monthly Review Press, 1970. 230 pp.

Long years of experience in Vietnam, many behind the lines of the NLF, make this Australian journalist's work interesting reading. Burchett's reports often conflicted with those of his American counterparts. This is a first-hand account of how the South Vietnamese people defeated U.S. imperialism. It includes a chronology and the book is illustrated.

1191. Ray, Michele. *The Two Shores of Hell*. Translated by Elisabeth Abbott. New York: David McKay Company, Incorporated, 1968. 217 pp.

The author, a French journalist, has recorded her experiences in Vietnam during 1967, in this book. She has realistically depicted the life of American and Vietnamese soldiers, the Viet Cong, and the civilians. Maps and photographs are included.

1192. Shchedrov, Ivan. *The Vietnam Story*. Woodstock, New York: Beckman Publishers, Incorporated, 1975. 238 pp.

This is a most unusual, biased, and propaganda-filled book which presents the Soviet perspective of the Vietnam War. Mr. Shchedrov was a correspondent for *Pravda* and covered the war for more than 10 years. The illustrations in this book are geared to depict alleged American aggression and atrocities. The text is both English and Russian.

VIII

The Vietnam War in Literature, Film, Music, and Art

A. Literature Resources

1193. Beidler, Philip D. *American Literature and the Experience of Vietnam*. Athens, Georgia: The University of Georgia Press, 1982. 220 pp.

Written by a Vietnam veteran, this work describes how various writers and individuals concerned with American literature have attempted to portray the Vietnam experience. Beidler examines novels, poetry, plays, and other works.

1194. Franklin, H. Bruce. *Vietnam War in American Stories, Songs, and Poems*. Boston: Bedford Books of St. Martin's Press, 1996. 343 pp.

The author, a USAF veteran and antiwar activist, has assembled a collection of stories, poems, and songs, about the Vietnam War. The majority of the works selected for inclusion in this book were written by those who were there – nurses, soldiers, and journalists.

1195. Neilson, Jim. *Warring Fictions: American Literary Culture and the Vietnam War Narrative*. Jackson, Mississippi: University Press of Mississippi, 1998. 256 pp.

This work provides a study of American fiction on the Vietnam War. The author uses both novels and autobiographies as sources, and explores how these works have been received in the literary world.

1196. Ringnalda, Don. *Fighting and Writing the Vietnam War*. Jackson, Mississippi: University Press of Mississippi, 1994. 266 pp.

Ringnalda has selected the prominent Vietnam novelist Tim O'Brien and his books, and other authors including Michael Herr, to comprise this study of the literature and poetry of the Vietnam War.

1197. Schroeder, Eric James. *Vietnam, We've All Been There: Interviews with American Writers*. Westport, Connecticut: Praeger Publishers, 1992. 240 pp.

The author has interviewed noted American writers on the Vietnam War including Michael Herr, Norman Mailer, and others. The author explains how the Vietnam War has been incorporated into their works – literary, poetic, and plays.

1198. Van Devanter, Lynda, and Joan A. Furey. *Visions of War, Dreams of Peace: Writings of Women in the Vietnam War*. New York: Warner Books, Incorporated, 1991. 214 pp.

The authors have divided this book into seven categories in a compilation of poetry written by women who were involved with, or fought in, the Vietnam War. The chapters are titled Visions, Recollections, Reflections, Awakening, Healing, Lessons, and Dreams. The women whose writings have been collected for this work are mothers, nurses, sweethearts, and wives – for whom the war changed their lives.

1199. Willson, David A., and Nancy Kendall. *Sixties Project: Bibliography of the Sixties and the Viet Nam War*. Internet resource. Website: http://www.3.iath.virginia.edu/sixties/HTML_docs/Biobliographies/REMF_bib_entry.html

This internet online resource offers a very detailed bibliography of the literary works on the Vietnam War. As part of the “Sixties Project” this source provides internet locations and primary and secondary sources available to researchers, students, writers, and those generally interested in the 1960s and the Vietnam War specifically.

1200. Wilson, James C. *Vietnam in Prose and Film*. Jefferson, North Carolina: McFarland and Company, 1982. 130 pp.

This work examines the Vietnam War in books and film. Wilson discusses how they have been used to either muddle or clarify questions of historical, political, and moral importance. The work contains a select bibliography and a filmography.

B. Novels

1201. Anderson, William C. *The Gooney Bird*. New York: Crown Publishers, Incorporated, 1968. 306 pp.

This story focuses on the crew aboard an old DC-3 aircraft refitted as a flying gunship to lay down large patterns of fire. The author was a pilot.

1202. Baker, Richard E. *Feast of Epiphany*. Tacoma, Washington: The Rapier Press, 1981. 186 pp.

This novel centers around the men serving in the Fourth Infantry Division near Pleiku, about 1966. The characters do not function as an organized military unit, which complicates the book.

1203. Bausch, Robert. *On the Way Home*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1982. 224 pp.

In this novel an Army corporal is reported dead only to have his family later learn that he is alive. When he finally returns home a year later, he finds that he is a changed person unable to cope with what happened to him in Vietnam. The author conveys to the reader the attempts and failures of family and friends to help this disturbed Vietnam veteran.

1204. Blacker, Irwin P. *Search and Destroy*. New York: Random House, 1966. 274 pp.

The author tells of a covert operation into North Vietnam in this early novel.

1205. Boatman, Alan. *Comrades in Arms*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1974. 229 pp.

Corporal Harding, a Marine draftee, is shot by another Marine – in Vietnam, and he is then medically discharged. The author provides an accurate depiction of life in towns in close proximity to a military base. The author makes good use of colorful conversations between the characters in this book.

1206. Briley, John. *The Traitors*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1969. 441 pp.

Ambushed and captured by the Viet Cong, five Americans are taken into captivity in North Vietnam. An American defector convinces them to take part in a mission against the U.S. war effort. The author looks at issues of morality in this novel.

1207. Browne, Corrine. *Body Shop*. New York: Stein and Day, Publishers, 1973. 180 pp.

Letterman Army Hospital and its amputation ward in San Francisco provides the setting for the stories of wounded Vietnam veterans returning home and dealing with their disabilities.

1208. Bunting, Josiah. *The Lionheads*. New York: George Braziller, 1972. 213 pp.

A fictitious account of the Twelfth Infantry Division – the “Lionheads,” and the dilemma that confronts them when they are ordered to destroy a North Vietnamese force which is going to result in heavy losses of their own. The author was an infantry officer in Vietnam, and a Rhodes Scholar.

1209. Butterworth, W. E. *Air Evac*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1967. 211 pp.

This novel describes a young Army draftee who is a pacifist unable to attend medical school . He chooses to become a helicopter pilot to avoid having to kill anyone. His duty is flying aerial medical evacuations of wounded soldiers in Vietnam.

1210. ——. *Orders to Vietnam*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1968. 145 pp.

This novel describes the son of an Army general who is drafted after dropping out of West Point, and becomes a helicopter pilot. In Vietnam he flies his missions from Pleiku and realizes the courage and skill needed to endure.

1211. Caputo, Philip. *DelCorso's Gallery*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1983. 374 pp.

Leaving his wife and family to return to Saigon this novel depicts an award-winning photojournalist who goes back to Vietnam, to places he had previously photographed, to record the final months of the war.

1212. Cassidy, John. *A Station in the Delta*. New York: Ballantine Books, 1981. 331 pp.

The author served with the CIA in Vietnam, and writes about the CIA's clandestine activities on the eve of the Tet Offensive in 1968, in this novel.

1213. Clark, Alan. *The Lion Heart*. New York: William Morrow and Company, Incorporated, 1969. 255 pp.

This story involves a Special Forces officer who advises the commander of a newly arrived unit, the Seventy-Eighth Division, against launching an operation. The inexperienced officer proceeds and the operation is a disaster. The story is set in central Vietnam, near the Cambodian border, in 1967. The author has included a glossary of military and Vietnamese terms.

1214. Coleman, Charles. *Sergeant Back Again*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1980. 137 pp.

The characters in this novel are each a victim of a mental breakdown during their tour of duty in Vietnam. They are returned to a military hospital in the U.S. whereupon they find that they have days to rehabilitate themselves or face being placed in a VA hospital for mental care. The author worked with mental patients returned from Vietnam at Fort Sam Houston, Texas.

1215. Corder, E. M. *The Deer Hunter*. New York: Exeter Books, 1978. 189 pp.

The lives of five young men, all steelworkers from Pennsylvania, who go to war in Vietnam and suffer its horrors is the story. The book is essentially three separate parts. The first part is devoted to their lives at home in 1968; the second to Vietnam in 1970; and the third to their return home in 1973. The Academy Award winning motion picture of the same name is based upon this work.

1216. Crawford, William. *Gunship Commander*. New York: Pinnacle Books, 1973. 184 pp.

An officer, his aviation unit, and its experiences in Vietnam, is the background of this novel. The author also wrote *The Marine* and *The Chinese Connection*.

1217. Davis, George. *Coming Home*. New York: Dell Publishing Company, Incorporated, 1975. 189 pp.

Three Air Force fighter pilots, two of whom are blacks, become best friends and later, bitter enemies. In this novel the author explores their relationships. This novel was not the basis for the movie of the same name.

1218. Del Vecchio, John M. *The 13th Valley*. New York: Bantam Books, 1982. 606 pp.

The daily life and death experiences of the common soldier in Vietnam are recreated in this war novel. The work enables the reader to get the "feel" of what the jungle war was like. Graphic language is used. The author was a combat journalist with the 101st Airborne in Vietnam, during 1970-71.

1219. Derrig, Peter. *The Pride of the Green Berets*. New York: Paperback Library, Incorporated, 1966. 288 pp.

The activities of a Special Forces team and their operations in the Mekong Delta in the early 1960s, comprise this novel. The author

wrote in a fashion that reached out to young readers' interests to possibly provide encouragement for them to consider enlisting in the Special Forces.

1220. Dunn, Mary Lois. *The Man in the Box: A Story from Vietnam*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1968. 155 pp.

After being wounded a Special Forces officer is captured by the Viet Cong who hold him captive in an open box. Later, he is saved by a young Montagnard boy who helps him escape and both eventually end up together in Da Nang.

1221. Durden, Charles. *No Bugles, No Drums*. New York: The Viking Press, 1976. 287 pp.

The story of Jamie Hawkins is told in a humorous first-person narrative. As a young private Hawkins becomes bitter over the Vietnam War and is eventually discharged from the Army.

1222. Eastlake, William. *The Bamboo Bed*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1969. 350 pp.

While the title is somewhat misleading the author's references throughout this novel to "bamboo beds" are used to generally mean everything and anything Vietnam. Although disjointed in its approach the author conveys the total insanity of the war.

1223. Favreau, Dan. *Thumbs Up*. Minneapolis, Minnesota: Montage Books, Incorporated, 1981. 187 pp.

A true story of the author's experiences in Vietnam, this novel is set in 1967 near An Khe. The author served in the First Squad, Third Platoon, C Company, First Battalion, Fifth Cavalry, or the First Air Cavalry Division.

1224. Fleming, Thomas. *Officers' Wives*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1981. 645 pp.

This lengthy novel examines the lives of three Army officers and their wives, from graduation from West Point in 1950, through Vietnam to 1975. A substantial part of the novel is set in Saigon 1963-64 during the coup to overthrow the Diem government.

1225. Ford, Daniel. *Incident at Muc Wa*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1967. 231 pp. Published in paperback as *Go Tell it to the Spartans*: New York: Jove Publications, Incorporated, 1979.

This book was the basis for the movie of the same name starring Burt Lancaster. The novel details the events involving a U.S. Army

Special Forces garrison at Muc Wa in 1964. The paperback title is taken from an inscription on a French grave from 1954, which states, "Go, stranger, and tell the Spartans that we lie here in obedience to their laws. . . ."

1226. Fuller, Jack. *Fragments*. New York: William Morrow and Company, Incorporated, 1984. 211 pp.

The author details the story of two men who go through the Army together and serve in Vietnam together. One of the two observes the other murder his Vietnamese girlfriend and her family.

1227. Garfield, Brian. *The Last Bridge*. New York: David McKay Company, Incorporated, 1966. 277 pp. In paperback by Dale Books, 1966 and 1978.

This novel charts the actions of a small team of Americans and South Vietnamese, operating behind enemy lines, to rescue an American prisoner and to destroy an important railroad bridge.

1228. Grey, Anthony. *Saigon*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1982. 789 pp.

This novel centers around an American, Joseph Sherman, the son of an American Senator, who first falls under the spell of French colonial Saigon during a hunting trip in 1925. He later returns as a student in the 1930s, and again during World War II as a pilot and an OSS agent. Still later, he returns as a correspondent covering America's involvement in the war to 1975. All the major events have been included: Dien Bien Phu, Diem's assassination, the 1968 Tet Offensive, and, ultimately, the fall of Saigon.

1229. Groom, Winston. *Better Times Than These*. New York: Berkley Books in arrangement with Summit Books, 1979. 477 pp.

The setting is Vietnam in 1966. The officers and men of B Company, Fourth Battalion, Seventh Cavalry, are operating in the Ia Drang valley. The novel includes a description of an ocean crossing on a troop transport. Groom was an Army officer in the Fourth Infantry Division in Vietnam.

1230. Halberstam, David. *One Very Hot Day*. Boston: Houghton-Mifflin Company, 1967. 216 pp. In paperback by Avon, New York, 1969.

Prior to the arrival of large numbers of American troops, this novel details the activities of an American advisor to a South Vietnamese unit, operating in the Mekong Delta. The entire focus of the story is one mission and the oppressive heat. How the main character deals with the heat, while on his mission – which occurs during the course

of a day, is described. Halberstam, a Pulitzer Prize winner, conveys the frustration which was Vietnam.

1231. Haldeman, Joe W. *War Year*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1972. 121 pp. In paperback by Pocket Books, New York, 1978.

Set in Pleiku, 1968 the story describes the experiences of a young draftee and his untimely death while clearing a helicopter landing zone. The book is short and simple and written in diary fashion.

1232. Hasford, Gustav. *The Short-Timers*. New York: Harper and Row, 1979. 154 pp. In paperback by Bantam, New York, 1980.

The setting is Hue 1968, during the Tet Offensive, and the story describes the experiences of a Marine combat correspondent and his companion who is a combat photographer. The author uses vivid and colorful language to describe the combat that the correspondent is writing about and who only has a short time left to serve in Vietnam.

1233. Hathaway, Bo. *A World of Hurt*. New York: Taplinger Publishing Company, 1981. 318 pp.

Two draftees volunteer for the Special Forces and are sent to a small camp near Nha Trang. There the soldiers develop an affection for the Montagnard troops but they hold the Vietnamese in contempt because the local populace is not interested in fighting. Both men become bitter over their experience.

1234. Heckler, Jonellen. *Safekeeping*. New York: The Putnam Publishing Group, 1983. 192 pp.

Major Ronald Greer is a POW in North Vietnam, and his son Kevin and wife are waiting at home, uncertain of whether he is alive or dead. The author presents a sensitive and compelling portrayal.

1235. Heinemann, Larry. *Close Quarters*. New York: Farrar, Straus, Giroux, 1977. 336 pp. In paperback by Popular Library, New York, nd.

The action is focused upon an Army Armored Cavalry unit. In the story the author touches upon the soldiers' feelings towards their enemy, their own American officers, and the mistreatment of the South Vietnamese. Heinemann served with the U.S. Army's Twenty-Fifth Infantry Division in Vietnam.

1236. Hempstone, Smith. *A Tract of Time*. Boston: Houghton-Mifflin Company, 1966. 271 pp. In paperback by Fawcett, New York, nd.

Vietnam 1963, before and during the collapse of the Diem regime, provides the setting of this novel. The main character is a CIA agent who is advising a group of indigenous mountain tribesmen of how to fight the Viet Cong.

1237. Huggett, William Turner. *Body Count*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1973. 445 pp. In paperback by Dell, New York, 1978.

Lieutenant Chris Hawkins, a Marine infantry platoon leader, and the men of the Second Platoon, Delta Company, Third Marine Division, around Khe Sanh, are the subjects of this novel. The story is historically accurate and is written in the finest literary tradition. Huggett was a Marine lieutenant in Vietnam, and his work is among the best novels about the Marines in the Vietnam War.

1238. Kalb, Bernard, and Marvin Kalb. *The Last Ambassador*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1981. 276 pp.

The fall of Saigon in 1975 provides the setting for this novel. The authors have combined their firsthand experience and knowledge of those events in writing this book. The main character is the last American ambassador to South Vietnam – Hadden Walker. It is his belief that the continued support of the South Vietnamese government is the best way for America to fulfill its commitment. However, to achieve this, Walker must act in opposition to official U.S. policy as well as the overwhelming Communist forces. He fails and is ultimately removed from Vietnam.

1239. Karlin, Wayne, Basil T. Paquet, and Larry Rottman, eds. *Free Fire Zone*. New York: Dell Publishing Company, Incorporated, 1976. 288 pp.

Twenty-four Vietnam War short stories have been edited in this work.

1240. Kempley, Walter. *The Invaders*. New York: Dell Publishing Company, Incorporated, 1976. 288 pp.

In Saigon a group of black Army deserters are recruited by a North Vietnamese officer to terrorize the U.S. For their efforts the deserters are paid with heroin and they are pursued throughout the story by a special anti-deserter unit led by Lieutenant Skilling. Eddie Palmer is the leader of the group of deserters. The work is disappointing with respect to providing useful information about the lives of American deserters in Vietnam.

1241. Kim, Samuel. *The American POWs*. Boston: Branden Press, 1979. 273 pp.

This graphic story tells of the horrible conditions, brutality, and inhumane treatment that American POWs endured. The main character is aided in his eventual escape by a former Viet Cong who themselves had defected.

1242. Kirkwood, James. *Some Kind of Hero*. New York: Thomas Y. Crowell Company, 1975. 399 pp. In paperback by New American Library, New York, 1976.

Eddie Keller, a U.S. Army Corporal, is captured during the 1968 Tet Offensive at Hue. His POW experience in Hanoi for five years, is the story. Upon his return home, he is confronted by problems involving a seriously ill mother and an unfaithful wife. Eventually, he turns to a life of crime.

1243. Kolpacoff, Victor. *The Prisoners of Quai Dong*. New York: New American Library, 1967. 214 pp.

Set in an American military stockade at Quai Dong on the South China Sea, this story focuses on the interrogation and torture of a 17-year-old Viet Cong suspect.

1244. Linn, Bill. *Missing in Action*. New York: Avon Books, 1981. 224 pp.

The capture and escape of an American POW comprises this story. When he awakens in a prison hospital, Specialist Fourth Class William Tompkins finds he is the only survivor of a platoon that no longer exists.

1245. McCarry, Charles. *The Tears of Autumn*. New York: Saturday Review Press, 1975. 276 pp.

In retaliation for President Kennedy's presumed complicity in the 1963 coup leading to South Vietnam Premier Ngo Dinh Diem's death, this story is based on the assumption that JFK's assassination was arranged by members of the Diem family.

1246. Maitland, Derek. *The Only War We've Got*. New York: William Morrow and Company, Incorporated, 1970. 270 pp.

This satirical novel takes aim at the significant figures and events of the Vietnam War. The Americans are the natural target for ridicule. The author, a British journalist, was in Vietnam prior to the 1968 Tet Offensive.

1247. Miller, Kenn. *Tiger the Lurp Dog*. Boston: Atlantic Monthly Press, Little, Brown and Company, 1983. 228 pp.

The disappearance of a Long Range Reconnaissance Patrol (LRRP or "Lurp") and the efforts of their buddies to find them comprises this story.

1248. Moore, Gene D. *The Killing at Ngo Tho*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1967. 242 pp.

The early American advisory effort in Vietnam makes up this story. Like the hero of the story, Colonel Scott Leonard, the author was a colonel in the U.S. Army Signal Corps in Vietnam. This is a very optimistic work about the war and its outcome (1967). The story deals with Colonel Leonard's mission to locate and destroy a hidden Viet Cong headquarters. He is, however, later relieved of duty for "immoral conduct," "insubordination," and "dereliction of duty."

1249. Moore, Robin. *Combat Pay*. New York: Woodhill Press, Incorporated, 1977. 238 pp.

Twenty-six short stories are contained in this work but only four are about Vietnam. The longest of those is "Combat Pay," a love story about a Green Beret and a Vietnamese woman.

1250. ——. *The Green Berets*. New York: Crown Publishers, Incorporated, 1965. 341 pp.

Moore recalls his own personal experiences as a member of the U.S. Army Special Forces Group in Vietnam, in this work. Moore served in Vietnam for six months in 1964. He tells a story of the political and military situation which the U.S. faced in South Vietnam. A list of abbreviations is included.

1251. ——. and Henry Rothblatt. *Court Martial*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1971. 410 pp.

Five Special Forces officers are court-martialed for the killing of a suspected Vietnamese double agent in this story. Set in both Vietnam and Washington, D.C., the authors present a picture of the rivalries between Regular Army and Special Forces officers, the politics of Washington, the Pentagon bureaucracy, the CIA, and the resentment felt by the Commanding General of U.S. forces in Vietnam, toward the Special Forces.

1252. Morris, Jim. *Strawberry Soldier*. New York: Ace Books, 1972. 237 pp.

A Vietnam veteran turns to using LSD and has flashbacks to scenes set in the Central Highlands of South Vietnam in the late 1960s or early 1970s.

1253. Nagel, William. *The Odd Angry Shot*. Sydney, Australia: Angus and Robertson, 1979. 98 pp.

Little known to many Americans was the contribution made by Australia to the Vietnam War. In this work the author shows that

most Australian soldiers had the same experiences as did their American counterparts in Vietnam. The SAS – Australia's elite Special Air Service unit, which is the equivalent to the U.S. Special Forces or Rangers, provides the focus.

1254. Newhafer, Richard. *The Violators*. New York: New American Library, 1966. 206 pp. Originally published as *No More Bugles in the Sky*.

A person hired by the CIA to provoke the enemy into open aggression by means of increased air power in an attempt to broaden the war, is the story. If successful the U.S. would be justified in escalating the war in response. The author's ideas, written in 1966, were profoundly familiar in historical hindsight.

1255. O'Brien, Tim. *Going After Cacciato*. New York: Delacorte Press, 1978. 338 pp. In paperback by Delta, New York, 1979.

The complex story of an American infantryman who goes AWOL (Absent Without Leave) from a battlefield in Vietnam, and begins walking to Paris. The story focuses primarily on the AWOL soldier, and to a lesser extent, on the other members of the squad pursuing him through Southeast Asia, the Middle East, and Europe. The book won the 1978 National Book Award and has received favorable reviews.

1256. Pelfrey, William. *The Big V*. New York: Liveright, 1972. 158 pp.

The Central Highlands of South Vietnam with the Fourth Division, at the height of the war, is the setting. The hero, Henry Winsted, is a radio operator who is a draftee. He tells of his experiences in training, at the base camp, and in combat. A complete story of the infantry in the war is offered in this work.

1257. Pollock, J. C. *Mission M.I.A.* New York: Crown, 1982. 288 pp.

The controversial story of the many Americans still held captive in POW camps in Vietnam, is told in this work. One American POW, Sergeant Frank Detimore, a prisoner of the North Vietnamese for 12 years and considered officially dead by the Pentagon, finally gets a message out to his wife. She turns to some of his former Green Beret buddies for help. They, in turn, perform a daring "High Altitude Low Opening" (HALO) rescue.

1258. Rivers, Gayle, and James Hudson. *The Five Fingers*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1978. 280 pp. In paperback by Bantam, New York, 1979.

A five-man team code named the "Five Fingers," that infiltrates from Laos and Vietnam into Southern China, in 1969, to assassinate Communist leaders who are meeting there, is the basis of this story.

1259. Roth, Robert. *Sand in the Wind*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1973. 498 pp. In paperback by Pinnacle, New York, 1974.
- Set in the area of Hue during the 1968 Tet Offensive, this is a story about a platoon of Marines, the Fifth Division, and their exploits. An excellent portrayal of Marine boot camp is presented. Roth was a Marine rifleman in Vietnam.
1260. Rowe, John. *Count Your Dead*. Sydney, Australia: Angus and Robertson, 1968. 223 pp.
- Rowe was in the Australian Army. The story details the bad job done by American and Vietnamese officers with an Army brigade in Duc Binh Province.
1261. Rubin, Jonathan. *The Barking Deer*. New York: George Braziller, 1974. 335 pp. In paperback by Avon, New York, 1982.
- The Central Highlands of South Vietnam, during the mid-1960s, provides the setting for this novel. The center of the action is a Montagnard village caught between an American Special Forces team and the Viet Cong. The focus of the work concerns the Montagnards who feel that they are being kept apart from the Americans due to cultural differences which they do not understand.
1262. Sadler, Barry. *The Moi*. Nashville, Tennessee: Aurora Publishers, Incorporated, 1977. 214 pp.
- In Vietnamese “*moi*” means “animal.” In this novel an American Special Forces sergeant becomes the prisoner of a ruthless North Vietnamese major named Lim. The American is tortured in an effort to break his will and reduce him to the status of an animal – a “*moi*.” Sadler was a Green Beret in Vietnam.
1263. ——. *Phu Nham*. New York: A TOR Book (Tom Doherty Associates), 1984. 285 pp.
- This story follows a Viet Cong killer, Phu Nham, who has the highest kill record using a M-16 rifle. Sadler also wrote *Cry Havoc*, *The Moi*, and the popular 1960s song, *The Ballad of the Green Berets*.
1264. Sloan, James Park. *War Games*. Boston: Houghton-Mifflin Company, 1971. 186 pp.
- The hero in this novel is, at first, assigned to clerical duties in rear echelon areas. Later, he goes into combat and other adventures, before returning home to civilian life. No conclusions are drawn in this novel. It just ends!

1265. Spetz, Steven N. *Rat Pack Six*. New York: Fawcett, 1969. 206 pp.

The title is the slang term for the six men assigned to an Armored Personnel Carrier (APC) of the U.S. Ninth Division – one of many guarding Highway 13 out of Saigon. This group has the misfortune of being assigned to the defense of an artillery position designated for destruction by the North Vietnamese and Viet Cong. Spetz was a Captain in the mechanized infantry in Vietnam.

1266. Stone, Scott C. S. *The Coasts of War*. New York: Pyramid, 1966. 157 pp.

One of the earliest novels (1966) about the Vietnam War. This work also has the distinction of being one of the very few written about the Navy. The story is set in 1964 and is about a Navy advisor, Lieutenant Eriksen, a “black beret,” who is attached to the Vietnamese Navy with his small patrol boat in the Mekong Delta. The author describes the first Naval air combat strike in Vietnam, in this work.

1267. Suddick, Tom. *A Few Good Men*. New York: Avon, 1978. 140 pp.

This collection of eight stories first appeared in the publication *Samisdat* in 1974. It presents the perspectives of eight different Marines in the same company, in Vietnam in 1972.

1268. Tauber, Peter. *The Last Best Hope*. New York: Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovich, 1977. 628 pp.

One of the many characters in this lengthy novel, Willie Brown, leads a patrol to rescue a general whose helicopter has been shot down. For his efforts he is later awarded the MOH. Although it deals with the Vietnam War this work is obviously intended as a statement about the generation of Americans who reached maturity in the 1960s.

1269. Taylor, Thomas. *A Piece of This Country*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1970. 192 pp.

A Black-American soldier who volunteers for an assignment deep in enemy territory, is the story of this work. The story revolves around the defense of a small Vietnamese outpost near the border of Laos in 1965. Taylor is a Vietnam veteran and winner of a Silver Star.

1270. Webb, James, Jr. *A Country Such as This*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1983. 552 pp.

This novel begins in 1959 in the United States, and follows three graduates of the Naval Academy, who have taken a vow to be blood

brothers. The primary focus is Vietnam as the story follows the three and their families, into the 1960s and 1970s. The author also wrote *Fields of Fire* and *A Sense of Honor*.

1271. ——. *Fields of Fire*. New York: Bantam Books, 1979. 415 pp.

The story of a Marine squad operating in the An Hoa basin during 1969. The author was a Marine officer in Vietnam. The characters in the story are portrayed in their civilian, as well as military, roles.

1272. White, Kent, Jr. *Prairie Fire*. Canton, Ohio: Daring Press, 1983. 200 pp.

“Prairie Fire” was the code name for operations in Laos. This is a story about two Special Forces reconnaissance teams sent into Laos.

1273. Wilson, William. *The LBJ Brigade*. Los Angeles: Apocalypse, 1966. 124 pp. In paperback by Parallax, Los Angeles, 1966, and Pyramid, New York, 1966.

The story, told by an unnamed narrator, is about an inexperienced infantryman, in Vietnam, and his relationship with an experienced sergeant who tries to teach him how to stay alive. He forgets the sergeant’s instructions and is captured while the sergeant is killed. The narrator later dies in an air strike. A strong anti-war message.

1274. Wright, Stephen. *Meditations in Green: A Novel of Vietnam*. New York: Charles Scribner’s Sons, 1983. 320 pp.

This novel tells of the pressure of the Vietnam War and how it affects Specialist Fourth Class James Griffen and other members of the 1069th Military Intelligence Group.

C. Poetry

1275. Baker, Richard E. *Shell Burst Pond*. Tacoma, Washington: The Rapier Press, 1980. 26 pp.

The 16 poems in this book describe the author’s experiences and impressions of his service with the Fourth Infantry Division in Vietnam, in 1966 and 1967. Most of the poems contain morbid details.

1276. Barry, Jan, and W. D. Erhart, eds. *Demilitarized Zones: Veterans After Vietnam*. Perkasie, Pennsylvania: East River Anthology, 1976. 182 pp.

Not only have the editors collected poems about Vietnam veterans, they have also included many about the nature of war itself. This collection of poems is considered by some to be an important anthology of Vietnam War poetry.

1277. Barth, R. L. *Forced Marching to the Styx: Vietnam War Poems*. Van Nuys, California: Perivale Press, 1983. 20 pp.
A short, soft-cover collection of poetry on the Vietnam War. The author was a Marine in Vietnam, and served for 13 months as a LRRP leader.
1278. Berry, D. C. *Saigon Cemetery*. Athens, Georgia: University of Georgia Press, 1972. 50 pp.
This is a collection of untitled poems. The author served as a medical officer in Vietnam.
1279. Casey, Michael. *Obscenities*. New Haven, Connecticut: Yale University Press, 1972. 68 pp.
Fifty-three poems, combined to provide a thought-provoking narration of the author's experience as a military policeman serving in the rear area in Vietnam. Found at the bottom of some pages are definitions of little-known military terms and slang expressions provided to aid the reader.
1280. Currey, Richard. *Crossing Over: A Vietnam Journal*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Applewood Press, 1980. 61 pp.
The author, a Navy corpsman in Vietnam, relates his experiences in both prose and poetry in this work. This work was nominated for a Pulitzer Prize.
1281. Ehrhart, W. D. *The Awkward Silence*. Stafford, Virginia: Northwoods Press, Incorporated, 1980. 41 pp.
In 1967 and 1968 the author was a Marine sergeant in Vietnam. In this brief work he offers a collection of his poems that have previously appeared in earlier works.
1282. Hollis, Jocelyn. *Vietnam Poems: The War Poems of Today*. Vol. 1. Upper Darby, Pennsylvania: American Poetry Press, 1983. 34 pp.
A brief collection of Vietnam War poetry.
1283. ——. *Vietnam Poems: The War Poems of Today – Second Collection*, 1983. Vol. 2. Upper Darby, Pennsylvania: American Poetry Press, 1983. 36 pp.
A continuation of Vol. 1 (see entry 1282) with additional poems added.
1284. Johnson, G. P. *I Was Fighting for Peace, but, Lord, There Was Much More*. Hicksville, New York: Exposition Press, 1979. 88 pp.

The poems in this work relate to an infantryman's experiences in Vietnam during 1968 and 1969. Among other subjects, the author describes his first killing of another human being.

1285. McCarthy, Gerald. *War Story*. Trumansburg, New York: The Crossing Press, 1977. 69 pp.

The poems in the first half of this work describe McCarthy's experiences and impressions as a Marine in Vietnam. He also stresses his feelings about his return to the U.S.

1286. Topham, J., ed. *Poems of the Vietnam War*. New York: American Poetry Press, 1980. 48 pp.

A collection of poems about the Vietnam War comprises this work. Although the editor is listed as "J. Topham," one must assume that he also wrote them as no other poets' names are credited.

1287. ——. *Vietnam Heroes: A Tribute: An Anthology of Poems by Veterans and Their Friends*. Vol. 1. Claymont, Delaware: American Poetry Press, 1982. 19 pp.

As stated in the title this is a collection of poems written by Vietnam veterans and their friends.

1288. ——. *Vietnam Heroes II: The Tears of a Generation; Poems and Prose on the Consequences of War*. Vol. 2. Claymont, Delaware: American Poetry Press, 1982. 40 pp.

The second volume of collected poems by Vietnam veterans and their friends concerns the consequences of the war.

1289. ——. *Vietnam Heroes III: That We Have Peace; An Anthology of Poems by Veterans of Vietnam*. Philadelphia: American Poetry Press, 1983. 32 pp.

The final volume in the series is the most recent collection of poems written by Vietnam veterans.

D. Film

1. Guides

1290. Adair, Gilbert. *Vietnam on Film: From the Green Berets to Apocalypse Now*. New York: Proteus Publishing Company, 1981. 208 pp.

This illustrated work lists feature films that concerned, either directly or indirectly, the Vietnam War. The author is primarily concerned with the two movies listed in the title in this work although 70 feature movies are listed.

1291. Department of the Army. *Index of Army Motion Pictures for Public Non-Profit Use*. Department of the Army Pamphlet 108-4. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1977. 57 pp.
An extensive listing with descriptions of official Army films cleared for public viewing.
1292. Dittmar, Linda, and Gene Michaud, eds. *From Hanoi to Hollywood: The Vietnam War in American Film*. New Brunswick, New Jersey: Rutgers University Press, 1990. 387 pp.
In this work the editors have collected 19 essays which examine how documentary filmmaking is done and how the Vietnam War was reported by the television media. The editors provide a detailed listing, in the appendices, of all American war movies, from 1954 through 1988, and a filmography listing information on over 400 American and foreign films about the Vietnam War.
1293. Dowling, John. *War-Peace Film Guide*. 3rd ed. Chicago: World Without War Publications, 1980. 188 pp.
Over 200 films on war have been annotated in this guide. Thirty-one films are on Vietnam. Information includes the film's format, length, color or black and white, distributor, prices, and rating. This is a very useful reference.
1294. Russell, Jaime. *The Pocket Essential Guide to Vietnam War Films*. Harpenden, England: Pocket Essentials, 2002. 96 pp.
This reference looks at all of the major commercial Vietnam War films produced basically since the 1970s. The author also includes some Vietnamese films made about the war. Although concise this is among the most recent works to try to make sense of the wide variety of Vietnam War movies.

2. Official Films

1295. *The American Navy in Vietnam*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Navy (1967).
Combat film depicting the U.S. Navy in action in Vietnam. Footage includes scenes of riverine operations, assault landings, bombing/missile strikes, and civic action programs.
1296. *Army Medicine in Vietnam*. Color, twenty-nine minutes, Department of the Army, Professional Medical Film (1968).
All phases of the Army medical service in Vietnam are depicted in this film. Footage includes scenes of air evacuation, field hospitals, treatment of battle casualties, and so forth.

1297. *The Big Picture – The Army Air Mobility Team*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Army (1969).

The employment of air mobility by the Army in Vietnam is documented in this film.

1298. *The Big Picture – The Eleventh Armored Cavalry Regiment*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Army (1969).

The activities of the “Black Horse” regiment, in Vietnam are covered in this film. It demonstrates the way that armored vehicles could be employed in jungle warfare.

1299. *The Big Picture – The First Air Cavalry Division*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Army (1969).

The Army’s “First Team” is shown employing the concept of air mobility in Vietnam.

1300. *The Big Picture – The Fourth Infantry Division*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Army (1969).

The story of the “Ivy” division in Vietnam with footage showing scenes of the division’s arrival in Vietnam in 1966, through the fighting at Dak To in 1968.

1301. *The Big Picture – Logistics in Vietnam (Pipeline to Victory)*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Army (1968).

The logistical efforts of the Army are documented in this film. It shows the role of Army transportation, aviation, engineer, quartermaster, ordnance, and medical services in support of the fighting men.

1302. *The Big Picture – Ready to Strike*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Army (1968).

The history and exploits of the Twenty-Fifth Infantry Division – “Tropic Lightning” is shown in this film.

1303. *The Big Picture – Screaming Eagles in Vietnam*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Army (1967).

The combat missions of the First Brigade, 101st Airborne Division, are depicted in this film. From the summer of 1965 to January 1967 scenes of operations “Van Buren,” “Harrison,” “Hawthorne,” “John Paul Jones,” and “Pickett” are included.

1304. *The Big Picture – The Sky Soldiers*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Army (1968).

Color footage of the 173rd Airborne Brigade in Vietnam, is shown in operations at Vung Tau and Bien Hoa. The brigade won a Presidential Unit Citation at Dak To.

1305. *The Big Picture – They Clear the Way*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Army (1968).

The mission of the Army Corps of Engineers in Vietnam are shown in this film including footage of bridge building, airfield, and road construction.

1306. *Eye of the Dragon*. Color, twenty-nine minutes, Department of the Navy (1967).

The role of the American naval advisor serving with the South Vietnamese junk forces is depicted in this film.

1307. *First Infantry Division in Vietnam (1965–1970)*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Army (1971).

The “Big Red One” is chronicled in this film which includes scenes of both combat and civic action programs.

1308. *Know Your Enemy – The Viet Cong*. Black and white, twenty minutes, Armed Forces Information Film (1968).

This short film’s footage was taken from captured propaganda newsreel coverage of the Viet Cong, and their operations in South Vietnam.

1309. *The Small Boat Navy*. Color, twenty-eight minutes, Department of the Navy (1968).

The role of the Navy’s “small boats” is captured in this film. Footage includes scenes of PBRs, MSBs, LCPLs, and armored troop carriers taking the war to the Viet Cong.

1310. *The Unique War*. Color, twenty-five minutes, Armed Forces Information Film (1966).

This is an excellent overview of the Vietnam War showing the mission of the American armed forces in the Republic of Vietnam. The film depicts both the fighting on the battlefield, and the struggle to win the support of the people.

3. Documentary

1311. *Hearts and Minds*. Color, one hundred and twelve minutes, director Peter Davis (1974).

This is an Oscar-winning documentary film examining the Vietnam War and American psyche. The director manages to contrast American ideals with the reality of war. American policy-makers, veterans, and Vietnamese leaders are interviewed.

1312. *Inside North Vietnam*. Color, ninety minutes, director Felix Greene, Grove Press (1968).

Life in North Vietnam and how the country is organized for war, is depicted in this film. North Vietnamese prime minister Pham Van Dong is interviewed.

1313. *Interviews with My Lai Veterans*. Twenty-seven minutes, New Yorker Films (1971).

Five veterans of the My Lai massacre are interviewed in this film.

1314. “Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 1: The Roots of War.” Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

The first of 13 episodes, this one examines the French colonial domination of Vietnam through the rise of Ho Chi Minh. The footage shows how Ho, flanked by American officials, declared independence in Hanoi only to have this negated by British support of the French effort to regain control.

1315. “Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 2: The First Vietnam War, 1946–1954.” Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

How the Viet Minh, led by Ho Chi Minh, eventually oust the French from Indochina with the stunning French defeat at Dien Bien Phu. Along with the loss of China, and the Korean War, the U.S. viewed the events in Vietnam as part of the Cold War and, although impatient with the French, increased aid to them. This episode ends with the 1954 Geneva Conference and the temporary division of the country.

1316. “Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 3: America’s Mandarin, 1954–63.” Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

Religious differences result from the division of the country. Catholics and the pro-French flee to the South where Ngo Dinh Diem has become president with American support. The emergence of the National Liberation Front (NLF), U.S. advisors, and the Diem coup of 1963 are also viewed.

1317. “Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 4: LBJ Goes to War, 1964–65.” Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

Events in Vietnam, from Kennedy's assassination in 1963, through the series of coups in Saigon, are seen in this episode. The Tonkin Gulf incidents, which precipitated retaliatory raids on North Vietnam in 1964, and the landing of the Marines at Da Nang in 1965, are shown.

1318. "Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 5: America Takes Charge, 1965–1967." Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

Footage of the large-scale American ground operations such as "Cedar Falls," are shown in this episode.

1319. "Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 6: With America's Enemy, 1954–1967." Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

The war as seen through the eyes of the followers of Ho Chi Minh and those who opposed them – American soldiers and POWs. It describes the fighting qualities and behavior of America's enemy.

1320. "Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 7: Tet, 1968." Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

One of the major turning points in the war for the U.S., the Tet Offensive of 1968, is covered in this episode. Coming at a time when the Americans believed that they were winning the war, the defeat suffered during Tet caused Washington to reconsider the struggle and President Johnson not to seek reelection.

1321. "Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 8: Vietnamizing the War, 1969–1973." Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

By removing itself from the war, the U.S. allowed the South Vietnamese Army to carry on the fighting. This withdrawal is viewed as well as the casualties suffered by the ARVN. The footage covers the 1972 spring offensive and the battle for Quang Tri.

1322. "Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 9: No Neutral Ground: Cambodia and Laos." Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

As South Vietnam's fate was sealed so too was that of two of her neighbors – Cambodia and Laos. The extension of the war by the U.S. into these countries hurt them severely.

1323. "Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 10: 'Peace Is at Hand.'" Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

The peace efforts of President Nixon and Henry Kissinger from 1968 to 1973, are examined in this episode. How the U.S. sought to end the war with a victory through the bombing of North Vietnam is also seen.

1324. "Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 11: Homefront U.S.A." Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

This episode examines both sides of the war at home – pro and con. It studies how the reporting of events in Vietnam, public opinion, and policy-making were interrelated.

1325. "Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 12: The End of the Tunnel, 1973–1975." Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

The final events of America's involvement in the Vietnam War, from Watergate and its effect upon the American presidency, to the North Vietnamese invasion of 1975, and the final collapse of South Vietnam are seen.

1326. "Vietnam: A Television History – Episode 13: Legacies." Boston: WGBH Television, 1983. 60 minutes.

The final episode views Vietnam veterans' issues including "delayed stress syndrome" and the effects of Agent Orange and the Vietnamese refugee problem. Finally, one sees the total physical destruction of the nation of Vietnam after 30 years of fighting.

1327. *Vietnam: An American Journey*. Color, 85 minutes, Richter McBride Productions (1978).

Post-war Vietnam is documented in this film produced by the first American filmmaker allowed into Vietnam after the war. This is a chronicle of his seven-week trip from Hanoi to Ho Chi Minh city (formerly Saigon).

1328. *Vietnam Requiem*. Color, fifty-eight minutes, Else, Couturie, and Korty, ABC News Special, Direct Cinema Limited (nd).

This film presents interviews with five Vietnam veterans, all decorated heroes, who have been given prison sentences.

1329. *Vietnam: The Ten Thousand Day War: A Television History*. Toronto, Ontario, Canada: Cineworld Incorporated, 1981.

A major television series of 26 half-hour programs on the Vietnam War, broadcast on Canadian television. The series features interviews with military and political policy-makers and exclusive film from Hanoi.

1330. *The World of Charlie Company*. CBS News, 1970. 60 minutes.

During the period of March to June 1970, in Vietnam and Cambodia, correspondent John Laurence followed the men of "C" Company, Second Battalion, Second Cavalry, of the First Cavalry

Division. This 60-minute documentary depicts the daily life and routine of those men and includes footage, filmed in War Zone C, northwest of Saigon. The producer was Russ Bensley.

4. Commercial

Author's note: This list of movies about the Vietnam War is nowhere close to being a complete list. This is a list of my choice of those movies considered by others, who are knowledgeable of film history, to be of significance in their portrayal of the Vietnam War. These films are listed by year of release first, and then in alphabetical order.

1331. *The Green Berets*. 1968 USA Warner Brothers-Seven Arts Color. 141 minutes. John Wayne/David Janssen.

Produced at the height of the Vietnam War this drama was the first major Hollywood production to deal with the war. The film depicts Army Special Forces – “Green Berets,” battling the Communists in the I Corps area in Vietnam.

1332. *The Boys in Company C*. 1978 USA Columbia Color. 126 minutes. Stan Shaw/Andrew Stevens.

The realization of several young Marines that the war is wrong and that atrocities are being committed.

1333. *Coming Home*. 1978 USA United Artists Color. 128 minutes. Jon Voight/Jane Fonda/Bruce Dern.

A paraplegic veteran (Voight) is being cared for by a volunteer (Fonda) and her Marine Corps officer husband (Dern), and the interrelationship between them.

1334. *The Deer Hunter*. 1978 USA Universal Color. 183 minutes. Robert De Niro/Christopher Walken/Meryl Streep.

How the Vietnam War affected the lives of a group of people in a small American industrial town, with flashbacks to Vietnam.

1335. *Go Tell the Spartans*. 1978 USA Avco-Embassy Color. 114 minutes. Burt Lancaster.

American military advisors, in Vietnam, prior to the large-scale commitment of troops, are depicted in this film. Based upon the book *Incident at Muc Wa* by Daniel Ford.

1336. *Apocalypse Now*. 1979 USA United Artists-Zoetrope Color. 153 minutes. Marlon Brando/Robert Duvall/Martin Sheen.

A mission up the Mekong River (Sheen) to find an American officer (Brando) who has become a renegade warrior-poet, is depicted in this dark film of the war.

1337. *Platoon*. 1986 USA Hemdale Color. 120 minutes. Tom Berenger/Willem Dafoe/Martin Sheen.

One young soldier's (Sheen) tour of duty in Vietnam, is depicted in this brutal film where he has to serve under two diametrically opposed sergeants (Berenger and Dafoe).

1338. *Full Metal Jacket*. 1987 USA Warner Brothers Color. 118 minutes. Matthew Modine/R. Lee Ermey/Adam Baldwin.

An extremely realistic depiction of Marine Corps basic training then fast-forwards to Vietnam and the Tet Offensive, 1968, in the city of Hue.

1339. *Good Morning Vietnam*. 1987 USA Touchstone Pictures Color. 125 minutes. Robin Williams/Forest Whitaker.

Vietnam 1965 and newly arrived radio broadcaster (Williams) is assigned to the AFN (Armed Forces Network) in Saigon. The conflict between his style of broadcasting and what the military expects it to be is described.

1340. *Hamburger Hill*. 1987 USA RKO Pictures Color. 110 minutes. Don Cheadle/Anthony Barille.

Set in 1969 Vietnam, elements of the 101st Airborne Division confront the Viet Cong in the bloody battle for Hamburger Hill.

1341. *We Were Soldiers*. 2002 USA Paramount Pictures Color. 138 minutes. Mel Gibson/Sam Elliott/Madeleine Stowe.

Lieutenant Colonel Hal Moore (Gibson) and 400 fathers, brothers, husbands, and sons, all soldiers, are surrounded by 4,000 North Vietnamese soldiers. The ensuing battle was one of the bloodiest of the entire war.

E. Pictorial Records

1342. Boettcher, Thomas D. *Vietnam: The Valor and the Sorrow: From the Home Front to the Front Lines in Words and Pictures*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1985. 495 pp.

A profusely illustrated history of the Vietnam War, beginning with the French colonial empire in Indochina, proceeding through the U.S. involvement in the Vietnam War. Over 500 black and white

photographs of the war, at home and on the battlefield in Vietnam, are included.

1343. Bonds, Ray, ed. *The Vietnam War: The Illustrated History of the Conflict in Southeast Asia*. New York: Crown Publishers, Incorporated, 1979. 245 pp.

A profusely illustrated history of the Vietnam War, from the French involvement through American involvement, up to 1978. The work provides an excellent chronology and a list of all of the key individuals involved in the war, with brief descriptions.

1344. Duncan, David Douglas. *I Protest!* New York: The New American Library, 1968. Unpaged.

The noted photographer, and author of *War Without Heroes*, focuses on the events surrounding the siege at Khe Sanh in 1968. Excellent photographs, accompanied by narrative, protest the U.S. conduct of the war in Vietnam.

1345. ——. *War Without Heroes*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1970. 252 pp.

This large photo-essay is devoted, primarily, to the war in Vietnam during the period of 1967–68. Duncan was there on assignment for *Life Magazine*. The work contains little narrative and lets the photographs speak for themselves. Excellent pictorials of Con Thien and Khe Sanh show what it was like to be there. Truly worth the time to examine.

1346. Faas, Horst, and Tim Page, eds. *Requiem: By the Photographers Who Died in Vietnam and Indochina*. New York: Random House, 1997. 336 pp.

This oversized illustrated history of the war is replete with both color and black and white photographs. Biographical sketches of those photographers who covered the war – and were killed, are included. The editors also include those photographers who covered the Communist side as well. This is a stunning work.

1347. Goldstein, Donald M., Katherine V. Dillon, and J. Michael Wenger. *The Vietnam War: The Story and Photographs*. Washington, D.C.: Brassey's, Incorporated, "America Goes To War" series, Vol. 5, 1997. 179 pp.

As the title indicates this is an illustrated (black and white) history of the Vietnam War, from the beginning to the end. The last chapter, "Aftermath," looks at Vietnam today (1997).

1348. Jury, Mark. *The Vietnam Photo Book*. New York: Grossman Publishers, 1971. 160 pp.

This book of photographs from Vietnam, includes many pictures of soldiers, other symbols of the U.S. presence in South Vietnam, and the devastation and waste of the war.

1349. *Larry Burrows: Compassionate Photographer*. By the editors of *Life*. New York: Time-Life Books, 1972. Unpaged.

Larry Burrows was a photographer for *Life Magazine* and this is a collection of his work, especially his coverage of the Vietnam War. There are many poignant photographs throughout this work and a majority are in color. Mr. Burrows died in a helicopter crash in 1971, during the South Vietnamese invasion of Laos.

1350. McCullin, Don. *Hearts of Darkness*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Incorporated, 1980. 156 pp.

This photo-essay includes pictures of war from Vietnam, the Congo, Biafra, and Cyprus. Twenty of the large black and white photos are of American Marines fighting in Hue during the 1968 Tet Offensive.

1351. McJunkin, James, and Max Crace. *Visions of Vietnam*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1983. 250 pp.

This work presents the Vietnam War in photographs and drawings, by two who experienced it firsthand. The book is divided into three sections: "The War Machine," "The Civilians," and "The Grunts." Crace is an artist and a contributor to the U.S. Air Force's Combat Art Program. McJunkin was a combat journalist with the 101st Airborne Division.

1352. Mesko, Jim. *U.S. Infantry – Vietnam*. Carrollton, Texas: Squadron/Signal Publications, 1983. 50 pp.

This brief work is a photo-narrative of the ground troops in Vietnam.

1353. Mills, Nick. *The Vietnam Experience: Combat Photographer*. Vol. 8. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1983. 176 pp.

This volume, in the *Vietnam Experience* series, depicts Vietnam in all of its aspects, through the lenses of military combat photographers. It is an excellent pictorial record of life in the field, the people and places of Vietnam, and the face of war.

1354. Page, Tim. *Another Vietnam: Pictures of the War From the Other Side*. Washington, D.C.: National Geographic, 2002. 240 pp.

As the title indicates, this is a profusely illustrated work about the Vietnam War, from the perspective of those who opposed the U.S. – primarily the North Vietnamese and the Viet Cong. Stunning photos of the military effort against the United States make this a work to look at.

1355. ——. *Tim Page's NAM*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Incorporated, 1983. 112 pp.

Many excellent photographs (some in color) highlight this work on the war in Vietnam. The introduction to this book was written by William Shawcross. This work is a very good pictorial record of what Vietnam was like.

1356. Pickerell, James. *Vietnam in the Mud*. Indianapolis, Indiana: Bobbs-Merrill Company, Incorporated, 1966. 129 pp.

Pickerell was a freelance photographer in Vietnam. This is a collection of his work.

1357. Pilger, John. *The Last Day*. New York: Vintage Books, Random House, 1976. 117 pp.

The author, an Australian correspondent, was among the last to depart from Vietnam at the end of the war. This photo-narrative recalls the final 48 hours of the United States in Vietnam.

F. Music

1358. Andresen, Lee. *Battle Notes: Music of the Vietnam War*. Superior, Wisconsin: Savage Press, 2000. 200 pp.

From the famous to the obscure, the author has assembled a complete list of the music from the Vietnam War era. Musicians, such as Jimi Hendrix, and groups like the Doors and the Animals – and many others are included in this work. Andresen includes over 180 songs in this work. If you are looking to find what was popular during the 1960s and 1970s with the troops in Vietnam, look in this book.

1359. *In Country: Folk Songs of Americans in the Vietnam War*. Compact Disc, Recorded by Flying Fish Records, Chicago, 1991.

This compact disc has a collection of 27 recordings written by servicemen of the Vietnam War. The songs describe these individuals' experiences during the war.

1360. Dane, Barbara, and Irwin Silber, eds. *The Vietnam Songbook*. New York: Monthly Review Press, 1969. 223 pp.

Songs and music of the Vietnam War have been compiled in this illustrated work. There are over 100 anti-war, and protest movement, songs.

1361. Daniels, Charlie. "Still in Saigon." Epic Records, "A Decade of Hits" Album, 1981.

This popular hit song by the “Charlie Daniels Band,” is about a Vietnam veteran who is still affected by the war.

1362. Joel, Billy. “Goodnight Saigon.” Columbia Records, “The Nylon Curtain” Album, 1982.

The artist wrote this song for many of his friends who had served in Vietnam, as a tribute to their service.

1363. Johnson, Sandee Shaffer, ed. *Cadences: The Jody Call Book, Number 1*. Canton, Ohio: Daring Books, 1983. 152 pp.

An extensive collection of old and new cadences used by the United States military. A brief history of the “Jody Call” is included.

1364. Wonder, Stevie. “Front Line.” Disques Vogue, France, “Original Musiquarium” Album, 1982.

This song is about a Vietnam veteran who enlisted in the Army in 1964, went to Vietnam and lost a leg.

Author's note: Like films, currently, there are more songs about the Vietnam War available. However, I have not included them partly because of the obscure nature of the recording company that may have produced an album or song, or the relative unknown status of the artist.

G. Art

1365. Altman, First Lieutenant Michael J. *United States Army Ninth Infantry Division Combat Art and Photography 1966–1967*. Tokyo: Institute of Foreign Exchange and Trade Research, 1967. 60 pp.

A collection of drawings, paintings, and photographs prepared by members of the Ninth Infantry Division in Vietnam from 1966 to 1967.

1366. *Combat Art of the 25th Infantry “Tropic Lightning” Division*. 5 vols. Vol. 1, 1966; Tokyo: Toshio Printing Company, 1966, 48 pp; Vol. 2, np, nd; Vol. 3, 1968, Tokyo: Dai Nippon Printing Company, Limited, np; Vol. 4, 1968, Tokyo: Dai Nippon Printing Company, Limited, np, Vol. 5, 1969, Tokyo: Dai Nippon Printing Company, Limited, np.

Collections of watercolors, oils, inks, charcoal drawings, and paintings by members of the Twenty-Fifth Infantry Division in Vietnam.

1367. Goldfarb, First Lieutenant Stephan. *Ninth Infantry Division Combat Art Vietnam 1969*. np, nd. 52 pp.

This work shows Vietnam as depicted in the art and photographs of members of the Ninth Infantry Division during 1969.

1368. Henri, Colonel Raymond. USMCR. *Vietnam Combat Art*. New York: Cavanagh and Cavanagh, 1968. np.
- A collection of drawings and paintings by U.S. Marine Corps artists, both in color and black and white. Text accompanying the artwork is by Colonel Henri.
1369. Kutscheid, First Lieutenant Timothy. *Ninth Infantry Division Vietnam 1968 Combat Art*. Tokyo: Dai Nippon Printing Company, Limited, 1968. 56 pp.
- Vietnam during the year of the Tet Offensive, as seen by artists and photographers of the Ninth Infantry Division.
1370. McBarron, H. Charles. "The American Soldier 1963." Department of the Army. Office, Chief of Military History, Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1965.
- Plate Ten in this second set of paintings, commissioned by the U.S. Army Chief of Military History, depicts the field dress of a Lieutenant, a Sergeant, and a Private, in the 82nd Airborne, and a Women's Army Corps officer. In the print the soldiers are carrying M-14 rifles.
1371. —. "The American Soldier, 1965." Department of the Army. Office, Chief of Military History, Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1969.
- Plate Ten in the third set in the series depicts officers and enlisted men of the First Cavalry Division (Airmobile) and the Fifth Special Forces Group, boarding a CH-47A (Chinook) helicopter. This color print shows the weapons and equipment carried by soldiers of the U.S. Army, in Vietnam, *circa* 1965.
1372. —. "The American Soldier, 1975." Department of the Army. Office, Chief of Military History, Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1976.
- Plate Ten in the fourth set depicts "Operation New Life," for Vietnamese refugees being evacuated from South Vietnam in the summer of 1975. The plate shows both male and female members of the Army Nurse Corps.
1373. *Vietnam Combat Art*. New York: Cavanagh and Cavanagh, 1968. 86 pp.
- Selections from the Marine Corps Combat Art Collection are presented in this large format book. Most are done in black and white with the emphasis on the Marines in Vietnam. Explanatory captions accompany each selection.

1374. Waterhouse, Charles. *Vietnam Sketchbook: Drawings from Delta to DMZ*. Rutland, Vermont: Charles E. Tuttle Company, 1970. 128 pp.
A collection of black and white sketches, set in the area from the Mekong Delta to the DMZ during 1967. A brief explanatory statement accompanies each sketch.
1375. ——. *Vietnam War Sketches: From the Air, Land, and Sea*. Rutland, Vermont: Charles E. Tuttle Company, 1970. 126 pp.
As the title states this book contains a collection of sketches depicting the war in Vietnam from three different perspectives: air, land, and sea.

H. Humor and Caricature

1376. Foster, Tad. *The Vietnam Funny Book: An Antidote to Insanity*. San Rafael, California: Presidio Press, 1981. 100 pp.
Cartoon drawings with captions about Vietnam provide a different, more humorous, look at the war.
1377. Trudeau, G. B. *But This War Had Such Promise*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1971. 100 pp.
This work reprints a collection from the popular “Doonesbury” cartoon series. It includes cartoons about Kent State, race relations, politics, the war, and other subjects.

I. Other

1378. Terry, Megan. *Viet Rock, Comings and Goings, Keep Tightly Closed in a Cool Dry Place, The Gloaming Oh My Darling, Four Plays*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1967. 282 pp.
Four plays of the Vietnam War era, with the musical scores, are contained in this work.

IX

The Domestic Impact of the Vietnam War

A. General

1379. Anderson, David L., ed. *The Human Tradition in the Vietnam War*. Wilmington, Delaware: Scholarly Resources Incorporated, 2000. 237 pp.

A collection of short, biographical sketches (12), representing broad and diverse views of America and Vietnam. This collection provides a very good overview relevant to the entire period of U.S. involvement in Vietnam.

1380. Bachman, Jerald G., and M. Kent Jennings. "The Impact of Vietnam on Trust in Government." *Journal of Social Issues* 31:4 (1975), pp. 141-55.

Using data collected from two nationwide studies of young males, the authors observe that trust in the U.S. government declined during the late 1960s and early 1970s.

1381. Boyer, William W., ed. *Issues 1968*. Lawrence, Kansas: The University Press of Kansas, 1968. 139 pp.

Several lectures, given by various individuals, have been collected in this work. Included is one by Robert Kennedy concerning "Conflict in Vietnam and at Home," delivered on March 18, 1968. Kennedy states that he was involved in many of the early decisions on Vietnam and that he was "willing to bear my share of the responsibility. . . ." Kennedy goes on to say "past error is no excuse

for its own perpetuation.” He then asks his audience to begin working for new policies in order to change the direction of leadership in the U.S.

1382. Colby, William, and Peter Forbath. *Honorable Men: My Life in the CIA*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1978. 493 pp.

Former director William Colby tells the history of the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA), from the Second World War to post-Vietnam. A significant portion of the work details intelligence activities in Southeast Asia. Also, events in Laos and the “Phoenix Program” are discussed.

1383. Franks, Lucinda. *Waiting Out a War: The Exile of Private John Picciano*. New York: Coward, McCann and Geohegan, Incorporated, 1974. 222 pp.

The true story of the desertion of Private John Picciano, from the Army, in 1967. This is a well-written, readable account of why many young men deserted or refused to serve in the U.S. military, opting instead for self-imposed exile in foreign countries.

1384. Garrett, Stephen A. *Ideals and Reality: An Analysis of the Debate Over Vietnam*. Washington, D.C.: University Press of America, 1978. 243 pp.

The debate over the war through selected speeches, books, and articles, from the period 1965 to 1968, is presented by the author in this work. Garrett establishes why people took the positions they did on the Vietnam War.

1385. Grant, Zalin. *Facing the Phoenix: The CIA and the Political Defeat of the United States in Vietnam*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 1991. 395 pp.

The author spent a total of five years in Vietnam writing for *Time* and *The New Republic*. He also speaks Vietnamese thus he was able to gain insight through his varied contacts. He presents material relevant to the U.S. attempts to aid the Vietnamese. Yet, corrupt South Vietnamese government officials, in Saigon, caused the programs to fail.

1386. Hamilton, Michael P., ed. *The Vietnam War: Christian Perspectives*. Grand Rapids, Michigan: William R. Eerdmans Publishing Company, 1967. 140 pp.

This is an edited collection of sermons, presented by noted clergymen, on the Vietnam War. Each sermon was preached at the Washington National Cathedral. Both American and international perspectives on the war are given from the Christian point of view.

1387. Joseph, Paul. *Cracks in the Empire: State Politics in the Vietnam War*. Boston: South End Press, 1981. 350 pp.

Joseph states that the Vietnam War was “first and foremost the story of heroic resistance of a poor country against the efforts of the U.S. to control it, politically and economically.” According to him, the primary focus of this work is to analyze the political decisions made, and the events which occurred, between August 1967 and March 1968.

1388. Kastenmeier, Honorable Robert W. *Vietnam Hearings: Voices from the Grass Roots*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1966. 160 pp.

A transcript of testimony given at the “Hearing on the War in Vietnam, July 30–31, 1965,” in Madison, Wisconsin. A group of congressmen, including the author, requested the House Foreign Affairs Committee to hold public hearings on the U.S. involvement in Vietnam and they were refused. Consequently, “grass roots” hearings were held. The testimony, included in this book, illustrates a diversity of American public opinion about Vietnam in 1965.

1389. Kendrick, Alexander. *The Wound Within: America in the Vietnam Years, 1945–1974*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1974. 432 pp.

This popular social history focuses on the internal impact of the Vietnam War on America. This was the first such survey to cover material, through the Paris accords of 1973. The author portrays the climate of the 1960s as one of fear, suspicion, uncertainty, political ills, and public scorn bred through “indifference, ignorance, moral righteousness, unwillingness to confess error, and . . . arrogance.”

1390. Lang, Daniel. *Patriotism Without Flags*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1974. 229 pp.

An examination of how the war in Vietnam affected individual views of patriotism as well as those of the nation as a whole. One chapter deals with the possible use of nuclear weapons in Vietnam. Lang concludes that the U.S. military performance in Southeast Asia left many people pondering the meaning of their nation.

1391. Langguth, A. J. *Our Vietnam: The War 1954–1975*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2000. 766 pp.

The author was a correspondent for *The New York Times* and also served as the Bureau Chief in Saigon. He provides an excellent list, termed the “Cast of Characters,” who were predominant in Southeast Asia, the United States, China, and the U.S.S.R., during the

Vietnam War. His concluding paragraph is prophetic as he writes “North Vietnam’s leaders had deserved to win. South Vietnam’s leaders had deserved to lose. And America’s leaders, for thirty years, had failed the people of the North, the people of the South, and the people of the United States.”

1392. Levitas, Mitchel. *America in Crisis*. New York: A Ridge Press Book, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1969. 192 pp.

A pictorial essay, with commentary, concerning events, trends, and feelings of the American people during the Vietnam War era. Included is a section entitled “The Unwanted War” concerning American involvement in Vietnam.

1393. Levy, David W. *The Debate Over Vietnam*. 2nd ed. Baltimore, Maryland: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 1995. 229 pp.

This treatise looks at the bitter debate, which divided a nation, over the war in Vietnam and the U.S. involvement. This national debate is presented through the eyes of American citizens, on both sides: the intellectual split between left and right, the position of labor, the impact of university faculty and student protests, and Hollywood.

1394. O’Neill, William L. *Coming Apart: An Informal History of America in the 1960’s*. Chicago: Quadrangle Books, 1971. 468 pp.

A social history of America spanning the 1960s in which the author discusses the Eisenhower, Kennedy, Johnson, and Nixon administrations. He also discusses the Vietnam War and other concerns of the times.

1395. Powers, Thomas. *The War at Home: Vietnam and the American People, 1964–1968*. New York: Grossman Publishers, 1973. 348 pp.

Why did President Johnson turn from a policy of escalation to a policy of disengagement in Vietnam? The author raises this question and bases his work on the premise that opposition at home, and within the administration, forced the president to do so. It is a good account of the tumultuous times of 1964 to 1968.

1396. Shultz, Richard H., Jr. *The Secret War Against Hanoi: Kennedy’s and Johnson’s Use of Spies, Saboteurs, and Covert Warriors in North Vietnam*. New York: HarperCollins Publishers, Incorporated, 1999. 408 pp.

The “Studies and Observation Group” (SOG), created in 1964, became a highly secret organization. Dissatisfied with the CIA’s attempts at covert operations, first Kennedy, then Johnson, and finally Nixon, utilized this group to conduct their “secret” war until

1972. During the eight years in which the SOG flourished, they resorted to all types of psychological warfare, kidnapped citizens, ambushed enemy soldiers along the Ho Chi Minh trail, and other activities.

B. Public Opinion

1397. Lunch, William L., and Peter W. Sperlich. "American Public Opinion and the War in Vietnam." *Western Political Quarterly* 32:1 (March 1979), pp. 21-44.

American public opinion about involvement in the Vietnam War, from 1964 to 1973, is the focus of this study. Using the same question about the mistakeness of American involvement, from 1965 to 1971, and a series of questions asked by the Michigan Survey Research Center, the following periods of public opinion were determined: the "innocence" period – 1964 to mid-1965; the "give the war a chance" period – mid-1965 to spring 1966; the "support for escalation" period – mid-1966 to late 1967; and the "endorsement of withdrawal" period – 1968 to 1973.

1398. Manning, Robert, and Michael Janeway, eds. *Who We Are: An Atlantic Chronicle of the United States and Vietnam*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, Atlantic Monthly Press Book, 1969. 391 pp.

An examination of public opinion in the U.S. concerning the Vietnam War. It includes a bibliography.

1399. Mueller, John E. *War, Presidents and Public Opinion*. New York: John Wiley, 1973. 300 pp.

Mueller examines the Korean War (1950-53) and the Vietnam War (1961-73), the role of the President, and the impact of public opinion. The work is illustrated and contains a bibliography.

1400. Siselman, Lee. "The Commander in Chief and the Public: Mass Response to Johnson's March 31, 1968 Bombing Halt Speech." *Journal of Political and Military Society* 8:1 (spring 1980), pp. 1-14.

Through an examination of President Johnson's 1968 bombing-halt speech, public reaction to presidential foreign policy initiatives is analyzed. The author compares this address with Truman's 1947 proposals for aid to Greece and Turkey, Kennedy's 1963 Cuban situation, and the 1973 bombings of Laos and Cambodia by Nixon.

1401. —. "Rallying to the President's Support: A Reappraisal of the Evidence." *Polity* 11:4 (summer 1979), pp. 542-61.

The author refutes data that President Johnson's bombing-halt speech, of March 31, 1968, was the principal factor in gathering support for such a decision. He observes that presidential policy followed, rather than led, public opinion.

1402. Vogelgesang, Sandy. *The Long Dark Night of the Soul: The American Intellectual Left and the Vietnam War*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1974. 249 pp.

This work categorizes less extreme views of the left. The author describes who the people are and what they wrote. Relevant drawings, of David Levine, are reprinted from *The New York Review of Books*. There is an excellent annotated bibliography on intellectuals and their views. This work is considered to be the best to date on the subject.

C. The Draft and Conscientious Objectors

1403. Baskir, Lawrence M., and William A. Strauss. *Chance and Circumstance: The Draft, the War, and the Vietnam Generation*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Incorporated, 1978. 312 pp.

A general, comprehensive study which examines the draft, its discriminations, inequities, and unfairness. The authors have grouped their study into five categories: avoiders, evaders, deserters, exiles, and those granted amnesty. The bibliography is very good and covers the draft, deserters, and military justice. This work may increase in importance should the draft ever be reinstated.

1404. Dickerson, James. *North to Canada: Men and Women Against the Vietnam War*. Westport, Connecticut: Praeger Publishers, 1999. 199 pp.

According to the author, who quotes from Canadian government figures, between 1965 and 1973, 191,522 American men and women emigrated to Canada – legally. However, this figure does not include the thousands who fled to Canada to avoid the draft – a figure estimated to be about 500,000. This is their story. The authors' concluding paragraph sums it up best as he writes "For most Americans, the memory of the war resisters and the veterans is best forgotten, for it is a memory of the nation's darkest and most shameful hour. But for thousands of men and women who refused to serve in Vietnam – and the thousands who did serve – it is more than just the defining moment of their lives: It is the defining moment of America."

1405. Foley, Michael S. *Confronting the War Machine: Draft Resistance During the Vietnam War*. Chapel Hill, North Carolina: The University of North Carolina Press, 2003. 449 pp.

In this recent (2003) work the author selects Boston in order to present a microview of the draft resistance movement in that city, during the Vietnam War. The author makes clear the distinction between being a draft “resister” and a draft “dodger” although, in many cases, both were categorized as the latter. The work is illustrated.

1406. Hamburgh, Max. *The New Humanism: Conversations on the North Campus*. New York: Philosophical Library, 1975. 195 pp.

An examination of conscientious objectors, and other radical elements, in the U.S. during the Vietnam War, is the subject of this work. The focus of the study is upon the social aspects. The author has included bibliographical references.

1407. Kasinsky, Renee G. *Refugees from Militarism: Draft-Age Americans in Canada*. New Brunswick, New Jersey: Transaction Books, 1976. 301 pp.

Canadian aid groups, which assisted American draft evaders, are examined by the author. Material is included on various underground movements and the appendices include a questionnaire for a prospective “New Canadian” to complete.

1408. Killmer, Richard L., Robert S. Lecky, and Debrah S. Wiley. *They Can't Go Home Again: The Story of America's Political Refugees*. Philadelphia: A Pilgrim Press Book, 1971. 118 pp.

The authors seek to explain the exodus of thousands of young Americans to Canada, to evade the draft and the Vietnam War. Several resisters and deserters were interviewed during the researching of this work. A list of Canadian Aid Centers is included in the appendix.

1409. Lynd, Alice. *We Won't Go: Personal Accounts of War Objectors*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1968. 331 pp.

Accounts of individuals who conscientiously objected to military participation in the Vietnam War, have been collected in this work. The appendix is noteworthy in that it contains a reprint of the “Seeger Decision” (conscientious objector status granted on religious grounds), a copy of the application to obtain “CO” status, and documents relating to war crimes.

1410. Sanders, Jacquin. *The Draft and the Vietnam War*. New York: Walker and Company, 1966. 156 pp.

An early (1966) analysis of the draft, war protesters, and legal and illegal draft dodging, comprises this work. In the appendices is

information regarding the Vietnam era Selective Service classifications, pay scales for enlisted personnel, basic training centers, Reserve Officers Training Corps (ROTC) programs, and G.I. benefits.

1411. Sarkesian, Sam C. "Who Serves?" *Society* 18:3 (1981), pp. 57–60.

This article compares conscription, during the Vietnam War, to the systems employed by the U.S. during the two World Wars. The author examines the weaknesses and social inequities of the volunteer army and reveals the dependence upon minorities and lower-class whites.

1412. Whitmore, Terry. *Memphis – Nam – Sweden: The Autobiography of a Black American Exile*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1971. 189 pp.

From Memphis, Tennessee, to the war in Vietnam, to desertion, and a self-imposed exile in Sweden, this is the story of one man's struggle with his conscience and the war.

D. Anti-War and Peace Movements

1413. Arrowsmith, Pat, ed. *To Asia in Peace (Story of a Non-Violent Action Mission to Indo-China)*. London: Sidgwick and Jackson, 1972. 188 pp.

The attempt by a group of British citizens, the "Non-Violent Action in Vietnam (NVAV)" group, to enter North Vietnam in order to demonstrate against the war, is described by the author. A chronology of events, from 1967 to 1968, is included and the work is illustrated.

1414. Barry Jan, ed. *Peace is Our Profession*. Montclair, New Jersey: East River Anthology, 1981. 294 pp.

The title of this work is taken from the motto of the Strategic Air Command (SAC), and is purposely made ironic in that this work is an anti-war tract. This powerful anthology has many "big" names as contributors including Daniel Berrigan, Daniel Ellsberg, Gloria Emerson, and Joan Baez. Photographs and drawings illustrate the book.

1415. Berrigan, Daniel. *Night Flight to Hanoi: War Diary with 11 Poems*. New York: The Macmillan Company, 1968. 140 pp.

Father Daniel Berrigan was invited to North Vietnam as a member of the American peace movement. This is the story of his 16-day trip to North Vietnam and Laos.

1416. Boehm, Frank. *May 1970: Birth of the Antiwar University*. New York: Pathfinder Press, 1971. 62 pp.

Beginning with an eyewitness account of the events which occurred at Kent State University, this work focuses on events in May 1970, through a collection of stories and articles that appeared in the weekly socialist newspaper *The Militant*.

1417. DeBenedetti, Charles, with Charles Chatfield (Assisting Author). *An American Ordeal: The Antiwar Movement of the Vietnam Era*. Syracuse, New York: Syracuse University Press, 1990. 495 pp.

A comprehensive history of the American anti-war movement is presented in this study. The authors portray the incremental growth of the movement, from its humble beginnings across America, to the full-blown mass demonstrations of the early 1970s surrounding President Nixon and his administration. As the U.S. military commitment to Vietnam increased, so did the collective voices of the protestors. This is an important contribution to the scholarship of this aspect of the war.

1418. Dellinger, Dave. *Revolutionary Nonviolence*. Indianapolis, Indiana: The Bobbs-Merrill Company, Incorporated, 1970. 390 pp.

A collection of anti-war essays focusing, in part, on Vietnam. The work contains the transcript of Dellinger's courtroom statement before being imprisoned in 1970, on anti-riot charges.

1419. Dougan, Clark, Samuel Lipsman, and the editors of Boston Publishing Company. *The Vietnam Experience: A Nation Divided*. Vol. 11. Boston: Boston Publishing Company, 1984. 192 pp.

The anti-war movement in the U.S., the fragmentation of the American public as a result, and the polarization of public opinion against the war in Vietnam is the focus of this illustrated volume. This study culminates with the bloody, fatal shootings at Kent State University on May 4, 1970.

1420. Emerick, Kenneth Fred. *War Resister's Canada: The World of the American Military-Political Refugees*. Knox, Pennsylvania: Pennsylvania Free Press, 1972. 320 pp.

The story of those young Americans who chose to flee the U.S., to evade the draft, and go to Canada is told in this work. The author provides much "how to" information.

1421. Garfinkle, Adam. *Telltale Hearts: The Origins and Impact of the Vietnam Antiwar Movement*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1995. 370 pp.

The American tradition of dissent, as applied to the Vietnam anti-war movement, is examined in this work. The author provides an excellent review of how Americans traditionally exercise their right to protest. He takes us through the years of presidents Johnson and Nixon. Noting that the impact of dissent is felt, even today, he discusses the election of 1992 and the attacks upon then governor Bill Clinton's record of avoiding service in Vietnam.

1422. Greene, Felix. *Vietnam! Vietnam!* Palo Alto, California: Fulton Publishing Company, 1966. 175 pp.

This photo-essay presents the case against American intervention and involvement in the Vietnam War.

1423. Griffiths, Philip Jones. *Vietnam Inc.* New York: Collier-Macmillan, 1971. 223 pp.

This photo-essay is decidedly anti-American and anti-Army of the Republic of Vietnam (ARVN). Griffiths was a photographer on assignment for three years in Vietnam for *Magnum*.

1424. Halstead, Fred. *Out Now! A Participant's Account of the American Movement Against the Vietnam War.* New York: Monad Press, 1978. 759 pp.

A general compendium of information on the peace movement in the U.S. from 1960 to 1975. Halstead includes material on the "Students for a Democratic Society" (SDS), teach-ins, the national student strikes, the Vietnam Moratorium, the March Against Death (MAD), and the invasion of Cambodia. The work is illustrated with many photographs of anti-war demonstrations.

1425. Hassler, Alfred. *Saigon, U.S.A.* New York: Richard W. Baron, 1970. 291 pp.

This anti-war tract describes how the Vietnamese people were trapped between the National Liberation Front (NLF) and the military regime of Thieu and Ky. The first two pages of the book list the "sights" of Saigon, which include the locations and descriptions of places where acts of torture, imprisonment, and demonstrations occurred. The introduction for this work was written by Senator George McGovern (D-South Dakota).

1426. Heath, G. Louis, ed. *Mutiny Does Not Happen Lightly: The Literature of the American Resistance to the Vietnam War.* Metuchen, New Jersey: The Scarecrow Press, Incorporated, 1976. 597 pp.

Literature of the various opposition groups to the Vietnam War has been collected in this single volume on the subject of resistance.

Organized chronologically from 1964 to 1974, the work contains reprints of most of the important anti-war and anti-draft literature of that period. The editor has included an excellent bibliography. This work represents a barometer of the Vietnam era on American college campuses.

1427. Hoffman, Paul. *Moratorium: An American Protest*. New York: Tower Publications, 1970. 205 pp.

The author recalls the massive peace demonstrations conducted on October 15 and November 15, 1969.

1428. Horowitz, Irving Louis. *The Struggle is the Message: The Organization and Ideology of the Anti-War Movement*. Berkeley, California: The Glendessary Press, 1970. 175 pp.

Written in two parts, this is a preliminary examination of the anti-war movement and the connection between social movements and political organizations. The first part deals with the liberal view and the second part conveys the radical view. Four tables on anti-war demonstrations contain information on the dates, occurrence, and outcomes.

1429. Jeffreys-Jones, Rhodri. *Peace Now! American Society and the Ending of the Vietnam War*. New Haven, Connecticut: Yale University Press, 1999. 308 pp.

The author explores the grass roots peace movement, beginning in 1965, through President Nixon's "Peace With Honor" plan, to the war's end. The author looks at the impact of specific groups upon the efforts to end the war. These groups include students, African-Americans, women, and labor. The work provides insight to the combined efforts of all these groups to ultimately force a peace.

1430. Kerry, John, and Vietnam Veterans Against the War. *The New Soldier*. New York: The Macmillan Company, 1971. 174 pp.

This is a photo-essay of the Vietnam Veterans Against the War (VVAW) "March on Washington," held on April 18, 1971. The narrative tells their story in their own words. A profile study of dissenters is found in the appendix.

1431. Leber, Lieutenant Commander Theodore T., Jr. USN. "The Genesis of Anti-militarism on the College Campus: A Contemporary Case Study of Student Protest." *Naval War College Review* 23:3 (November 1970), pp. 58-99.

An in-depth study which analyzes the student protests of the 1960s and the feelings of antimilitarism brought on by the prolonged and

questioned efforts in Vietnam. According to the author, the precipitating factors were the generation gap, university authoritarianism, and the new left.

1432. McCarthy, Mary. *The Seventeenth Degree*. New York: Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovich, Incorporated, 1974. 451 pp.

Four anti-war tracts by the author, comprise this work. The essays are: "Vietnam," "Hanoi," "Medina," and "Sons of the Morning." The essay on Medina includes information on the My Lai massacre, Lieutenant Calley, and Captain Medina.

1433. McGrady, Mike. *A Dove in Vietnam*. New York: Funk and Wagnalls, 1968. 245 pp.

A writer for *Newsday*, the author presents the viewpoint of American doves and pacifists regarding the Vietnam War, based upon his personal experiences in Vietnam. Thirty-seven methods for the U.S. to get out of Vietnam are listed in the appendices. These suggestions include everything from complete withdrawal to nuclear war.

1434. Schmitz, Honorable John G. *The Viet Cong Front in the United States*. Belmont, Massachusetts: Western Islands, 1971. 236 pp.

This report first appeared in the April 21, 1971 issue of the *Congressional Record*. The congressman prepared it in collaboration with colleagues to document the activities and involvement of Communist factions within the peace movement in the United States.

1435. Small, Melvin. *Johnson, Nixon, and the Doves*. New Brunswick, New Jersey: Rutgers University Press, 1989. 319 pp.

The author offers us a description of how the anti-war movement affected American public opinion and how the power of those protests ultimately affected the decisions of our government. He begins with the rise of dissent (1964), through the major years of protest, to the war winding down (1970-75).

1436. *Vietnam Primer*. San Francisco, California: Ramparts, 1966. 97 pp.

Seven reprints of articles which appeared in *Ramparts*, during 1965-66, comprise this brief work. There is an interview with Senator Frank Church along with articles by Robert Scheer and Bernard B. Fall. This work clearly outlines the anti-war point of view concerning Vietnam.

1437. Wells, Tom. *The War Within: America's Battle over Vietnam*. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1994. 706 pp.

An in-depth analysis of the anti-war movement in the U.S., with its beginnings in 1965. Wells works through the demise of President Johnson, and the turbulent years of the Nixon administration. That the impact of their collective voices was being heard is evidenced by Admiral Thomas Moorer, Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, in the Nixon administration, who said "The reaction of the noisy radical groups was considered all the time. And it served to inhibit and restrain the decision makers."

E. Economic Aspects

1438. Campagna, Anthony S. *The Economic Consequences of the Vietnam War*. New York: Praeger Publishers, 1991. 176 pp.

As stated in the title this work is a study of the economic consequences of the war in Vietnam upon the American economy. Divided into three parts, the book looks at the background of American involvement in the first part, the effect of war on the American economy during the Johnson and Nixon administrations, and a basic financial accounting makes up the last part.

1439. Hamilton-Peterson, James. *The Greedy War (a Very Personal War)*. New York: David McKay Company, Incorporated, 1971. 278 pp.

The black market and corruption in Vietnam, are the subjects of this story. In the appendix are copies of letters written to various American ambassadors, describing the corruption and black market activities in Vietnam. A glossary of abbreviations is included.

1440. Riddell, Thomas Allen. "A Political Economy of the American War in IndoChina: Its Costs and Consequences." Ph.D. dissertation, American University, 1975. 488 pp.

A detailed analysis of the cost of American involvement in the Vietnam War, is the focus of this doctoral dissertation. The author examines the economic impact of the war on Vietnam as well. An excellent bibliography is included.

F. War Crimes

1441. Bain, David Howard. *Aftershocks: A Tale of Two Victims*. New York: Methuen, Incorporated, 1980. 320 pp.

Bain tells the true story of the killing of a Vietnamese refugee by a Marine veteran – Louis Kahan, who thinks, upon encountering the young girl, that he is back in Saigon, only to rape and strangle her. Bain describes how Kahan had become a prisoner to his past.

1442. Berry, John Stevens. *Those Gallant Men: on Trial in Vietnam, 1968–69*. Novato, California: Presidio Press, 1984. 228 pp.

The author was an Army lawyer in Vietnam and in this work he describes the task of defending men accused of crimes ranging from rape to “fragging” officers, from desertion to murder. Berry was the defense counsel in the widely covered “Green Beret” case. The work is illustrated.

1443. Bilton, Michael, and Kevin Sim. *Four Hours in My Lai*. New York: Viking Penguin, 1992. 430 pp.

The authors detail the events of March 16, 1968, and what occurred during four hours in the village of My Lai. As of the date of publication (1992) this was the United States’ most infamous war crime. According to the authors the question of responsibility was the most significant topic about this case. The work is illustrated.

1444. Browning, Frank, and Dorothy Forman, eds. *The Wasted Nations*. International Commission of Inquiry into United States Crimes in Indochina. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1972. 346 pp.

A collection of reports of the International Commission of Inquiry of June 20–25, 1971, on war crimes committed by the United States in Vietnam.

1445. Citizens Commission of Inquiry. *Dellums Committee Hearings on War Crimes in Vietnam*. New York: Vintage Press, 1972. 335 pp.

A transcript of the investigation conducted by the Dellums Committee (Congressman Ron Dellums, D-California) on supposed war crimes committed in Vietnam.

1446. Falk, Richard. “Song My: War Crimes and Individual Responsibility, A Legal Memorandum.” *Trans-Action* 7:3 (1970), pp. 33–40.

Using the example of Song My, Falk contends that Americans should punish those leaders who issue orders for incidents such as Song My, as well as penalize those soldiers who carried out their orders. This includes political leaders who had knowledge of such activities. The author examines responsibility for American war crimes in the Vietnam War. Falk urges people to investigate American behavior in Vietnam, to determine what makes an individual a potential war criminal.

1447. Gershen, Martin. *Destroy or Die: The True Story of My Lai*. New Rochelle, New York: Arlington House, 1971. 325 pp.

The entire tragic story of My Lai is recalled in this work. The author looks at why the members of Lieutenant Calley’s unit reacted

in the way they did. Gershen is sympathetic with the reaction of the men who were under considerable strain.

1448. Goldstein, Joseph, Burke Marshall, and Jack Schwartz. *The My Lai Massacre and Its Cover-Up: Beyond the Reach of Law?* New York: The Free Press, 1976. 586 pp.

Complete, detailed information of the gruesome events that transpired at My Lai, coupled with the findings of Lieutenant General William R. Peers, in the inquiry into the My Lai massacre of March 1968, makes this an important work. A glossary of terms and acronyms is provided and opinions are rendered on other American war crimes in the supplement. Maps of the area are included.

1449. Greenhaw, Wayne. *The Making of a Hero: The Story of Lieut. [sic] William Calley Jr.* Louisville, Kentucky: Touchstone Publishing Company, 1971. 226 pp.

The author of this work was the reporter who first uncovered the My Lai story. In this book he describes the life and military career of Lieutenant Calley – including a vivid description of My Lai.

1450. Hammer, Richard. *One Morning in the War: The Tragedy at Son My.* New York: Coward-McCann, Incorporated, 1970. 207 pp.

The tragic massacre of Vietnamese civilians by U.S. Army soldiers, at Son My (My Lai), on March 16, 1968, is examined in this book. Hammer seeks to explain why an atrocity such as this could be committed by troops sent to protect and defend a people – not to slaughter them. The chapter titled “The Ultimate Responsibility” suggests that it was not the fault of any one individual, but that such an act was endemic to the American military commitment in Vietnam.

1451. Hart, Lieutenant Colonel Franklin A. USA. “Yamashita, Nuremberg and Vietnam: Command Responsibility Reappraised.” *Naval War College Review* 25:1 (September–October 1972), pp. 19–36.

In this article the author refutes the thesis of Telford Taylor (U.S. prosecutor at Nuremberg) who claimed that General Westmoreland was responsible for battlefield tragedies such as My Lai. Three conclusions are drawn: first, the so-called “Yamashita Principle” does not legally exist; second, the Nuremberg trials established a standard of responsibility that demanded proof of negligence; and third, U.S. military actions, in Vietnam, were backed by a “solid defense policy, deeds, and intent.”

1452. Hersh, Seymour. *Cover-Up.* New York: Random House, 1972. 305 pp.

The story of the cover-up of the events surrounding the My Lai massacre and Lieutenant Calley, is told in this work.

1453. ——. *My Lai 4: A Report on the Massacre and its Aftermath*. New York: Random House, 1970. 210 pp.

Hersh describes in detail the My Lai Massacre of March 16, 1968, during the Communist Tet Offensive, and the events which followed.

1454. Knoll, Erwin, and Judith Nies McFadden, eds. *War Crimes and the American Conscience*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1970. 208 pp.

This work is the edited transcript of the Congressional Conference on War and National Responsibility, conducted in Washington in 1970. Supplementary materials are provided by the participants. Contained herein are discussions on points of law, morality and war, American technology and power, the events at My Lai, and individual conscience. Many notable individuals participated in the conference including William Corson, Daniel Ellsberg, Richard Falk, Robert Lifton, George McGovern, Jonathan Schell, and Telford Taylor.

1455. Kunen, James Simon. *Standard Operating Procedure: Notes of a Draft-Age American*. New York: Avon Books, 1971. 381 pp.

A personal narrative concerning the Citizens Commission of Inquiry into War Crimes in Vietnam. Kunen explains how American policies in Vietnam led to war crimes such as My Lai.

1456. Lane, Mark. *Conversations with Americans: Testimony from 32 Vietnam Veterans*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1970. 247 pp.

A collection of personal narratives of war atrocities committed by Americans in Vietnam. Although what happened at My Lai was real, the accounts recalled in this work have been seriously challenged by journalist Neil Sheehan.

1457. Lang, Daniel. *Casualties of War*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1969. 121 pp.

A brief, but compelling story of an Army soldier who reported an atrocity committed by the four other members of his five-man reconnaissance patrol in November 1966, in the Central Highlands of South Vietnam. Lang describes the incident, the ensuing court-martials, and the impact.

1458. McCarthy, Mary. *Medina*. New York: Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovich, 1972. 88 pp.

The author details the trial of U.S. Army Captain Ernest L. Medina in this very brief pamphlet. Medina was the company commander of Lieutenant Calley at My Lai.

1459. Melman, Seymour. *In the Name of America: The Conduct of the War in Vietnam by the Armed Forces of the United States as Shown by Published Reports, Compared with the Laws of War Binding on the United States Government and on its Citizens*. New York: Clergy and Laymen Concerned About Vietnam, 1968. 421 pp.

War crimes and atrocities committed by American troops in Vietnam are examined in this study. Areas of concern that are addressed include the treatment of POWs, the indiscriminate killing of civilians, hardships inflicted upon civilians, and inadequate attempts to alleviate those hardships.

1460. Peers, William R. *The My Lai Inquiry*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1979. 306 pp.

Lieutenant General Peers conducted the Army investigation into the tragic episode known as the My Lai Massacre. This is his account of those events and the subsequent investigation.

1461. Russell, Bertrand. *War Crimes in Vietnam*. London: George Allen and Unwin Limited, 1967. 178 pp.

Written by the eminent scholar, this anti-war work clearly states that the war in Vietnam is the responsibility of the United States. Moreover, he claims that it is the racism of the West, especially the U.S., which has created an atmosphere in which it is unclear what the responsibilities of the U.S. are. In essence, this short work is a condemnation of the American conduct of the war effort in Vietnam.

1462. Sack, John. *Lieutenant Calley/His Own Story*. New York: The Viking Press, 1970. 181 pp.

Following a lengthy interview with Lieutenant Calley, Sack presents his story of the events which occurred at My Lai, the investigation, and the subsequent court-martial.

1463. Sartre, Jean-Paul. *On Genocide*. Translated by *Ramparts* Magazine, Incorporated. Boston: Beacon Press, 1968. 85 pp.

A brief summary of the first session of the International War Crimes Tribunal, held in London on November 13–16, 1966, and of the second session conducted at Roskilde, Denmark, from November 20 to December 1, 1967. The Tribunal considered points such as aggression, civilian bombings, illegal weapons, POWs, civilians, and

genocide. The result was a condemnation of the U.S. attempt to exterminate the Vietnamese people.

1464. Vennema, Alje. *The Viet Cong Massacre at Hue*. New York: Vantage Press, 1976. 212 pp.

Near the end of the fighting at Hue, during the 1968 Tet Offensive, the Viet Cong massacred untold hundreds of South Vietnamese civilians. This is the story of that atrocity. The work is illustrated.

1465. Vietnam Veterans Against the War. *The Winter Soldier Investigation: An Inquiry into American War Crimes*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1972. 188 pp.

An abridged edition of the testimony which was delivered before the "Winter Soldier Investigation" into war crimes committed by American troops in Vietnam. The investigation was conducted by individuals who were assigned, in some capacity, to Vietnam. The investigation was held in Detroit, Michigan, from January 31 to February 2, 1971. The direct testimony of the participants in the investigation is presented herein. A list of the participants is included.

G. Amnesty/Pardons

1466. Baskir, Lawrence M., and William A. Strauss. *Reconciliation after Vietnam: A Program of Relief for Vietnam Era Draft and Military Offenders*. Notre Dame, Indiana: University of Notre Dame Press, 1977. 150 pp.

Prepared for the Center for Civil Rights at the University of Notre Dame, this brief work addresses the amnesty issue, the Ford clemency program, and it presents recommendations of how to deal with the various groups of offenders that arose during the Vietnam War. A select bibliography is included.

1467. Howay, Commander Jack W. USN. "Amnesty: An Old Gift in New Wrappings." *Naval War College Review* 25:4 (March–April 1973), pp. 46–57.

The historical background and precedents for amnesty are examined in this article. The author reviews the proposed amnesty for those individuals who evaded service in the Vietnam War. The author concludes that forgiveness is inherent in the American character.

1468. Schardt, Arlie, William A. Rusher, and U.S. Senator Mark O. Hatfield. *Amnesty? The Unsettled Question of Vietnam: Now! Never! If... .* Lawrence, Massachusetts: Sun River Press, 1973. 148 pp.

This brief work presents the arguments concerning the question of amnesty. Arlie Schardt, representing the American Civil Liberties Union (ACLU), argues for amnesty now (1973). William Rusher, representing the *National Review*, argues amnesty never. Senator Hatfield argues for a moderate course of amnesty based upon individual cases.

1469. Sherman, Morris, compiler. *Amnesty in America*. Passaic, New Jersey: New Jersey Library Association, 1974. 45 pp.

A short, but useful, bibliography addressing the subject of amnesty in the U.S. The work contains a select bibliography, including unpublished material, a chronology of amnesties, congressional debates, judicial interpretations, and a very brief examination of the post-Civil War amnesty for draft evaders and deserters.

1470. Shils, Edward. "A Profile of a Military Deserter." *Armed Forces and Society* 3:3 (1977), pp. 427-32.

As the title implies, this article examines and analyzes those who deserted from the enlisted ranks of the U.S. Army. Shils observes that the soldiers who deserted were alienated from society, their families, and their military units. The article discusses President Gerald Ford's clemency program for Vietnam era draft evaders and deserters.

H. Veterans Against the War

1471. Hunt, Andrew E. *The Turning: A History of Vietnam Veterans Against the War*. New York: New York University Press, 2001. 296 pp.

The author details the history of the VVAW and discredits any doubts that the movement was an anti-G.I. or anti-veteran movement. Far from it since the organization was comprised of veterans who had returned from Vietnam and possessed the courage to speak out against the policies of the United States.

1472. Nicosia, Gerald. *Home to War: A History of the Vietnam Veteran's Movement*. New York: Crown Publishers, 2001. 689 pp.

This recent (2001) illustrated study looks at the impact of those veterans who returned from Vietnam and continued to "fight" the war in the U.S. This time, however, they were fighting to stop the war and to awaken the American conscience about what was really happening in Vietnam. This is an excellent portrayal, told in the words of those who served, of their efforts to help end the war upon their return home.

1473. Stacewicz, Richard. *Winter Soldiers: An Oral History of the Vietnam Veterans Against the War*. New York: Twayne Oral History Series No. 26, Twayne Publishers, 1997. 470 pp.

The title of this work is derived from Thomas Paine, during the first winter of the American Revolution and used by the VVAW. This is a collection of oral interviews about the role of the VVAW. All aspects of VVAW activities are covered from the early years of the war through the end. The author looks at the impact of the organization, the repercussions of being a member, and the final splintering of the organization.

X

The Consequences of the Vietnam War

A. Aftermath and Lessons

1474. Appy, Christian G. *Patriots: The Vietnam War Remembered From All Sides*. New York: Viking, Penguin Group, Incorporated, 2003. 574 pp.

An extensive collection (135) of personal accounts of the Vietnam War, from all perspectives. Wide-ranging in scope, the stories are written by both American and Vietnamese. Among the contributors are Vo Nguyen Giap, Malcolm Browne, Walt Rostow, Julian Bond, Gloria Emerson, and others. This is an invaluable work for studying the war, from its earliest beginnings (1940) to the last helicopter departing Saigon (1975).

1475. Barber, Stephen. *America in Retreat*. New York: Barnes and Noble, Incorporated, 1971. 191 pp.

According to the author the U.S. retreated in world affairs during the 1970s. Much of the optimism and vigor that characterized the U.S. faded away and technology alone could no longer suffice to keep America an international power. Of U.S. involvement in Vietnam, the author states that the single greatest casualty was American self-esteem. The division of the people over the Vietnam War was the real tragedy.

1476. Braestrup, Peter, ed. *Vietnam as History: Ten Years After the Paris Peace Accords*. Lanham, Maryland: University Press of America, 1984. 208 pp.

This work is the result of a two-day conference, held in January 1983, at the Smithsonian Institution's Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars. This work represents an edited version of the proceedings of that conference attended by some 50 leading historians and analysts of the U.S. experience in the Vietnam War, from 1964 to 1973. In addition to discussing the lessons of the war, the work also addresses what scholars know and do not know about the higher conduct of the war, by the U.S., and the North and South Vietnamese.

1477. Capps, Walter H. *The Unfinished War: Vietnam and the American Conscience*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1982. 177 pp.

A blend of history and analysis, this work examines the impact of the Vietnam War upon American life, institutions, and beliefs. The work details the evolution of the war, as well as the widespread indifference following its conclusion.

1478. Catton, Phillip E. "Refighting Vietnam in the History Books: The Historiography of the War." *Organization of American Historians Magazine of History* 18:5 (October 2004), pp. 7-11.

How the Vietnam War is presented, in literature, is evaluated in this recent (2004) article. The author observes that, initially, Vietnam was depicted as the "Bad" war and followed the "quagmire" thesis. Revisionist historians then began to describe the war as a "noble cause." Present-day scholarship still follows along the line that the war was bad and could not be won.

1479. Corson, William R. *Consequences of Failure*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1974. 215 pp.

Focusing on the phenomenon of failure, as applied to the military, the author examines several examples. He looks at the British difficulties in Ireland, 1916-1922, before assessing the U.S. failure in Vietnam. Corson examines the impact of losing the Vietnam War on the government, the people, and the economy. He observes that to overcome the frustration, the U.S. must admit to having failed. He suggests assisting and recognizing the Vietnam veterans, for their efforts, as being the single-most important step in recovering from the tragedy of Vietnam.

1480. Emerson, Gloria. *Winners and Losers: Battles, Retreats, Gains, Losses and Ruins from a Long War*. New York: Random House, 1976. 406 pp.

Interviews with people from all walks of life, concerning the Vietnam War, have been collected in this work. The author was a foreign

correspondent for *The New York Times* in Vietnam, from 1965 to 1972. A very eloquent and powerful work of human experience.

1481. Evans, David P. "A Foreign Troop." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 106:6 (1980), pp. 32-37.

The recurring theme of this article is that the U.S. failed to learn from the lessons of history. It describes the many similarities between the American Revolution and Vietnam. The author points out that many of the mistakes made by American leaders, in 1965, were repetitions of British mistakes, from 1775. The greatest failure was that during both wars the leaders failed to develop a "defined purpose."

1482. Goodman, Allan E. "U.S. Development Assistance in the Insurgency Environment: Gulliver's Coming Out." *Naval War College Review* 24:6 (February 1972), pp. 13-23.

Goodman observes that some key individuals, in the U.S. government, knew the limitations of American intervention in Vietnam, prior to the costly involvement. Goodman concludes that no lessons were learned from our Vietnam experience.

1483. —. "Toward a Political Settlement in Vietnam: Assessing the First Eighteen Months of the Postwar Wars." *Orbis* 16:3 (fall 1974), pp. 868-87.

What the author terms "postwar wars" occurred in three regions of South Vietnam following the 1973 Paris accords. They are examined in this article. Attaining a political settlement is then discussed from the perspectives of both Hanoi and Saigon.

1484. Greenbacker, Captain John E. USN (Ret.). "The Lesson of Vietnam." *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 99:7/845 (July 1973), pp. 18-25.

Should America pull back from its position in the Western Pacific and in Asia? This article raises the question in light of the bitter experience in Vietnam.

1485. Hahn, Walter F. "American Introversion Post-Vietnam." *Strategic Review* 3:4 (fall 1975), pp. 18-26.

Hahn's premise is that American influence and credibility, especially in Europe, has been drastically reduced as a result of the Vietnam War. Rather than fear of decline of American power, the current American introversion raises the specter of concern. The author observes that the key issue is the perception of Americans of their role as a world power.

1486. Hoffmann, Stanley, Samnul P. Huntington, Ernest R. May, Richard N. Neustadt, and Thomas C Schelling. "Vietnam Reappraised." *International Security* 6:1 (summer 1981), pp. 3-26.

Five noted professors, from Harvard University and the Kennedy School of Government, respond to questions concerning the Vietnam War. They give personal views on the military and political lessons of the war and whether any of these lessons could have been learned prior to the major American commitment in Vietnam.

1487. Holsti, Ole R., and James N. Rosenau. "Does Where You Stand Depend on When You Were Born? The Impact of Generation on Post-Vietnam Foreign Policy Beliefs." *Public Opinion Quarterly* 44:1 (spring 1980), pp. 1-22.

To determine if people of the same generation, or age groups, tend to share similar beliefs about foreign policy the authors surveyed 2,282 Americans from both actual and potential positions of leadership. They were questioned on their beliefs regarding the U.S. experience in the Vietnam War and the implications for future American foreign policy.

1488. Hood, Donald Eugene. "'Lessons' of the Vietnam War: Henry Kissinger, George F. Kennan, Richard Falk and the Debate over Containment, 1965-80." Ph.D. dissertation, University of Washington, 1982. 279 pp.

Hood, a Vietnam veteran, seeks to explain American intervention in Vietnam, through the contradictory views of Kissinger, Kennan, and Falk. He examines the very broad issues of the war through the views of these three men. His conclusion presents an assessment of the short-term consequences of this foreign policy debate.

1489. Horne, A. D., ed. *The Wounded Generation: America After Vietnam*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Incorporated, 1981. 226 pp.

This three-part work examines two distinct components of American life during the Vietnam War – those who fought and those who did not. The work is filled with previously published excerpts from works on Vietnam and essays on the war's emerging legacies.

1490. Hughes, Captain Wayne P., Jr. USN. "Vietnam: Winnable War?" *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 103:7/893 (July 1977), pp. 60-65.

This article begins with the conflicting feeling that, to many Americans, the Vietnam War was unwinnable, yet it was right for the U.S.

to aid South Vietnam. The author observes that the U.S. could have defeated North Vietnam in 1965 and 1966, had the war been carried out more forcefully. He concludes that, as a result of our compassion, we defeated ourselves – militarily, politically, and morally.

1491. Hunt, Richard A., and Richard H. Schultz, Jr., eds. *Lessons from an Unconventional War: Reassessing U.S. Strategies for Future Conflicts*. New York: Pergamon Press, “Pergamon Policy Studies on International Politics,” 1982. 236 pp.

A collection of essays assessing the various lessons learned by the U.S., from involvement in the Vietnam War. A great deal of the work is devoted to the pacification program.

1492. Issacs, Arnold R. *Vietnam Shadows: The War, its Ghosts, and its Legacy*. Baltimore, Maryland: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 1997. 235 pp.

Post-Vietnam War America is studied in this work by looking at the “Vietnam Generation.” Among the “Shadows” of the war are “the Wall” – that large marble reminder with the names of over 55,000 Americans inscribed upon it; the Veterans; the Generation; the Myth; and the Ghosts. A work of interest to all.

1493. ——. *Without Honor: Defeat in Vietnam and Cambodia*. Baltimore, Maryland: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 1983. 559 pp.

As a correspondent for the *Baltimore Sun*, Issacs was present at the major, concluding events in South Vietnam. He was there from 1972 to 1975. He condemns the Nixon-Kissinger policy of giving South Vietnamese leaders false hope for continued American assistance after 1973. The work is illustrated.

1494. Kleinman, Lieutenant Colonel Forrest K. USA (Ret.). “The Lost Lesson of Vietnam.” *Military Review* 60:9 (August 1980), pp. 64–71.

The author contends that the failure to integrate South Vietnam’s indigenous population into ground combat forces at the lowest levels is the “lost lesson.” Had this been done the so-called “gook complex” would have been cured.

1495. Lake, Anthony, ed. *The Vietnam Legacy: The War, American Society and the Future of American Foreign Policy*. Council on Foreign Relations Books. New York: New York University Press, 1976. 440 pp.

A collection of postmortems on the American involvement in Vietnam have been collected in this work. Examined herein is the war and American society, consensus and dissent, the executive, the press,

the Congress, and the military. Also covered are U.S. security policies, negotiating strategies, American involvement in foreign societies, and lessons learned. Many contributors are included in this work. David Abshire's essay "Lessons of Vietnam: Proportionality and Credibility," cautions against learning too much from our failures in Vietnam and offers suggestions for improving relations between Congress and the executive. This work is a good place to begin a study of the Vietnam War's significance to American foreign and domestic policy.

1496. *Lessons from the Vietnam War*. London: Royal United Services Institute, 1969.

A report from a seminar conducted at the Royal United Services Institute (RUSI) on February 12, 1969, discussing the lessons of the Vietnam War. Among the participants were noted British Southeast Asian experts Sir Robert Thompson and P. J. Honey.

1497. Lock-Pullan, Richard. "An Inward Looking Time": The United States Army, 1973–76." *The Journal of Military History* 67:2 (April 2003), pp. 483–511.

The author observes that for the U.S. Army, 1973 was a "significant" year in its history. This was because during 1973 the Army "lost its responsibilities in Vietnam and its nature as a mobilized draft force." In the aftermath of the Vietnam War the Army found itself transitioning from an Army of draftees to one made up of "standing professionals" – the so-called All-Volunteer Force. Consequently, during this time, the Army needed to change its identity, and to improve the professionalism. To achieve the latter the Army created the Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). This was to provide direction, at all levels of command, within the Army regarding doctrine.

1498. MacPherson, Myra. *The Long Time Passing: Vietnam and the Haunted Generation*. Garden City, New York: Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1984. 696 pp.

The voices of the Vietnam generation, those who went and fought and those who remained home, are heard in this powerful work. The author examines the actions of more than a decade ago that are affecting their present-day lives. The social aspects of the Vietnam War are described in explicit language. Destined to become a classic study of the effects of the Vietnam War upon the American conscience.

1499. Morris, Richard, and Peter Ehrenhaus, eds. *Cultural Legacies of Vietnam: Uses of the Past in the Present*. Norwood, New Jersey: Ablex Publishing Corporation, 1990. 238 pp.

A collection of essays examining how the Vietnam War polarized American public opinion, politics, and values, during the course of the war, and how it still affects us today. Of interest is the contribution of George Dionisopoulos (Chapter 5 – “Images of the Warrior Returned: Vietnam Veterans in Popular American Film”) which examines Hollywood’s depictions of the war.

1500. Morris, Richard B., and James Woodress, eds. *Voices from America's Past: Volume 4: Times of Crisis, 1962–1975*. New York: E. P. Dutton and Company, Incorporated, 1976. 149 pp.

A record of American domestic affairs, from the period beginning with the assassination of John F. Kennedy, and ending with the resignation of Richard Nixon. Among other topics examined are many social issues such as the women’s liberation movement, civil rights, and minority issues. The chapter “The War in Vietnam,” discusses the background, military action, peace negotiations, national trauma, and the aftermath.

1501. Moyar, Mark. *Triumph Forsaken: The Vietnam War, 1954–1965*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2006. 512 pp.

Perhaps the most recent (2006) work to reexamine how the U.S. came to be involved in Vietnam, the author looks at the period from 1954 to 1965, and the earliest decisions made regarding American commitment. The author provides a different look at Ngo Dinh Diem, and his regime, and states that supporting the coup to overthrow him was the “worst American mistake” of the war. The work is illustrated.

1502. Nixon, Richard. *No More Vietnams*. New York: Arbor House, 1985. 240 pp.

The former president analyzes the roles of four presidents, the military, Congress, the media, and the anti-war movement, upon and during the Vietnam War. He presents his opinion of what U.S. strategy in future wars should be.

1503. Parker, Maynard. “One of Four.” *Foreign Policy* 20 (fall 1975), pp. 209–24.

With the culmination of American involvement in Vietnam, an era in Southeast Asia also ended thus marking a period wherein the U.S. was no longer the major power in the region. In light of this development many basic questions concerning American foreign policy have been raised. Parker discusses many of these questions including at what point will the U.S. redraw lines of Asian interest?

1504. Salisbury, Harrison E., ed. *Vietnam Reconsidered: Lessons from a War*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1984. 288 pp.

A comprehensive reappraisal of the Vietnam War and its impact upon American society, is discussed in this work. This is a collection of materials presented at a 1983 symposium on the subject, at the University of Southern California. The symposium involved journalists, veterans, generals, government officials, anti-war protesters, spies, and filmmakers.

1505. Sanders, Sol W., and William Henderson. "The Consequences of 'Vietnam.'" *Orbis* 21:1 (spring 1977), pp. 61-76.

The authors assess the accuracy of five predictions concerning American involvement in Vietnam, given by supporters of the war. The assessments were that the U.S. would be defeated and would abandon its commitment. The following are the "consequences" of the Vietnam War: first, the U.S. abandonment of Vietnam compromised a main feature of American foreign policy – the encouragement of nation-states to fight totalitarian systems; second, validation of the "domino theory"; third, withdrawal from Vietnam has led to international feelings of American unreliability; fourth, other powers such as the Soviet Union have been encouraged to intervene elsewhere; and, finally, Vietnam revived popular sentiment for American isolationism.

1506. Santoli, Al. *To Bear Any Burden: The Vietnam War and its Aftermath in the Words of Americans and Southeast Asians*. New York: E. P. Dutton, Incorporated, 1985. 367 pp.

The stories of 48 Americans and Southeast Asians, including military, veterans, advisors, journalists, diplomats, and refugees, recall the war in this excellent work. Santoli also wrote *Everything We Had*.

1507. Sharp, Admiral U.S. G. USN (Ret.). *Strategy for Defeat: Vietnam in Retrospect*. San Rafael, California: Presidio Press, 1978. 338 pp.

A straightforward analysis of the frustrations of conducting the war in Vietnam that ultimately led to American failure. The blame is placed squarely on the shoulders of the American government and the decision-making at its highest levels. Sharp was formerly Commander-in-Chief, Pacific, and, as such, was responsible for all military activities conducted there including in Vietnam. The work is illustrated.

1508. Shing, Lieutenant General Hu. Chinese Army. "The War in Vietnam." *Military Review* 50:8 (August 1970), pp. 58-65.

Prepared as a speech for a military audience in the Republic of China (Taiwan), this article presents seven lessons learned from the Vietnam War. First, only complete victory can insure peace. Second, limited wars may be a trap. Third, a war without frontlines requires departures from traditional military tactics. Fourth, establish basic principles for eliminating “people’s war.” Fifth, the question of annihilation or occupation as a solution must be addressed. Sixth, the quality of the equipment has nothing to do with ending the war. And, seventh, fully implement airmobile operations.

1509. Thompson, W. Scott, and Donaldson D. Frizzell. *The Lessons of Vietnam*. New York: Crane, Russak and Company, Incorporated, 1977. 288 pp.

A significant assessment of the Vietnam War is presented in this work. Based upon the Fletcher School of Law and Diplomacy symposium “The Military Lessons of the Vietnamese War,” held during 1973–74. Scholars and military and civilian policy-makers, such as William Westmoreland, Edward Lansdale, Elmo Zumwalt, and Paul Nitze participated. The concluding perspectives include six general military lessons of the war. An interesting point, substantiated by the participants, is that the U.S. won the unconventional war yet lost the conventional war.

1510. Westmoreland, General William C. USA (Ret.). “Vietnam in Perspective.” *Military Review* 59:1 (January 1979), pp. 34–43.

Reflecting on the war General Westmoreland presents his conclusions in this article. These include the need for the U.S. to develop future non-partisan foreign policies; military leaders must have a stronger voice where there is a threat of war; without the support of the nation it is unfair to send American troops into battle, and, finally, when the U.S. national reputation is at stake the news media must be more convincing and supportive.

1511. Wheeler, John. *Touched with Fire: The Future of the Vietnam Generation*. New York: Franklin Watts, Incorporated, 1984. 259 pp.

An examination of those who fought in Vietnam as well as those who did not is offered in this study. Wheeler explores the war, the homecoming, and the future of both groups. The author observes that the Vietnam War touched the current generation in such a way that it will remain with them for decades.

1512. Willbanks, James H. *Abandoning Vietnam: How America Left and South Vietnam Lost its War*. Lawrence, Kansas: University Press of Kansas, 2004. 377 pp.

While the author observes that South Vietnam fell in just 55 days, the actual road to the end of the war took much longer. He points out that the strategy of “Vietnamization” was not the sole cause of South Vietnam’s defeat. However, it was, without a doubt, a major factor. When the Paris Peace Accords were signed it became clear that the U.S. had failed to prepare South Vietnam’s forces. Consequently, when the U.S. departed, South Vietnam was unable to withstand the North Vietnamese onslaught. The work is illustrated.

1513. Williams, Captain Ralph E., Jr. USN (Ret.). “After Vietnam.” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 96:4 (April 1970), pp. 19–25.

The author proposes that the U.S. develop a Seaborne Anti-Ballistic Missile Intercept system, in the post-Vietnam era, and that it place its entire nuclear arsenal at sea. This concept is a result of the American military performance in Vietnam.

B. POWs/MIAs

1514. Blakey, Scott. *Prisoner at War: The Survival of Commander Richard A. Stratton*. Garden City, New York: Anchor Press, Doubleday and Company, Incorporated, 1978. 397 pp.

The true story of Commander Stratton’s six-year ordeal as a POW, and his treatment by the North Vietnamese is recalled in this book. The author also describes the ordeal that Stratton’s wife, children, and sister endured.

1515. Chesley, Captain Larry. *Seven Years in Hanoi: A POW Tells His Story*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft Incorporated, 1973. 158 pp.

Chesley, a USAF pilot, was shot down on April 16, 1966, and was held as a POW for seven years. He was released from captivity on February 12, 1973. This is his story of his treatment, torture, courage, and the will to survive. The book is illustrated.

1516. Clarke, Captain Douglas L. USN. *The Missing Man: Politics and the MIA*. Washington, D.C.: National Defense University Press, Research Directorate, 1979. 121 pp.

This study reveals how the status of “Missing in Action” is determined. The author examines both the political and psychological implications and analyzes the various approaches taken towards resolving the problem by Presidents Nixon, Ford, and Carter.

1517. Coker, Lieutenant Commander George T. USN. “P.W.” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 100:9/859 (October 1974), pp. 41–46.

Two questions which confronted every POW taken in Vietnam, were “what is worth enduring torture for” and “what is worth dying for?” The author looks at how the POWs responded to this.

1518. Dengler, Dieter. *Escape from Laos*. San Rafael, California: Presidio Press, 1979. 211 pp.

An emotional account of a U.S. Navy pilot who was shot down and captured by Pathet Lao Communist forces in 1966. Dengler recalls his taking off from the U.S.S. *Ranger*, being shot down, his capture, his imprisonment in Laos for five months, his escape, the 23 days he spent in the jungle, and his dramatic rescue. An excellent account of one man's courage and will are described in this illustrated account.

1519. Denton, Jeremiah A., Jr. *When Hell Was in Session*. New York: Reader's Digest Press, 1976. 246 pp.

The author recalls his experience as a U.S. Navy pilot, being shot down over North Vietnam in July 1965. Imprisoned for seven and a half years, until his release, Denton describes his life as a POW. This book provided the basis for the 1979 television movie, of the same name, starring Hal Holbrook as Denton. Denton later became a U.S. Senator from Alabama.

1520. Dramesi, Lieutenant Colonel John A. USAF. *Code of Honor*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1975. 271 pp.

This personal narrative describes the author's survival and resistance against his captors after being shot down, in April 1967, over North Vietnam. Dramesi led the only organized escape from the notorious “Hanoi Hilton,” in 1969, but was recaptured.

1521. Dunn, Colonel J. Howard, USMC (Ret.), and Jamor W. Hays Parks, USMC. “If I Become a Prisoner of War.” *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 102:8/882 (August 1976), pp. 18–27.

The Code of Conduct, in light of the wars in Korea and Vietnam, is reviewed in this article. The authors observe that more than words are needed to survive the POW experience.

1522. Gaither, Lieutenant Commander Ralph. *With God in a P.O.W. Camp*. Nashville, Tennessee: Broadman Press, 1973. 152 pp.

Downed over North Vietnam, in October 1965, the author, a Navy flier, was held captive until his release in February 1973. This is not only the story of his personal survival but the spiritual side of the POW experience as well.

1523. Grant, Zalin. *Survivors*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1975. 345 pp.

The true story of nine American servicemen, captured in early 1968, and who were held prisoner for five years until their release, is told in this work. Initially, they were held, by the Viet Cong, for three years in the jungle. They were then marched up the Ho Chi Minh Trail, to Hanoi, where they were kept for two more years until they were released. Grant is a Vietnam veteran, a war correspondent, and has written and published many articles relating to the war.

1524. Heslop, J. M., and Dell R. Van Orden. *From the Shadow of Death: Stories of POWs*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Company, 1973. 350 pp.

The story of eight POWs and the man who helped make their repatriation possible is recalled in this book. Also, the story of the wife of one man, who is still missing, is told. The work is illustrated.

1525. Holt, Commander Philip R. USN. "Prisoners of War: Prescriptive Conduct and Compliance in Captive Situations." *Naval War College Review* 21:4 (December 1968), pp. 29–79.

In this lengthy article the author examines the conduct of prisoners during captivity. The author proposes measures for the POW to use to counteract exploitation by their captors. A good bibliography on POW-related books and articles is included.

1526. Hubbell, John G. *P.O.W.: A Definitive History of the American Prisoner-of-War Experience in Vietnam, 1964–1973*. New York: Reader's Digest Press, 1976. 633 pp.

Probably the best work on the subject of POWs in Vietnam, the author describes the entire POW experience. In addition to illustrations the author has also included a list of personnel returned from captivity as of 1973.

1527. Jensen, Lieutenant Colonel Jay R. USAF. *Six Years in Hell: A Returned POW Views Captivity, Country, and the Nation's Future*. Bountiful, Utah: Horizon Publishers, 1974. 224 pp.

The author, a USAF pilot, was shot down on February 18, 1967, and held prisoner until February 18, 1973. This illustrated work describes his experience.

1528. Keating, Susan Katz. *Prisoners of Hope: Exploiting the POW/MIA Myth in America*. New York: Random House, Incorporated, 1994. 276 pp.

Were Americans being held prisoner against their will after the war had ended in Vietnam, is the question being explored in this work. The author examines how this "myth" came to be. To dispel this

myth, and one the author herself had believed, the author shows how it came to be perpetuated. She looks at the role of the Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA), those who deserted and were listed as MIA, and how others have profited from this myth, i.e. Lieutenant Colonel James "Bo" Gritz. The author further observes that any final accounting, relevant to the issue of POW/MIAAs, lies in Hanoi and the records they kept.

1529. "Let's Go Home." *Soldiers* 28:4 (April 1973), np.

A collection of mini-articles concerning the experiences of American POWs, following the signing of the Vietnam Accords, in Paris, January 1973. It describes the actions and feelings of returning POWs, their families who waited for their return, and of the personnel who played a part in their homecoming.

1530. McDaniel, Captain Eugene B. USN. *Before Honor*. Philadelphia: A. J. Holman Company, A Division of J. B. Lippincott Company, 1975. 192 pp.

Captain McDaniel tells of his faith and how he imparted his faith to other POWs, to help them survive the experience of captivity, in this work. The author was a Navy pilot who was downed over North Vietnam and held captive until 1973. The book is illustrated.

1531. —. and James L. Johnson. *Scars and Stripes*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House, 1980. np.

On May 19, 1967, Captain "Red" McDaniel was shot down over North Vietnam, while flying his 81st combat mission. This is the story of his six years, as a POW, until his release in March 1973. An earlier version of this work was published as *Before Honor* (Philadelphia, 1975).

1532. McDaniel, Norman A. *Yet Another Voice*. New York: Leisure Books, 1975. 114 pp.

A personal narrative of a former USAF pilot, who spent six and a half years as a POW. The story is told in five parts: his capture, his imprisonment, his release and return, adjustment, and an assessment of America and its citizens.

1533. McGrath, John M. Lieutenant Commander, USN. *Prisoner of War: Six Years in Hanoi*. Annapolis, Maryland: Naval Institute Press, 1975. 114 pp.

The author's avowed purpose, in writing this book, is to disclaim any credit of humane treatment by the North Vietnamese, in accordance with the Geneva Convention. McGrath was shot down over

North Vietnam, in June 1967. He was held prisoner until 1973. North Vietnamese POW camp regulations are included at the end of the book. Drawings illustrate the work.

1534. Mallicoat, Sergeant First Class D. "A PW Returns." *Soldiers* 28:9 (September 1973), pp. 23-29.

One American POW's personal experience, of being captured and imprisoned, is recalled in this illustrated article. The subject interviewed in this article also suggests changes which he would like to see made in the Code of Conduct.

1535. Mulligan, Captain Jim. *The Hanoi Commitment*. Virginia Beach, Virginia: RIF Marketing, 1981. 298 pp.

Mulligan, a Navy pilot, was shot down over North Vietnam and held prisoner for nearly seven years. This personal narrative describes his experience.

1536. Naughton, Commander Robert J. USN. "Motivational Factors of American Prisoners of War Held by the Democratic Republic of Vietnam." *Naval War College Review* 27:4 (January-February 1975), pp. 2-14.

A study of the quality of personal integrity is presented in this article. The author considers it the key for survival and the ability to return home to lead a normal life.

1537. O'Daniel, Larry J. *Missing in Action: Trail of Deceit*. New York: Arlington House, 1979. 304 pp.

A critical account of the American government's handling of the POW/MIA issue and the public's acceptance of their fate. The author details how many POWs became captives, describes the plight of their families, and assesses the possibilities of many Americans still being held in Vietnam this day (1979). O'Daniel concludes by identifying problems that need to be addressed in solving the problem and leaves the reader with the reminder that the continued agitation by the American public is the POWs/MIA's only hope. O'Daniel was a U.S. Army intelligence officer in Vietnam.

1538. "PW – How the Army Handles Prisoners of War in Vietnam." *Army Digest* 23:3 (March 1968), pp. 5-7.

This illustrated article discusses how the U.S. Army handles enemy POWs captured in Vietnam.

1539. Plumb, Charlie, as told to Glen DeWerff. *I'm No Hero*. Independence, Missouri: Independence Press, 1973. 287 pp.

The author, a U.S. Navy pilot, was shot down over North Vietnam in 1967, and held captive for nearly six years. This is the story of his captivity. The work is illustrated with drawings.

1540. Richardson, Colonel Walton K. USA. "Prisoners of War as Instruments of Foreign Policy." *Naval War College Review* 23:1 (September 1970), pp. 47-64.

The author develops the treatment of POWs historically, from Korea through Vietnam. Richardson examines the repeated Communist practice of using American and Allied POWs as an instrument to effect foreign policy.

1541. Risner, Colonel Robert. *The Passing of the Night: My Seven Years as a Prisoner of the North Vietnamese*. New York: Random House, 1973. 264 pp.

Shot down on September 16, 1965, while on a mission over Than Hoa, South Vietnam, the author was captured and held prisoner for seven years. This is his account of that experience. In April 1965, Colonel Risner had been the subject of a *Time Magazine* cover story. After his capture, he was singled out by his captors, who recognized him and subjected him to an intensive effort to break his will.

1542. Roberts, James C. *Missing in Action*. Washington, D.C.: The Fund for Objective News Reporting, 1980. 73 pp.

A brief assessment of the MIA situation is presented. The work looks at the suffering of the families of MIAs, and the work of the National League of Families. Also discussed is the possibility of American MIAs still living, MIAs of the Korean and French Indo-China wars, and the sightings of Americans, by Vietnamese, among other topics.

1543. Rowan, Stephen A. *They Wouldn't Let Us Die: The Prisoners of War Tell Their Story*. Middle Village, New York: David Publishers, 1973. 252 pp.

This work features interviews conducted with former POWs which were carried out immediately upon their release from captivity.

1544. Rowe, Major James N. *Five Years to Freedom*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1971. 467 pp.

Captured by the Viet Cong, on October 29, 1963, the author – a U.S. Army Special Forces officer, was held prisoner for five years until December 31, 1968. He recalls his story in this illustrated work.

1545. Rutledge, Howard, and Phyllis Rutledge. *In the Presence of Mine Enemies*. New York: Pyramid Books, 1975. 144 pp.

The author, Howard Rutledge, was a POW from 1965 to 1973. In this personal account he relates how he turned to prayer for the strength he needed to survive his daily ordeal. His wife briefly relates her reaction to his immediate capture, how the family coped with his lengthy imprisonment, and their reunion.

1546. Sauter, Mark, and Jim Sanders. *The Men We Left Behind: Henry Kissinger, the Politics of Deceit and the Tragic Fate of POWs After the Vietnam War*. Washington, D.C.: National Press Books, 1993. 394 pp.

The possibility of American POWs still alive in Vietnam is explored by the authors in this book. To catch the reader's attention they pose five thoughts for consideration. These are that the North Vietnamese demanded a ransom to be paid for American POWs, that Nixon and Kissinger deceived Congress and the American people by never revealing the first thought, that the U.S. government knew there were Americans still in Vietnam after "Operation Homecoming" in 1973, that some of those may still be alive, and, finally, that the U.S. government simply has not done enough to bring these POWs home.

1547. Schemmer, Benjamin F. *The Raid*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1976. 326 pp.

In November 1970 an elite force of American soldiers went on a mission to free American prisoners being held at Son Tay prison, 23 miles west of Hanoi. Schemmer details the lengthy planning involved and the raid itself. Although no prisoners were found at Son Tay, the raid was not altogether unsuccessful.

1548. Shields, Dr. Roger E. "M.I.A.: The Search for the Missing." *Commander Digest* 15:13 (March 28, 1974), pp. 2-8.

This article recalls the efforts of the U.S. government to locate American soldiers listed as "Missing in Action" in Southeast Asia. The article describes North Vietnamese reluctance to discuss the issue. The article is illustrated.

1549. Stockdale, Rear Admiral James B. USN. "Experience as a POW in Vietnam." *Naval War College Review* 26:4 (January–February 1974), pp. 2-6.

Stockdale discusses the importance of self-discipline, communication, and a viable personal philosophy, drawing on his own experience of being imprisoned by the North Vietnamese for seven and a half years.

1550. —. Vice Admiral, USN (Ret.). "The Tap Code." *Military Collector and Historian* 31:4 (winter 1979), pp. 149-52.

A POW of the North Vietnamese for seven and a half years, the author recalls, in this personal narrative, the method of communication – or "Tap Code," based upon the Morse code, that American POWs devised and used while in captivity.

1551. Ursano, Robert J. M.D. "The Viet Nam Era Prisoner of War: Pre-captivity Personality and the Development of Psychiatric Illness." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 138:3 (March 1981), pp. 315-18.

Dr. Ursano examines the role of preexisting personality structure in the development of psychiatric illness, after a POW experience. He used six former POWs in his study who had been evaluated prior to their POW experience.

1552. U.S. Congress. Senate Committee on Armed Services. Imprisonment and Escape of Lt. (J.G.) Dieter Dengler, USNR. Hearings ... September 16, 1966. 89th Cong., 2nd Sess. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1966. 28 pp.

The testimony of Lieutenant Dengler on his escape from captivity, after his aircraft was shot down, given before a Congressional hearing.

1553. Wolfkill, Grant, and Jerry A. Rose. *Reported to Be Alive*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1965. 377 pp.

Captured and held prisoner in Laos, from May 1961 to August 1962, this is the personal narrative of the author. At the time of his capture the author was a cameraman for NBC news. President Kennedy awarded Wolfkill the "Medal of Freedom" for his service. This is the story of how one man survived the cruelty and torment of being held captive, while the only word that family and friends received was that he was "Reported to Be Alive."

C. Casualties/Refugees/Humanitarian Efforts

1554. Atkinson, Hugh. *The Most Savage Animal*. London: Rupert Hart-Davis, 1972. 373 pp. In paperback by Simon and Schuster, New York, nd.

The work of the International Committee of the Red Cross, in the Vietnam War, is told in this unusual story set both in Europe and Vietnam around 1969. The author examines those individuals who worked for the Red Cross as well as those Americans and Vietnamese fighting the war.

1555. Badillo, Gilbert, and G. David Curry. "The Social Incidence of Vietnam Casualties: Social Class or Race?" *Armed Forces and Society* 2:3 (spring 1976), pp. 397-406.
- An examination of the issue of a particular social class, i.e., blacks, suffering a higher incidence of casualties in Vietnam is offered by the authors. They do not reach any definite conclusions but they point out that this is a first step towards a more conclusive study.
1556. Browne, Corinne. *Casualty: A Memoir of Love and War*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1981. 219 pp.
- While visiting the Vietnam Veterans Peace and Brotherhood Chapel in New Mexico, the author meets, and falls in love with, a Vietnam veteran. This story describes the author's obsession with the chapel.
1557. Bryan, C. D. B. *Friendly Fire*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1976. 380 pp.
- The true story of an Iowa farm family's search for the truth of the details surrounding the death of their son, Michael Eugene Mullen. What is revealed is not so much a cover-up but the red-tape of a bureaucracy working to seal the fate of Americans killed by their own men. The book became a television drama. A map showing the location of the position of C Company, First Battalion, Sixth Infantry, 198th Infantry Brigade, Americal Division, and an account of the unit's mission are included.
1558. Byerly, Wesley Grimes, Jr. *Nam Doc*. New York: Vantage Press, 1981. 140 pp.
- The author was a doctor and a volunteer in "Project Vietnam," in 1967. He describes his experience in this story. The book is illustrated with photos.
1559. Ford, Herbert. *No Guns on Their Shoulders*. Nashville, Tennessee: Southern Publishers Association, 1968. 144 pp.
- This brief, illustrated work focuses on members of the Seventh Day Adventist Church, working in medical and sanitary affairs, in Vietnam.
1560. Hawthorne, Lesleyanne, ed. *Refugee: The Vietnamese Experience*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1982. 330 pp.
- A history of the Vietnamese refugees and their problems is described in this work.
1561. Kelly, Gail Paradise. *From Vietnam to America: A Chronicle of the Vietnamese Immigration to the United States*. Boulder, Colorado: Westview Press, 1977. 254 pp.

The dislocation and resettlement of Vietnamese refugees is described in this work. The author notes which Vietnamese were most likely to immigrate, the process the Vietnamese underwent from refugee to immigrant, their resettlement in the U.S., and their experience in America. The work is illustrated.

1562. Luce, Don, and John Sommer. *Viet Nam – The Unheard Voices*. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press, 1969. 336 pp.

A touching story of the Vietnamese people's experience of war, as told by the authors, who went to Vietnam as volunteers in the International Voluntary Service (IVS). According to the authors, U.S. failures in Vietnam were due to a lack of communication and understanding. This work observes, correctly, that the United States, because of these failures, made more enemies than friends among the Vietnamese people.

1563. Mitchell, Greg. *Truth . . . and Consequences: Seven Who Would Not Be Silenced*. New York: Dembner Books, 1981. 330 pp.

The stories of seven individuals who revealed the facts about "Agent Orange" are told in this work.

1564. Montero, Darell, and Marsha I. Weber. *Vietnamese Americans: Patterns of Resettlement and Socioeconomic Adaptation in the United States*. Boulder, Colorado: Westview Press, 1979. 218 pp.

This work focuses on the resettlement of Vietnamese refugees in the United States.

1565. Nguyen Ngoc Ngan. *The Will of Heaven: The Story of One Vietnamese and the End of His World*. New York: E. P. Dutton, 1982. 341 pp.

The author fled, with his family, from South Vietnam, in 1979, as one of the "boat" people. In South Vietnam he had been a teacher and a soldier. He was captured and held as a prisoner by the North Vietnamese. In this work he describes what it is like to be displaced from one's home and country, and forced to resettle elsewhere.

1566. Schulze, Gene. *The Third Face of War*. Austin, Texas: Pemberton Press, 1970. 294 pp.

The author, a volunteer physician in Vietnam, describes his daily activities and the reaction of the Vietnamese people. The book is illustrated.

1567. Trembly, Diane L. M. D. *Petticoat Medic in Vietnam: Adventures of a Woman Doctor*. New York: Vantage Press, 1976. 275 pp.

Trembly volunteered for service in Vietnam, under the American Medical Association's "Physicians for Vietnam" program in 1970. She recalls her service in this illustrated book.

1568. Turner, Fred. *Echoes of Combat: The Vietnam War in American Memory*. New York: An Anchor Book, A Division of Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing Group, Incorporated, 1996. 276 pp.

How the Vietnam War traumatized both veterans and civilians alike is discussed in this book. Turner explores the healing process of both groups as a result of the psychological trauma inflicted by Vietnam.

1569. Turpin, Dr. James W., with Al Hirshberg. *Vietnam Doctor*. New York: Signet Book, The New American Library, 1966. 175 pp.

A California physician, Turpin gave up his practice to provide medical aid and attention to the people of Vietnam. This is his story as well as the story of "Project Concern," which he founded, to provide health care and services.

1570. U.S. Congress. Senate Committee on the Judiciary. Subcommittee to Investigate Problems Connected with Refugees and Escapees. *Aftermath of War: Humanitarian Problems of Southeast Asia*. Staff Report. 94th Cong., 2nd Sess. 3 parts. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1976. 589 pp.

This lengthy government study examines the refugee problem created as a result of the Vietnam War.

1571. ——. Senate Committee on the Judiciary. Subcommittee to Investigate Problems Connected with Refugees and Escapees. *Problems of War Victims in Indochina*. Hearings. 92nd Cong., 2nd Sess. 3 parts. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1972. np.

1572. U.S. Military Assistance Command, Vietnam. "Friendly Casualties from Friendly Fires." *Lessons Learned Number 70*. Vietnam: Headquarters, USMAC, V, 1968. 37 pp.

A brief study summarizing American casualties suffered as a result of being shelled or bombed by their own forces. Among the topics examined are ground and air incidents, causative factors, and the minimum safe distances for weapons.

1573. Wain, Barry. "The Indochina Refugee Crisis." *Foreign Affairs* 58:1 (fall 1979), pp. 160-80.

Wain begins this article by stating that "Indochina is bleeding." The refugee problem developed into a conflict as prolonged and bitter as

the war itself. This situation was equally appalling for millions of Vietnamese, Laotians, and Kampuchean (Cambodians). The U.S. must take the lead in resolving this problem and must work with Hanoi.

1574. ——. *The Refused: The Agony of the Indochina Refugees*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1981. 288 pp.

A firsthand analysis of the Indochina refugee problem is presented in this illustrated work.

1575. Willis, John Martin. "Who Died in Vietnam: An Analysis of the Social Background of Vietnam War Casualties." Ph.D. dissertation, Purdue University, 1975. 112 pp.

This dissertation examines the social background of American Vietnam War casualties with many tables and much data. A brief bibliography is included.

D. Effect Upon the U.S. Military

1576. Balkind, Jonathan Jacob. "Morale Deterioration in the United States Military During the Vietnam Period." Ph.D. dissertation, University of California (Los Angeles), 1978. 382 pp.

The concept of morale and its importance to the military, along with the deterioration of morale, which occurred within the U.S. military establishment from 1967 to 1973, is the object of this study. A list of racial confrontations, involving American military personnel, is included.

1577. Boyle, Richard. *The Flower of the Dragon: The Breakdown of the U.S. Army in Vietnam*. San Francisco, California: Ramparts Press, 1972. 283 pp.

Eyewitness accounts of the day-to-day environment of the American soldier in Vietnam from 1965 to 1971, fill the pages of this book. The title was taken from a Vietnamese legend. Explicit in detail, this is one of the best treatises on the impairment of the American military establishment during the post-Tet Offensive period.

1578. Curry, Cecil B. (Cincinnatus). *Self-Destruction: The Disintegration and Decay of the United States Army During the Vietnam Era*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1981. 326 pp.

This is an attempt to explain the failure of the American military to achieve a victory in Vietnam. It includes a glossary of Vietnam military terms and jargon.

1579. Katauskas, Philip J. "The Last Muster for the Citizens' Army?" *United States Naval Institute Proceedings* 98:2 (1972), pp. 61–67.

The author discusses the Vietnam War and its cost, in terms of human casualties and economic impact, to the U.S. He believes that the image of the military suffered greatly during the war and ponders the future of the all-volunteer Army.

1580. Klare, Michael T. *War Without End: American Planning for the Next Vietnams*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Incorporated, 1972. 464 pp.

How the U.S. military policy and foreign relations were changed by the war in Vietnam, and how the nation will prepare for future, similar wars is the focus of this work. Klare also focuses on the role of counterinsurgency and the impact of modern technology on guerrilla warfare.

1581. Kricte, Charles F. "The Moral Dimension of Strategy." *Parameters* 7:2 (1977), pp. 65–76.

The author states that the American population's value perceptions, at large, are of significance to the formulators of American military strategy. The Vietnam experience demonstrated that when the moral legitimacy of a strategic objective is lost, so is the war.

1582. Powe, Major Marc B. USA. "The US Army After the Fall of Vietnam: A Contemporary Dilemma." *Military Review* 56:2 (February 1976), pp. 3–17.

The author proposes six measures to revitalize the U.S. Army in the wake of the Vietnam experience. First, a statement of long-range objectives. Second, decentralize. Third, renew integrity. Fourth, decrease complexity. Fifth, draw and learn from the Vietnam experience. And, finally, return to military professionalism.

1583. Schwenk, Colonel Adolph G. USMC. "Future US Military Posture in Southeast Asia." *US Army War College Commentary* (October 1970), pp. 46–53.

Schwenk argues for three logical military postures the U.S. must choose in Southeast Asia. First, a mainland Southeast Asia posture; second, a blue-water strategy; and third, a Western Pacific island strategy. The author contends that the third proposal is the best with a Marine brigade afloat on Naval vessels. This approach provides the best extension of U.S. military power and still influences the Asian mainland.

E. Veterans

1584. Abbott, Steve. "Vietnam Vets: A New Battlefield." *Soldiers* 34:11 (November 1979), pp. 28-30.

Drug and alcohol dependence, unemployment, and psychological problems compound the problems the returned Vietnam veteran must face. This article focuses upon the work of the Vietnam-era Veterans Congress Caucus, composed of two U.S. senators and 17 congressmen – all Vietnam veterans.

1585. Beidler, Philip D. *Late Thoughts on an Old War: The Legacy of Vietnam*. Athens, Georgia: The University of Georgia Press, 2004. 213 pp.

A Vietnam veteran, the author states that he wanted to present the "viewpoint of the pissed-off infantryman." Based upon his own personal experiences he achieves this. His first chapter, "The Language of the Nam," reveals how the Vietnamese were portrayed and characterized, by U.S. forces in slang language.

1586. Bourne, Peter G. M.D. *Men, Stress, and Vietnam*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1970. 233 pp.

Personal observations made by the author are combined with formal scientific investigation in behavioral sciences, to complete this study. Bourne served in Vietnam, from October 1965 to October 1966. In this study he provides insight into combat psychiatry and the study of stress. The levels of stress among various groups of individuals in Vietnam, i.e., helicopter ambulance crews, Green Berets, and others, are studied. The work is illustrated.

1587. Burkett, B. G., and Glenna Whitley. *Stolen Valor: How the Vietnam Generation Was Robbed of Its Heroes and Its History*. Dallas, Texas: Verity Press, Incorporated, 1998. 692 pp.

The authors present an exposé of individuals who, by means of fraud, claimed Vietnam service and were decorated for their bogus deeds. The authors show how such individuals were able to fool people who should have known better, and got away with it. Certainly, the authors present a much different side to those liars and deceivers who have tarnished the real heroism and patriotism of those who actually did serve.

1588. Card, Josefina J. *Lives After Vietnam: The Personal Impact of Military Service*. Lexington, Massachusetts: Lexington Books, D.C. Heath and Company, 1983. 208 pp.

The effect of the Vietnam experience is studied in relation to veterans' education, work, family, relationships, and life in general.

1589. Daly, James A., and Lee Bergman. *A Hero's Welcome: The Conscience of Sergeant James Daly versus the United States Army*. Indianapolis, Indiana: The Bobbs-Merrill Company, Incorporated, 1975. 267 pp.

Upon his return from Vietnam, Sergeant James Daly had to struggle to adjust to his post-war environment. This is the story of his frustration, disillusionment, and, at times, depression, while making that adjustment.

1590. Downs, Frederick, Jr. *Aftermath: A Soldier's Return from Vietnam*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Incorporated, 1984. 224 pp.

A detailed look at what the author and countless other veterans like himself, had to endure after being wounded in Vietnam. On January 11, 1968, he stepped on a mine and lost his left arm. He describes the operations, therapy, and emotional strain of returning to civilian life. The author currently (1984) works for the Veterans Administration and received an award for his work with the disabled. He also authored *My Life in the Vietnam War* (New York, Norton, 1978).

1591. Figley, Charles R., ed. *Stress Disorders Among Vietnam Veterans: Theory, Research, and Treatment*. New York: Brunner/Mazel, Incorporated, 1978. 326 pp.

The long-term psychological difficulties developing from Vietnam War-related experiences are examined in this technical report. The work also focuses upon the veteran's family.

1592. —. and Seymour Leventam, eds. *Strangers at Home: Vietnam Veterans Since the War*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Publishers, 1980. 383 pp.

The editors have collected manuscripts written by 17 different authors describing the Vietnam War, its aftermath, and the impact upon those who fought it. The primary focus is, however, readjustment upon returning home.

1593. Helmer, John. *Bringing the War Home: The American Soldier in Vietnam and After*. New York: The Free Press, 1974. 346 pp.

In this sociological study of American soldiers and veterans of the Vietnam War, the author focuses on the psychological aspects of their service.

1594. Klein, Robert. *Wounded Men, Broken Promises: How the Veterans Administration Betrays Yesterday's Heroes*. New York: Macmillan Publishing Company, 1981. 278 pp.

Written by an award-winning investigative journalist, this work is a critical exposé and indictment, of nationwide abuse by the Veterans Administration of those whom they serve. The author details scandals, abusive medical practices, and case histories, which, when read, leave a sense of outrage.

1595. Levy, Charles J. *Spoils of War*. Boston: Houghton-Mifflin Company, 1974. 172 pp.

A collection of stories about the readjustment problems encountered by Vietnam veterans. Levy interviewed a random selection of 60 Marine veterans living in Boston. The language is explicit and details the problems of returning to a "normal" life after the experience of Vietnam.

1596. Lifton, Robert Jay. *Home from the War: Vietnam Veterans: Neither Victims nor Executioners*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1973. 478 pp.

Lifton studies the effects of the Vietnam War on those who fought it, focusing on the problems of adjustment upon their return home. Subjects covered include dealing with guilt, rage, violence, and adjustment. Lifton states that Vietnam veterans are an "embarrassment" to the country because their mere presence raises unanswerable questions in the minds of people.

1597. Lindecker, Clifford. *Kerry: Agent Orange and an American Family*. New York: St. Martins Press, 1982. 256 pp.

Basically, this work is two stories in one. The first is a story of love and sacrifice that confirms the American virtues of faith and dedication while the second is a horror story of Agent Orange. The two stories are joined when Michael and Maureen Ryan join other Vietnam vets and their lawyers, in the struggle to win both compensation and recognition for their sacrifices as victims of Agent Orange.

1598. Mallicoat, Sergeant First Class D. "One More Step." *Soldiers* 28:1 (January 1598. 1973), pp. 30-33.

This illustrated article describes readjustments that Vietnam amputees have to make and some of the ways they have used their veteran's benefits to help.

1599. Polner, Murray. *No Victory Parades: The Return of the Vietnam Veteran*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Incorporated, 1971. 169 pp.

This work shows the impact of the Vietnam War on the lives of nine veterans. The author interviewed over 200 veterans. His questions are directed to the psychological and emotional aspects of returning home from the war. A short bibliographical essay, centering on military psychiatry and adjustment problems, is unique and useful.

1600. Puller, Lewis B., Jr. *Fortunate Son: The Autobiography of Lewis B. Puller, Jr.* New York: Grove Weidenfeld, a Division of Grove Press, Incorporated, 1991. 389 pp.

The son of a Marine hero – General “Chesty” Puller, this is the son’s story of his tour of duty, in Vietnam 1968. He begins his account by describing growing up in the shadow of a Marine Corps legend – his father. In Vietnam he suffered the loss of his legs. He tells of his return home, his rehabilitation, and putting the events which occurred in Vietnam behind him.

1601. Starr, Paul. *The Discarded Army: Veterans After Vietnam – The Nader Report on Vietnam Veterans and the Veterans Administration.* New York: Charterhouse, 1973. 304 pp.

The issue of how American war veterans of Vietnam have fared following the war is raised in this report. Basically, the work is in two parts: one deals with the Vietnam veterans and the other with the Veterans Administration.

1602. Thomasson, W. A. “Deadly Legacy: Dioxin and the Vietnam Veteran.” *The Bulletin of the Atomic Scientists* 35:5 (May 1979), pp. 15–19.

How 2,4,5-T (Agent Orange) has caused thousands of U.S. Vietnam veterans problems after having been exposed to it during “Operation Ranch Hand.”

1603. Uhl, Michael, and Tod Ensign. *G. I. Guinea Pigs: How the Pentagon Exposed Our Troops to Dangers More Deadly than War.* New York: Playboy Press, 1980. 256 pp.

This is a condemnation of the use of American soldiers in dangerous experiments, from the nuclear tests following the Second World War, through the use of toxins such as Agent Orange, in Vietnam. It is a shocking story of the official lack of human concern, by the U.S. military, exposing hundreds of men to toxic levels of radiation and herbicides – the effects of which are only now surfacing.

1604. Verrone, Richard Burks, and Laura M. Calkins. *Voices From Vietnam: Eye-witness Accounts of the War, 1954–1975.* Newton Abbot, United Kingdom: David and Charles, 2005. 288 pp.

A collection of oral interviews in which the participants give “eye-witness” accounts of their experiences in Vietnam. The authors have selected accounts which detail the Viet Cong, the Tet Offensive, the Spring (Easter) Offensive, and the Christmas bombing campaign. The book is illustrated.

1605. Veterans Administration. *The Vietnam Veteran in Contemporary Society: Collected Materials Pertaining to the Young Veterans*. . . . Department of Medicine and Surgery. Washington, D.C.: Veterans Administration, 1972. 381 pp.

A collection of articles and essays concerning all aspects of the Vietnam veteran. Among the subjects examined are the Vietnam era experience, readjustment, black veterans, psychological disorders, medical problems, drug abuse, and unemployment.

1606. Webb, James. “What the Vietnam Vet Needs: The ‘Coming Home’ America Owes Him.” *Soldier of Fortune* (May 1980), pp. 52–53.

Vietnam veterans simply want to be “accorded the dignity of their experience,” Webb writes in this article.

1607. Wilcox, Fred A. *Waiting for an Army to Die: The Tragedy of Agent Orange*. New York: Random House, 1983. 222 pp.

The Agent Orange scandal is revealed, in detail, in this work. Wilcox describes how many American Vietnam veterans are suffering from dioxin poisoning. The work presents the testimony of physicians, scientists, veterans, veterans’ families, and the lawyers involved. The appendix contains a chronology of the development of 2,4,5-T.

F. Vietnam Since 1975

1608. Duiker, William J. *Vietnam Since the Fall of Saigon*. Athens, Ohio: Ohio University Center for International Studies, Southeast Asia Program, 1980. 77 pp.

An examination of Vietnam, from the end of the war in 1975, to 1980. Among the subjects examined are the Five-Year Plan 1976–80, the break with China, the Third Indochina War, 1977–78, and the new Cambodia.

1609. Elliott, David W. P., ed. *The Third Indochina Conflict*. Boulder, Colorado: Westview Press, 1981. 250 pp.

Recent events, since 1975, are brought up to date (1981) in this work. The work focuses on developments in Vietnam, Kampuchea

(Cambodia), and China. A discussion of the 1979 Communist Chinese invasion of Vietnam is included.

1610. Evans, Grant, and Kelvin Rowley. *Red Brotherhood at War: Vietnam, Cambodia and Laos Since 1975*. London: Verso Books, Revised edition. 1990. 348 pp.

The authors examine events within the three Southeast Asian nations in which the United States fought the war in Vietnam: Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos. This work picks up events following the departure of the Americans, in 1975, from Vietnam.

1611. Lamb, David. *Vietnam Now: A Reporter Returns*. New York: Public Affairs, 2003. 288 pp.

The author spent six years, as a reporter, in Vietnam covering the war. When Saigon fell, in 1975, he left only to return in 1997 and remained for four years. During that period he traveled about Vietnam to see how and what had changed in the country after the Americans departed. This is a very recent (2003) look at the Vietnamese people. Lamb describes their search for relatives lost during the war, how they have reacted to the many American veterans who have come back to visit, and how the native Vietnamese feel about the many Vietnamese immigrants returning to their country.

1612. Leifer, Michael. "The Third Indochina Conflict." *Asian Affairs* 14:2 (June 1983), pp. 125-31.

This war began with the Vietnamese invasion of Kampuchea (Cambodia) in December 1978, and the end was not yet in sight (1983). Leifer explains the complexities of the war and observes that, complicating the matter, is Vietnam's refusal to recognize an independent Kampuchea.

1613. Luxmoore, Jonathan. "Vietnam: The Dilemmas of Reconstruction." *Conflict Studies* 147 (1983), pp. 1-26.

Since the fall of Saigon, Vietnam's strategy has been set back by errors of judgment, economic hardships, and international politics. The author concludes that Vietnam must move in one of two directions: become a full-fledged Soviet dependent or make a conciliatory approach to China and the West.

1614. Mathews, Lloyd J. "'Farewell the Tranquil Mind': Security and Stability in the Post-Vietnam Era." *Parameters* 5:2 (1976), pp. 2-13.

The author examines the fundamental propositions of the non-interventionist approach to peace and security, resulting from the

termination of the Vietnam War. If adopted, such a policy change would be of major significance considering the previous U.S. policy of direct intervention employed for some 30 years. The fundamental premise is to counsel retrenchment from a global, to a regional, posture.

1615. Nguyen Long, with Harry H. Kendall. *After Saigon Fell – Daily Life Under the Vietnamese Communists*. Institute of East Asian Studies. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1981. 164 pp.

The title is self-explanatory. The author elected to remain in South Vietnam following the Communist takeover in 1975. In this series of essays he outlines the Communist attempt at rebuilding South Vietnam into a socialist society. The author fled in 1979 with his family. The work is illustrated.

1616. Nguyen Van Canh. *Vietnam Under Communism, 1975–1982*. Stanford, California: Hoover Institution Press, Stanford University, 1983. 328 pp.

Present-day (1983) life in Communist Vietnam, is studied in this work. The author examines police corruption, economic deprivation, and nationwide social controls. This work is based upon the author's personal experiences, and interviews with Vietnamese refugees who lived under the new order. The work is illustrated.

1617. Norlund, Irene, Carolyn L. Gates, and Vu Cao Dam, eds. *Vietnam in a Changing World*. Surrey, United Kingdom: Curzon Press Limited, 1995. 291 pp.

The editors of this work present economic reforms which have been instituted in Vietnam since the Communist takeover. As early as 1979 the Vietnamese government called for reforms but it was not until 1986 that the first changes were implemented. Initially, Vietnam was largely isolated, globally, following the war. Still, economic reforms have slowly occurred and have permitted Vietnam to reemerge into the world economy.

1618. Pribbenow II, Merle L. "A Tale of Five Generals: Vietnam's Invasion of Cambodia." *The Journal of Military History* 70:2 (April 2006), pp. 459–86.

This recent (2006) reevaluation of the events which occurred from December 1978 to January 1979, during the Vietnamese invasion of Cambodia, are examined in this article. Vietnamese forces moved in, captured Phnom Penh, and dispersed what was left of Pol Pot's Khmer Rouge army. The success of this invasion was dependent

upon the capabilities of five Vietnamese generals, each of whom is discussed. Vietnam's war with Cambodia lasted for 12 years (1977–1989). The events in this article occurred in 1979. The Vietnamese, despite their successes, would have to fight in Cambodia for another 10 years.

1619. Rees, David. "Vietnam Since 'Liberation': Hanoi's Revolutionary Strategy." *Conflict Studies* 89 (November 1977), pp. 1–24.

After North Vietnam "liberated" South Vietnam, Communist repression and re-education began along with North Vietnam's revolutionary aims such as the "Five Year Plan" and "New Economic Zones." The author observes that North Vietnam is now looking toward Thailand as the next target to develop a "people's war."

1620. Templar, Robert. *Shadows and Wind: a View of Modern Vietnam*. New York: Penguin Books, 1999. 400 pp.

In 1994 the author was sent to Vietnam as a reporter for the French press. In this work he has collected extensive interviews which depict the problems confronting the Vietnamese government, bogged down in Socialist ideology, while trying to implement economic reforms. Templar shows how many of the nations who tried to change Vietnam left their own mark. He shows us how contemporary Vietnam is confronted with the issues of hunger, AIDS, and corruption in government.

1621. Weinstein, Franklin B. "U.S.–Vietnam Relations and the Security of Southeast Asia." *Foreign Affairs* 56:4 (July 1978), pp. 842–56.

A look at the Carter administration's case for normalizing relations with Vietnam after the war, and why it did not do so is examined in this article. Weinstein contends that the United States should proceed with normalization so that we can support U.S. interests and help maintain peace and stability in Southeast Asia.

Overlooked – But Not Forgotten! Additions

The following works were inadvertently overlooked by the author, and should have been included in one of the 10 chapters of this bibliography. Nevertheless, I am including them in this section.

Chapter 6: The American Military Experience in Vietnam

A. Combat Operations: 4. Personal Accounts

Burford, John. *LRRP Team Leader*. New York: Ballantine Books, 1994. 224 pp.

The leader of a six-man “Long Range Reconnaissance Patrol” (LRRP) the author recalls his service with “F” Company, 58th Infantry, in Vietnam 1968. Burford describes his patrol’s activities in the A Shau Valley as well as ambushes in which they participated. The book is illustrated and contains a glossary.

Calloway, Joseph W., Jr. *Mekong First Light*. New York: Ballantine Books, Presidio Press, 2004. 256 pp.

The author was a platoon leader in Vietnam with the 5th Special Forces Group and as an advisor to the First Thai regiment deployed to Vietnam during 1966 to 1968. Calloway entered the Army as a private and earned his commission through OCS. In this work he recalls his service in the provinces around the Mekong River Delta and fighting the Viet Cong.

Carlock, Chuck. *Firebirds*. New York: Bantam Books, 1997. 320 pp.

The author was a helicopter pilot with the 71st Assault Helicopter Company in Vietnam during 1967–68. As a pilot he flew in Huey gunships and “slicks” and troop-carrying helicopters for the U.S. Army. He was present during the 1968 Tet Offensive. The work is illustrated.

Chambers, Larry. *Death in the A Shau Valley: L Company LRRPs in Vietnam, 1969–70*. New York: Ivy Books, 1998. 240 pp.

The author first served with the 101st Airborne in Vietnam in 1969, when the LRRPs he was with were switched to “L” Company, 75th Rangers. Despite the change in unit designation the location for Chambers, and the men with him, remained the same – the A Shau Valley where they sought out the Viet Cong. The author recalls his service, as well as that of the LRRPs, in this illustrated work.

Clark, Johnnie M. *Guns Up!* Novato, California: Presidio Press, 2002. 368 pp.

The author served with the 5th Marines in Vietnam 1968. The title of the book comes from the alert for machine gunners to man their weapons (M-60 machine gun) when the enemy attacked. Clark was present during the Tet Offensive and the heavy fighting at Hue. The book is illustrated.

Gwin, Larry. *Baptism: A Vietnam Memoir*. New York: Ivy Books, The Ballantine Publishing Group, 1999. 353 pp.

This illustrated memoir recalls the author’s service with the 1st Cavalry Division (Air-mobile) in Vietnam 1965. Gwin details the fighting in which he was involved in the Ia Drang Valley, west of Pleiku. The book is illustrated with black and white photos.

Heinemann, Larry. *Black Virgin Mountain: A Return to Vietnam*. New York: Vintage Books, A Division of Random House, Incorporated, 2006. 243 pp.

Heinemann served in the U.S. Army’s 25th Infantry Division in Vietnam during 1967–68. As such he served near the famed tunnels of Cu Chi. In 1992 he returned to Vietnam and visited the tunnels and climbed the mountain from which the book’s title is taken. During his trip he interviews Vietnamese veterans from the war.

Henderson, Charles W. *Marshalling the Faithful: The Marines First Year in Vietnam*. New York: The Berkley Publishing Group, 1993. 411 pp.

This story begins when the Marines landed in South Vietnam, 1965, and basically replaced the French. The Marines were expected to

finish what the French did not. The author recalls the first year of service for the Marines from the grunt's point of view.

Laurence, John. *The Cat From Hue: A Vietnam War Story.* New York: Public Affairs, 2002. 848 pp.

As a television reporter for CBS Laurence recalls the 1968 Tet Offensive and the bloody fighting at Hue. At Hue he finds a frightened kitten in the midst of all of the fighting. While he rescued and adopted the cat the book really focuses on the battle for Hue.

McPartlin, Greg. *Combat Corpsman: The Vietnam Memoir of a Navy SEALs Medic.* New York: Berkley Caliber Books, 2005. 319 pp.

Serving as a combat medic – a Marine corpsman, the author was in Vietnam during the 1968 Tet Offensive. As the title states this is his memoir of his service during that period. Later, McPartlin returned to Vietnam serving in the capacity of a medic in the Navy SEALs.

Moore, Lieutenant General Harold G. USA (Ret.), and Joseph L. Galloway. *We Were Soldiers Once ... And Young: Ia Drang: The Battle That Changed the War in Vietnam.* New York: Random House, 1992. 412 pp.

This work details the authors' service with the 1st Battalion, 7th Cavalry in Vietnam during October–November 1965 and the fighting in the Ia Drang Valley. It would be in this fighting that the helicopter was truly recognized as being the weapon to provide air mobility for the troops being deployed. The book is illustrated.

Wiknik, Arthur, Jr. *Nam-Sense: Surviving Vietnam with the 101st Airborne Division.* Havertown, Pennsylvania: Casemate, 2005. 272 pp.

This work recalls the author's service in Vietnam in 1969, with the 101st Airborne Division and the fighting at "Hamburger Hill." The book is illustrated.

Chronology of the United States in Vietnam, 1954–75

1954

May 7, the French garrison at Dien Bien Phu, under the command of Brigadier General Christian Marie, Comte de la Croix de Castries, surrenders to the Viet Minh virtually ending French reign in Indochina. June 16, Emperor Bao Dai appoints Ngo Dinh Diem premier of Vietnam. July 20–21, the Geneva Agreements are signed by French and Viet Minh officials, partitioning Vietnam along the 17th parallel and establishing an International Control Commission to supervise compliance with the agreements. The territory north of the 17th parallel is recognized as being governed under the Communist regime of Ho Chi Minh (the Democratic Republic of Vietnam). The United States and South Vietnam do not sign the accords but agree to observe the terms. September 8, the Manila Pact is signed between the United States and seven other countries. Within weeks it is transformed into the Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO) aimed at checking Communist expansion. October 24, President Dwight D. Eisenhower advises Premier Diem that the United States will provide direct assistance to South Vietnam rather than channel it through French authorities.

1955

March 29, Premier Diem launches a successful campaign against religious sect rebellion. May 10, South Vietnam formally requests U.S. instructors for armed forces. May 16, the U.S. agrees to furnish military aid to Cambodia. July 20, South Vietnam refuses to participate in the all-Vietnam elections

called for by the Geneva Agreements arguing that free elections would be impossible in the Communist North. October 23, the Emperor Bao Dai is deposed in a national referendum in favor of Ngo Dinh Diem who becomes the first president and proclaims the Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam).

1956

February 18, Prince Norodom Sihanouk of Cambodia, while on a visit to Peking, renounces SEATO protection for his country. March 31, Prince Souvanna Phouma becomes the Prime Minister of Laos. April 28, the American Military Assistance Advisory Group (MAAG) assumes training of South Vietnamese forces. The French military high command disbards and French troops depart South Vietnam. July, the election deadline for reunification of North and South Vietnam passes without serious incident. August 6 Prime Minister Souvanna Phouma and Communist Prince Souphanouvong agree to a coalition government in Laos.

1957

January 3, the International Control Commission (ICC) rules that neither North nor South Vietnam have carried out the Geneva Agreements. May, President Diem visits the U.S. and President Eisenhower vows continued aid to South Vietnam. Terrorism and guerrilla attacks begin in South Vietnam. May 29, the Communist Pathet Lao attempt to seize power in Laos. September, President Diem is successful in the South Vietnamese general election.

1958

January, Communist guerrillas attack a plantation north of Saigon and defeat a company of South Vietnamese regulars. Summer, Russia increases aid to North Vietnam, surpassing Chinese assistance.

1959

April, Communist guerrilla activity increases and a branch of the Worker's Party of Vietnam (Lao Dong), of which Ho Chi Minh became Secretary-General in 1956, is formed in the South. May, The U.S. Commander-in-Chief, Pacific, sends the military advisors requested by the South Vietnamese government. June-July, Communist Pathet Lao forces attempt to gain control over northern Laos and receive some Vietnamese Communist assistance. July 8, South Vietnamese Communist terrorists kill two U.S. military advisors in an attack on the Ben Hoa military base. December 31, General Phoumi Nosavan, Royal Laotian Army, seizes control in Laos.

1960

May 5, The U.S. increases MAAG strength from 327 to 685 members. August 9, Vientiane, Laos, is occupied by Captain Kong Le (leader of neutralist military forces) who urges the restoration of a neutral Laos under Prince Souvanna Phouma. September, the Third Party Congress, held in Hanoi, asserts the Democratic Republic of Vietnam policy to liberate South Vietnam, overthrow Diem, and unify the country by force. Le Duan (First Secretary, Vietnam Worker's Party) and Vo Nguyen Giap (Deputy Prime Minister, Minister of Defense, and military commander) call for the formation of the National Liberation Front (NLF) and the creation of a Communist party and army in the South. November 11–12, an abortive military coup by ARVN (Army of the Republic of Vietnam) paratroops and two Marine companies against Diem. November, South Vietnam accuses North Vietnam of direct aggression stating that North Vietnamese troops are moving through Laos. December 16, General Nosavan recaptures Vientiane. December 20, the Communist "National Front for Liberation of South Vietnam" (NLF) is formed. December, the number of U.S. military personnel in South Vietnam reaches 900. The Russians begin massive shipments of military supplies to the DRV (Democratic Republic of Vietnam) for the Pathet Lao and the People's Army of Vietnam (PAVN).

1961

January 4, a pro-Western government, under Prince Boun Oum, is organized in Laos. January, President John F. Kennedy approves negotiations with President Diem to expand and train South Vietnamese military forces and offers 42 million dollars in exchange for reforms by the Diem regime. May 11–13, Vice-President Lyndon Johnson visits South Vietnam and pledges additional U.S. aid. President Kennedy states the use of U.S. armed forces to help South Vietnam is a consideration. May 16, 14 nations meet at Geneva to discuss Laos. September 1–4, Viet Cong forces carry out a series of attacks in the Kontum province of South Vietnam. September 18, Viet Cong battalions seize the provincial capital of Phuoc Vinh – 55 miles from Saigon. September, in a speech at the United Nations President Kennedy warns that South Vietnam is under attack. October 11, President Kennedy sends his principal military advisor, General Maxwell D. Taylor to South Vietnam to investigate the situation. November 16, upon his return General Taylor recommends a force of six to eight thousand men, including combat troops. President Kennedy decides to increase military aid without committing U.S. combat troops to South Vietnam. December, U.S. military forces in South Vietnam reach 3,200.

1962

February 3, the "Strategic Hamlet" concept begins in South Vietnam. February 8, the U.S. Military Assistance Command, Vietnam (USMACV) is

activated in Saigon under General Paul D. Harkins, USA, which reorganized USMAAG. February 27, two South Vietnamese Air Force officers bomb and strafe the presidential palace in Saigon but fail to injure President Diem. American military strength in South Vietnam reaches 4,000 with the arrival of two additional Army aviation units. March, the number of U.S. forces in South Vietnam climbs to 5,400. May 6-27, General Nosavan's troops are routed, opening the way for a settlement in Laos. May, Secretary of Defense Robert S. McNamara visits South Vietnam and says U.S. aid will level off. He doubts that there will be an increase in military forces. August, the first Australian Military Aid Forces (MAF) arrive in South Vietnam. December, U.S. military forces in South Vietnam now total 11,300.

1963

January 2, the ARVN, with U.S. advisors, fights the Battle of Ap Bac and is defeated. U.S. losses: three killed and six wounded. Despite a superiority of numbers and firepower the ARVN does poorly. April, the "*Chieu Hoi*" (Open Arms) program begins with the goal of rallying VC support for the government of South Vietnam and allowing former Viet Cong members to defect. May, a spokesman for the Department of Defense says the "corner has definitely been turned toward victory" over the Viet Cong. May 8, riots erupt in Hue, South Vietnam, the center of Buddhism in the Republic of Vietnam, after the government refuses to permit a procession on Buddha's birthday. Country-wide demonstrations continue into August. June 11, Thich Quang Duc, a Buddhist monk, publicly burns himself to death in Saigon (the first of seven to do so) while his followers prevented the fire from being extinguished in protest against the South Vietnamese government's policy towards Buddhists. August 21, Vietnamese National Police raid Buddhist pagodas throughout South Vietnam. Hundreds of monks are arrested. August, President Diem declares nationwide martial law. Students in Saigon demonstrate and hundreds are arrested. U.S. ambassador Henry Cabot Lodge arrives in Saigon. September, President Kennedy warns that the government of South Vietnam has "gotten out of touch with people" and threatens to cut aid unless immediate reforms are made. Ambassador Lodge tells President Diem that his brother, Ngo Dinh Nhu, head of the South Vietnamese National Police and a strong influence on Diem, must be removed from power. Martial law is lifted by Diem. October, ARVN generals plot a coup against Diem and the U.S. cuts aid to Nhu's forces. U.S. troops committed to Vietnam now number 16,732. November 1-2, a military coup overthrows the Diem government. Diem and Nhu are murdered. November 6, General Duong Van Minh takes over the leadership of South Vietnam. November 15, U.S. government announces the withdrawal of 1,000 advisors to occur in December. November 22, President John F. Kennedy is

assassinated in Dallas, Texas, and Lyndon B. Johnson becomes President. December, the U.S. begins withdrawing 1,000 troops while assuring South Vietnam that it continue to support the war effort.

1964

January 30, a military junta headed by General Nguyen Khanh deposes General Duong Van Minh. Khanh names himself premier and appoints Minh Chief of State. February, Viet Cong attacks increase in Tay Ninh province. March–April, the U.S. considers escalation of the war based on the premise that Hanoi controls the NLF. May, Premier Khanh calls on the U.S. to bomb North Vietnam. June, top U.S. officials meet in Honolulu and review the war. They decide to increase U.S. aid to South Vietnam. Ambassador Lodge urges “selective” bombing of North Vietnamese military targets. June 20, General William C. Westmoreland, USA, replaces General Harkins as Commander, USMACV. July 2, General Maxwell D. Taylor is named U.S. Ambassador to South Vietnam replacing Lodge. August 2, North Vietnamese torpedo boats attack the destroyer U.S.S. *Maddox* outside North Vietnam’s 12-mile limit. August 4, a similar attack is made on the American destroyer U.S.S. *C. Turner Joy*. August 5, President Johnson orders air strikes by carrier aircraft of the Seventh Fleet against the bases used by the torpedo boats and other military targets in North Vietnam. August 7, President Johnson asks Congress to approve a joint resolution pledging full support for U.S. forces in South Vietnam “to promote the maintenance of international peace and security in Southeast Asia.” Congress adopts the Tonkin Gulf Resolution by a vote of 416 to 0 in the House and 88 to 2 in the Senate. The President may now take whatever measures are considered necessary to repel attacks on American forces and to prevent further aggression. November 1, following two months of political turmoil, Tran Van Huong becomes the new premier of the Republic of Vietnam. November 2, a Viet Cong surprise attack against the American base at Bien Hoa kills five Americans and wounds 76. Ambassador Taylor recommends retaliatory raids on North Vietnam. November 4, President Johnson is reelected. December 24, a terrorist bombing in Saigon kills two Americans and injures 52. December 31, total U.S. strength in South Vietnam reaches 23,000.

1965

January 8, 2,000 South Korean troops arrive in South Vietnam. February 7, the Viet Cong attack the American base at Pleiku killing 8 and wounding 109. February 8, President Johnson orders U.S. Air Force and South Vietnamese planes to retaliate by bombing Dong Hoi in North Vietnam. February 10, the Viet Cong strike again bombing a U.S. barracks at Qui Nhon

killing 23 Americans and wounding 21. The U.S. launches another retaliatory air strike on North Vietnam. March 2, the sustained aerial bombardment of North Vietnam, "Operation Rolling Thunder," gets underway. U.S. forces now committed to South Vietnam total 27,000. March 8, the Ninth Marine Expeditionary Brigade arrives at Da Nang, South Vietnam, with over 4,000 men. March 30, a terrorist bomb is detonated outside the American embassy in Saigon killing two Americans and wounding others including Ambassador U. Alexis Johnson. April, President Johnson says the U.S. is prepared to discuss ending the war. He proposes a billion dollar aid program for Southeast Asia. Hanoi rejects the offer and proposes its own peace plan. May 3, the U.S. Army's 173rd Airborne Brigade arrives in South Vietnam bringing the total American strength to 46,500. June, Air Vice Marshal Nguyen Cao Ky emerges as the new premier of South Vietnam and names General Nguyen Van Thieu Chief of State. June 18, Guam-based B-52 bombers make their first strikes of the war against targets in South Vietnam. June 27, the 173rd Airborne Brigade launches a major offensive northeast of Saigon. July, General Taylor resigns as U.S. Ambassador and is replaced by former Ambassador Lodge. October, a South Korean combat division begins landing in the Republic of Vietnam. October 27, American troops begin the month-long Ia Drang Valley campaign. November, there are widespread anti-war demonstrations in the U.S. Two Americans burn themselves to death. December 31, the U.S. now has a total of 181,000 troops committed to South Vietnam.

1966

January 31, President Johnson announces the resumption of the bombing of North Vietnam following a 37-day pause. February 7-8, President Johnson and Premier Ky meet in Hawaii. March, the Communists capture a U.S. Special Forces camp in the A Shau Valley, gaining control of this vital access route into South Vietnam. March 2, Secretary of Defense McNamara announces that American forces in South Vietnam now number 215,000 and another 20,000 are in route. April 12, B-52s bomb targets in North Vietnam for the first time striking near the Mu Gia Pass. May, political unrest continues in South Vietnam with student and Buddhist protests in Da Nang and Hue. Part of the ARVN joins the demonstrators. June, air raids on oil installations in the Haiphong and Hanoi areas begin. Ambassador Lodge holds a series of secret meetings in Saigon with Italian and Polish envoys to explore possible peace negotiations. President Johnson calls for unconditional surrender. June 23, South Vietnamese troops seize Buddhist headquarters in Saigon ending the protests. July, Thieu proposes an invasion of North Vietnam. September, a U.S. study group reports to Secretary of Defense McNamara that "Operation Rolling Thunder" is having "no measurable direct effect" on North Vietnam's war effort in

South Vietnam. They recommend construction of an electronic barrier across the Demilitarized Zone (DMZ). October, some 2,000 non-combatant troops from the Philippines arrive in South Vietnam. October 24–25, the Manila Conference of Free World nations is committed to the Vietnam conflict. October 25, U.S. Navy destroyers commence operations against enemy junks attempting to infiltrate supplies along South Vietnam's coast. November, Secretary of Defense McNamara tells President Johnson that there is "no evidence" that additional troops will change the situation and that bombing is having "no significant impact" on the war. December, talks begin in Warsaw between Polish representatives in Saigon and the U.S. but collapse when the U.S. bombs the Hanoi area in mid-March. December 31, U.S. strength totals 385,000.

1967

January 8, "Operation Cedar Falls," a joint U.S.-South Vietnamese offensive, is launched against the Communist-controlled "Iron Triangle." February 22, "Operation Junction City," largest of the war to date, begins in Tay Ninh province. February 28, the Commander, Naval Forces, Vietnam, establishes the Mekong Delta Mobile Riverine Force. April, anti-war demonstrations are held in New York and San Francisco. May, U.S. and South Vietnamese forces move into the DMZ for the first time. May 1, American military strength in South Vietnam climbs to 436,000. May 4, Ambassador Robert W. Komer becomes General Westmoreland's Deputy for Civil Operations and Rural Development Support (CORDS). September 3, General Nguyen Van Thieu is elected President of South Vietnam with Nguyen Cao Ky as Vice-President. October 4, the North Vietnamese siege at Con Thien is broken. November, President Johnson announces that he is willing to meet North Vietnamese representatives on a neutral ship in neutral waters. North Vietnam rejects the offer. December 31, there are now 486,000 American troops in the Republic of Vietnam.

1968

January, Radio Hanoi broadcasts that North Vietnam will discuss relevant questions if the U.S. unconditionally halts the bombing. January 22–April 7, Khe Sanh is besieged for 77 days. January 30–31, the Communists commence the Tet Offensive in South Vietnam which will last until late February. March, Senator Eugene McCarthy, anti-war candidate, wins the New Hampshire primary. Senator Robert F. Kennedy announces that he will seek the presidency in order to change Vietnam policies. March 16, the My Lai massacre occurs and soldiers of C Company, First Battalion, Twentieth Infantry – the "Americo Division," are charged with killing 175 to 300 Vietnamese civilians. March 31, President Johnson announces that he will

not seek reelection. April 1, Clark M. Clifford is appointed Secretary of Defense replacing McNamara. April 10, President Johnson announces that General Creighton W. Abrams will relieve General Westmoreland as Commander, USMACV, in June. May 3, President Johnson accepts a North Vietnamese offer to begin formal peace talks in Paris. May 4–5, a wave of attacks – less severe than those of the Tet Offensive, strikes 109 cities, towns, and bases in South Vietnam. May 13, the first formal meeting between U.S. and North Vietnamese delegates is held in Paris. June 23, Khe Sanh Combat Base is abandoned. July 18–20, President Johnson and President Thieu meet in Honolulu. October 31, President Johnson announces the cessation of the bombing of North Vietnam. November, Richard M. Nixon is elected President and promises a gradual withdrawal of troops. December 31, U.S. strength reaches 536,100 in South Vietnam.

1969

January 25, formal truce negotiations begin in Paris. February 23–24, Communist forces launch a general offensive with rocket and mortar attacks on 115 cities, towns, and bases in South Vietnam. March, President Nixon warns North Vietnam that the U.S. will not tolerate continued attacks. American forces reach peak level in South Vietnam at 541,000. June 5, U.S. planes raid North Vietnam for the first time since the bombing halt of November 1, 1968. June 8, President Nixon and Premier Thieu meet at Midway Island. President Nixon announces the withdrawal of 25,000 American combat troops. July, the Nixon Administration announces that, in the future, the U.S. will avoid involvements such as Vietnam by limiting support to economic and military aid rather than active combat forces. This policy becomes the "Nixon Doctrine." July 8–August 29, the withdrawal of 25,000 American troops is completed. September 4, Ho Chi Minh's death is announced over Radio Hanoi. September 16, President Nixon reveals plans to withdraw another 35,000 troops. September 30, the U.S. announces the withdrawal of 6,000 Americans from Thailand. October 8, Prince Souvanna Phouma requests increased American aid to counter heavy Communist pressure in Laos. November 15, the "Moratorium" against the war draws massive crowds in Washington calling for an end to the war and the return of the troops. December 15, President Nixon announces that an additional 50,000 Americans will be withdrawn from South Vietnam by April 15, 1970. December 18, Congress prohibits the use of Department of Defense appropriations to introduce ground combat elements into Laos or Thailand. December 21, the government of Thailand announces plans to withdraw its 12,000-man force contingent from South Vietnam. South Korea will maintain a 50,000-man force while the non-combatant Filipinos depart. December 31, U.S. troop strength in South Vietnam declines to 474,000.

1970

January, President Nixon announces that the end of the war is a major goal of American policy. February 10, Souvanna Phouma announces that he will take no action against Communist supply activities along the Ho Chi Minh Trail if North Vietnam withdraws its combat troops from Laos. March 18, General Lon Nol seizes power in Cambodia ousting Prince Norodom Sihanouk. The general has pro-American leanings. March 27, South Vietnamese troops attack Communist bases across the Cambodian border. April 11, Senators Frank Church and John Sherman Cooper propose an amendment prohibiting the funding of American ground operations in Cambodia, Laos, or Thailand. April 14, Lon Nol, Cambodian President, appeals for foreign military assistance. April 29, USMACV announces American participation in a South Vietnamese offensive into Cambodia. May 2, anti-war demonstrations occur on a number of college campuses. May 9, a huge crowd, estimated at 75–100,000 demonstrators, gathers in Washington to oppose the Cambodian invasion. Fatal shootings occur at Kent State University by members of the Ohio National Guard, during a demonstration. June 29, U.S. troops withdraw from Cambodia. Air operations continue. October 15, President Nixon announces that another 40,000 American troops are to be withdrawn from South Vietnam by the end of the year. November, a surprise raid is made by U.S. troops on Son Tay, a prison camp 23 miles from Hanoi, in an unsuccessful attempt to rescue American POWs. December 31, Congress repeals the Tonkin Gulf Resolution. U.S. strength in South Vietnam drops to 335,800.

1971

February 8, ARVN launches “Operation Lam Son 719” into Laos but is repulsed. March 25 “Operation Lam Son 719” ends. April 7, President Nixon announces that 100,000 U.S. troops will be withdrawn from South Vietnam by the end of the year. April 24, massive anti-war demonstrations occur in Washington and San Francisco. June, North Vietnam presents a nine-point peace proposal to Henry Kissinger at a secret meeting in Paris. Among other points the plan calls for a cease-fire, termination of U.S. support for the Thieu government, and a withdrawal of all U.S. forces. June 13, the *New York Times* begins releasing the Pentagon Papers. August 18, Australia and New Zealand announce that they will withdraw their troops from South Vietnam. September 9, South Korea announces that by June 1972 most of its 48,000 troops will depart South Vietnam. October, Thieu is reelected President of South Vietnam. Kissinger presents a counterproposal in a secret Paris meeting calling for the withdrawal of American forces within six months of agreement, free elections, and the release of POWs. November 12, President Nixon announces the further withdrawal of 45,000

American troops from South Vietnam during December to January. December, American-supported troops in Laos, are on the verge of defeat by North Vietnamese forces. December 26–30, American planes attack military targets in South Vietnam in reaction to a North Vietnamese buildup. These are the largest air operations against the Communists since the bombing halt in November 1968.

1972

January, North Vietnam refuses to continue the peace talks. January 13, President Nixon announces a further reduction of American troop strength in South Vietnam to 69,000 by May. March 30, North Vietnam invades South Vietnam. April 3, additional aircraft carriers join the U.S. fleet off the coast of Vietnam. April 5, U.S. Air Force planes begin reinforcing units in Thailand. April 6, Marine aircraft are sent to Da Nang. The U.S. resumes aerial and naval bombardment of North Vietnam. April 26, President Nixon announces that, by July, U.S. troop strength in the Republic of Vietnam will drop to 49,000. May 1, Quang Tri, South Vietnam's northernmost province, falls to the North Vietnamese. May 8, President Nixon, in a nationwide address, announces the mining of Haiphong Harbor and six other major North Vietnamese ports and a blockade of supplies to North Vietnam. He offers also to withdraw all U.S. troops within four months of the release of all American POWs and an agreement is reached on an internationally supervised cease-fire. June, the U.S. ground combat role in the Republic of Vietnam is terminated. Fewer than 60,000 support personnel and technicians remain. June 29, General Fred C. Weyand, USA, replaces General Abrams as Commander, USMACV. August 12, the last American ground combat troops depart South Vietnam. August 29, President Nixon announces further withdrawals, reducing the U.S. strength in South Vietnam, to 27,000 by December. September 16, South Vietnamese troops recapture Quang Tri city but most of the province remains under Communist control. October, Kissinger states that "peace is at hand." November, President Nixon is reelected. December 18, President Nixon orders the resumption of the bombing north of the 20th Parallel (Operation Linebacker II) following a two-month pause. The peace talks are temporarily suspended.

1973

January 15, President Nixon, because of the progress of the peace talks, suspends American military operations against North Vietnam. January 23, Henry Kissinger and Le Duc Tho initial an agreement ending the war and providing for the release of POWs. January 27, a peace agreement is formally signed. January 28, a cease-fire in Cambodia is proposed by Lon Nol.

February 21, the Communists and Souvanna Phouma conclude a cease-fire in Laos. March 17, an unsuccessful attempt to kill Lon Nol is made at the presidential palace in Phnom Penh. March 29, the last American troops leave the Republic of Vietnam. April 1, American POWs arrive at Clark Air Force Base, the Philippines. April 9, Prince Sihanouk rejects Lon Nol's truce proposal. June 29, U.S. Congress bans bombing in Cambodia after August 15.

1974

January 4, President Thieu claims the war in South Vietnam has resumed. January 15–28, Cambodian rebels inflict many casualties by shelling Phnom Penh. January 27, Saigon claims that 13,778 soldiers, 2,159 civilians, and 45,057 Communists have died since the January 1973 truce. January 28, President Nixon pledges support to Lon Nol's Cambodian government to fight the Khmer Rouge guerrillas. April 5–7, the Communists overrun the outposts protecting Phnom Penh. June 3, U.S. advisors leave Laos. July 9, another request for truce talks with Lon Nol is rejected by Prince Sihanouk. November 30, Lon Nol proposes another cease-fire in Cambodia.

1975

March 5, North Vietnamese troops launch an offensive in the Central Highlands of South Vietnam. April 1, Lon Nol flees Cambodia. April 9–11, Communist insurgents and Laotian troops clash. April 10–15, following heavy fighting, Xuan Loc – 38 miles east of Saigon, is captured by North Vietnamese troops. April 12, the U.S. Ambassador and his staff leave Cambodia. April 17, Phnom Penh falls. April 20, the remaining American military and civilian personnel, with some Vietnamese, begin to be withdrawn from Saigon. April 21, President Thieu resigns. April 28, Duong Van Minh, who helped overthrow Diem, takes over the government in South Vietnam. April 30, North Vietnamese troops enter Saigon. President Minh announces unconditional surrender. May 15, U.S. Marines land on Koh Tang Island to rescue the crew of the American freighter S.S. *Mayaguez* seized by Cambodian Communists. May 16, the Pathet Lao seizes Pakse in Laos. May 20, Savannakhet falls to the Pathet Lao. May 21, anti-American demonstrations are held in Vientiane, Laos. June, the Pathet Lao seize the American Embassy in Vientiane. August 23, the Communist takeover of Laos is consolidated. December 3, Laos becomes a Communist state with Souphanouvong as President. December, Cambodia is renamed "Democratic Kampuchea."

List of Principal Characters of the United States and Southeast Asia, 1954–75

United States Presidents

Dwight D. Eisenhower, 1954–61; John F. Kennedy, 1961–63; Lyndon B. Johnson, 1963–69; Richard M. Nixon, 1969–73; Gerald R. Ford, 1973–75.

South Vietnamese Premiers

Bao Dai, 1954 (Last Emperor); Ngo Dinh Diem, 1954–63; Duong Van Minh, 1963–64; Nguyen Khanh, 1964; Tran Van Huong, 1964–65; Phan Huy Quat, 1965–66; Nguyen Cao Ky, 1966–67; Nguyen Van Thieu, 1967–75; Duong Van Minh, 1975.

Democratic Republic of Vietnam (North Vietnam) Leaders

Ho Chi Minh – leader, Vietnamese independence movement, 1930s–1969; Pham Van Dong – Premier, 1955–75; Le Duan – following Ho's death (1969) led the independence movement; Vo Nguyen Giap – commander, People's Army of Vietnam, to 1972. Conducted the siege against the French at Dien Bien Phu (1954), Le Duc Tho – Hanoi's chief negotiator in Paris. Bui Tin – military officer who accepted Duong Van Minh's surrender in 1975.

Cambodian Leaders

Norodom Sihanouk – Prince, abdicated throne (1954) and organized a popular political party which was overthrown in 1970. Exiled in Beijing.

Lon Nol – organized the coup which overthrew Sihanouk (1970) and was later defeated by the Khmer Rouge and fled to Indonesia. Pol Pot – defeated Lon Nol (1975) and became responsible for the genocide that resulted in the deaths of 1.5 million Cambodians.

Laotian Leaders

Souvanna Phouma (1901–84) – Prime Minister at various times. Tried to be neutral yet permitted the U.S. to bomb Communist supply routes in Laos from 1963 to 1973. Souphanouvong (1909–95) – younger half-brother of Souvanna Phouma. Became the leader of the Communist Pathet Lao. Kong Le – Army Captain who led the 1960 coup which overthrew the U.S. backed Laotian government and returned Souvanna Phouma to power.

Thailand

His Majesty King Bhumibol Adulyadej, Rama III (1946–).

U.S. Secretaries of State

John Foster Dulles, 1953–59 (President Eisenhower); Christian Herter, 1959–61 (President Eisenhower); Dean D. Rusk, 1961–69 (Presidents Kennedy and Johnson); William Rogers, 1969–73 (President Nixon); Dr. Henry A. Kissinger, 1973–75 (Presidents Nixon and Ford).

U.S. Ambassadors to South Vietnam

Donald Heath, 1952–55; G. Frederick Reinhardt, 1955–57; Eldridge Dur-brow, 1957–61; Frederick Nolting, 1961–63; Henry Cabot Lodge, 1963–64; Maxwell D. Taylor, 1964–65; Henry Cabot Lodge, 1965–67; Ellsworth Bunker, 1967–73; Graham A. Martin, 1973–75.

U.S. Secretaries of Defense

Charles Wilson, 1953–56 (President Eisenhower); Neil McElroy, 1956–59 (President Eisenhower); Thomas Gates, 1959–61 (President Eisenhower); Robert S. McNamara, 1961–68 (Presidents Kennedy and Johnson); Clark Clifford, 1968–69 (President Johnson); Melvin Laird, 1969–73 (President Nixon); Elliot Richardson, 1973 (President Nixon); James Schlesinger, 1973–75 (Presidents Nixon and Ford).

***Commanders, U.S. Military Assistance Advisory Group, Vietnam (USMAAGV) *Preceded by U.S. Military Assistance Advisory Group, Indochina**

Lieutenant General John W. O'Daniel, 1954–55*; Lieutenant General Samuel T. Williams, 1955–60; Lieutenant General Lionel C. McGarr, 1960–62; Major General Charles J. Timms, 1962–64. *Last Commander of MAAG-Indochina.

Commanders, U.S. Military Assistance Command, Vietnam (USMACV)

General Paul D. Harkins, 1962–64; General William C. Westmoreland, 1964–68; General Creighton W. Abrams, 1968–72; General Fred C. Weyand, 1972–73.

Commanders, U.S. Army, Vietnam (USARV)

General William C. Westmoreland, 1965–68; General Creighton W. Abrams, 1968–72.

Commander, U.S. Army, Vietnam/Military Assistance Command, Vietnam Support Command (USARV/MACV Support Command)

General Frederick C. Weyand, 1972–73.

Chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS)

Admiral Arthur W. Radford, USN, 1953–57; General Nathan F. Twining, USAF, 1957–60; General Lyman L. Lemnitzer, USA, 1960–62; General Maxwell D. Taylor, USA, 1962–64; General Earle G. Wheeler, USA, 1964–70; Admiral Thomas H. Moorer, USN, 1970–74; General George S. Brown, USAF, 1974–78.

U.S. Secretaries of the Army

Robert Ten Broek Stevens, 1953–55 (President Eisenhower); Wilber Marion Brucker, 1955–61 (President Eisenhower); Elvis Jacob Stahr, Jr., 1961–62 (President Kennedy); Cyrus Vance, 1962–64 (Presidents Kennedy and Johnson); Stephen Ailes, 1964–65 (President Johnson); Stanley Resor, 1965–71 (Presidents Johnson and Nixon); Robert F. Froehlke, 1971–73 (President Nixon); Howard H. Callaway, 1973–75 (Presidents Nixon and Ford).

U.S. Secretaries of the Navy

Robert B. Anderson, 1953–54 (President Eisenhower); Charles S. Thomas, 1954–57 (President Eisenhower); Thomas S. Gates, 1957–59 (President

Eisenhower); William B. Franke, 1959–61 (President Eisenhower); John B. Connally, Jr., 1961 (President Kennedy); Fred Korth, 1962–63 (President Kennedy); Paul B. Fay (acting), 1963 (Presidents Kennedy and Johnson); Paul H. Nitze, 1963–67 (President Johnson); Charles F. Baird (acting), 1967 (President Johnson); Paul R. Ignatius, 1967–69 (President Johnson); John H. Chafee, 1969–72 (President Nixon); John W. Warner, 1972–74 (President Nixon); J. William Middendorf, II, 1974–77 (Presidents Nixon and Ford).

U.S. Secretaries of the Air Force

Harold E. Talbott, 1953–55 (President Eisenhower); Donald A. Quarles, 1955–57 (President Eisenhower); James H. Douglas, Jr., 1957–59 (President Eisenhower); Dudley C. Sharp, 1959–61 (President Eisenhower); Eugene M. Zukert, 1961–65 (Presidents Kennedy and Johnson); Harold Brown, 1965–69 (Presidents Johnson and Nixon); John L. McLucas (acting), 1973 (President Nixon); John L. McLucas, 1973–75 (Presidents Nixon and Ford); James W. Plummer (acting), 1975–76 (President Ford).

Chief of Naval Operations (CNO)

Admiral Robert B. Carney, 1953–55; Admiral Arleigh A. Burke, 1955–61; Admiral George W. Anderson, Jr., 1961–63; Admiral David L. McDonald, 1963–67; Admiral Thomas H. Moorer, 1967–70; Admiral Elmo R. Zumwalt, 1970–74; Admiral James L. Holloway, III, 1974–78.

Commandants, U.S. Marine Corps

General Lemuel C. Shepherd, Jr., 1952–55; General Randolph M. Pate, 1956–59; General David M. Shoup, 1960–63; General Wallace M. Greene, Jr., 1964–67; General Leonard F. Chapman, Jr., 1968–71; General Robert Everton Cushman, Jr., 1972–75.

Chiefs of Staff, U.S. Air Force

General Nathan F. Twining, 1953–57; General Thomas D. White, 1957–61; General Curtis E. LeMay, 1961–65; General John P. McConnell, 1965–69; General John D. Ryan, 1969–73; General George S. Brown, 1973–74; General David C. Jones, 1974–78.

Commandants, U.S. Coast Guard

Vice Admiral Merlin O'Neill, 1949–54; Admiral Alfred C. Richmond, 1954–62; Admiral Edwin J. Roland, 1962–66; Admiral Willard J. Smith, 1966–70; Admiral Chester R. Bender, 1970–74; Admiral Owen W. Siler, 1974–78.

Chiefs of Staff, U.S. Army

General Matthew B. Ridgway, 1953–55; General Maxwell D. Taylor, 1955–59; General Lyman L. Lemnitzer, 1959–60; General George H. Decker, 1960–62; General Earle G. Wheeler, 1962–64; General Harold K. Johnson, 1964–68; General William C. Westmoreland, 1968–72; General Bruce Palmer, Jr., (acting), 1972; General Creighton W. Abrams, 1972–74; General Frederick C. Weyand, 1974–76.

Free World Military Assistance Forces (FWMAF)*Australia*

Australian Army Training Team, Vietnam (AATTV), 1962–72; Headquarters, Australian Army Force, Vietnam (HQAAFV), 1965–66; Headquarters, Australian Forces, Vietnam (HQAFV), 1966–72; Headquarters, 1st Australian Task Force (ATF), 1961–72; Australian Army Assistance Group, Vietnam (AAAGV), 1972–73.

New Zealand

New Zealand “V” Force, 1965–72.

The Philippines

1st Philippine Civic Action Group, Vietnam (PHILCAG), 1966–69.

Thailand

Royal Thai Army Regiment, 1967–68; Royal Thai Army Expeditionary Division, 1969–71; Royal Thai Army Volunteer Force, 1971–72.

Republic of Korea (South Korea)

ROK Forces, Vietnam Field Command, 1966–73; ROK Capital Division, 1965–77; ROK 9th Infantry Division, 1966–73; ROK 2nd Marine Corps Brigade, 1965–72. *Author's note:* Other countries providing non-combatant support personnel included Taiwan and Spain.

Glossary of Abbreviations, Acronyms, and Terms

- Agent Orange** 2,4,5-T dioxin, a highly toxic defoliant sprayed on vegetation
- AID (USAID)** U.S. Agency for International Development
- AIT** Advanced Infantry Training
- AK-47** Standard Soviet military assault rifle supplied to the North Vietnamese Army and Viet Cong
- American Decade** The years of greatest involvement by the U.S. in Vietnam, 1964–73
- AMTRAC or AMPHTRAC** Amphibious armored vehicle used by Marines to transport troops and supplies, armed with a machine gun
- AO** Aerial observer; Area of operations
- Ao Dai** Traditional long-flowing dress of Vietnamese women
- APC** Armored personnel carrier used by the Army, armed with a 50 caliber machine gun
- Arc light** B-52 bomber strike
- ARVN** Army of the Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam)
- B-40** A shoulder-fired, rocket-propelled, grenade launcher, used by the NVA and VC for anti-tank and antipersonnel targets
- Bac Se** Vietnamese for “doctor”
- Ban Ban** Vietnamese for “to shoot” or “engage in battle”
- Base camp** Brigade or division size headquarters
- Beehive rounds** An explosive artillery shell which contained thousands of small projectiles instead of shrapnel
- Bird** Any aircraft but usually refers to a helicopter
- Body bag** Plastic bag used for the retrieval of dead bodies from the battlefield
- Body count** American practice of counting the enemy dead and using the figures as a statistical indicator of military success
- Boo Coo** Many; a perversion of the French “*beaucoup*” learned by the Vietnamese and passed on to the Americans
- Boot** A soldier out of basic training or “boot camp”
- Brother** A fellow black serviceman
- Brown bar** A Second Lieutenant
- Bush** Infantry term for the field or “boonies”
- Busting caps** Marine Corps term for firing a weapon

- C-4** Plastic explosive carried in one-pound bars; used as much for cooking as for detonating
- Can Cuoc** Vietnamese for “identification card”
- Caribou** A small transport plane
- Cav** Air cavalry; helicopter-borne infantry
- Charlie** Slang for VC (“Viet Cong” or “Victor Charlie” or “Mr. Charles”)
- Chieu Hoi** South Vietnamese program of voluntary surrender for Viet Cong and North Vietnamese to be repatriated. Also known as the “Open Arms” program
- Chinook** A supply and transport helicopter
- Chopper** A helicopter
- CIB** Combat Infantry Badge; awarded to infantrymen who have been under fire in combat
- CINCPAC** Commander-in-Chief, Pacific
- Claymore** Antipersonnel mine
- Cobra** Army helicopter
- Coe** (Vietnamese *co*) pidgin used to identify a girl or young woman
- Combined Action Program (Platoon) (CAP)** Marine program for integrating U.S. and Vietnamese troops for local security purposes
- COMUSMACV** Commander, U.S. Military Assistance Command, Vietnam
- Connex container** a corrugated metal packing crate, approximately six feet in length
- CORDS** Civil Operations and Revolutionary Development Support
- COSVN** Central Office for South Vietnam; Communist headquarters for political and military action in South Vietnam
- CP** Command post
- C-Rats** C-rations, the standard meal eaten in the field; provided in cartons containing 12 different meals
- DEROS** Date Eligible to Return from Overseas
- Diddy-bopping** Carelessly walking
- Dinky Dau** (Vietnamese *dien cai dau*) to be crazy
- Didi** Vietnamese for “to run” (*Didi Mau Len* to run quickly)
- Dung Lai** Vietnamese for “stop”
- Dust-Off** Medical evacuation helicopter
- E-tool** Entrenching tool; a small, folding, shovel
- Enclave Strategy** A strategy devised by General James Garvin whereby U.S. forces would clear and hold certain areas enclaves, along the Vietnamese coast
- FAC** Forward Air Controller
- FARMGATE** Code name for the early U.S. Air Force support of the ARVN
- Fire base** Temporary artillery encampment used for fire support of forward ground operations
- Fire fight** Small arms fire exchange with the enemy

- Flack jacket** A heavy, fiberglass-filled vest, worn for protection from shrapnel
- Fleshettes** Antipersonnel mine without great explosive power, containing dart-shaped nails intended to wound and kill
- Fragging** The killing or wounding of a military leader by his own troops usually by a fragmentation grenade
- Free Fire Zone** Area where artillery could target and fire without restriction
- Friendly Fire** The volume of fire, usually artillery, fired by U.S. forces against the enemy
- FSB** Fire-support base
- Fugazi** All screwed up
- G3** Division level tactical advisor; a staff officer
- GR Point** Graves Registration Point; that place where the collection, identification, embalming, and processing of dead soldiers occurred; a duty of the Quarter-master
- Geneva Accords** Signed on July 20, 1954, following the Vietnamese victory at Dien Bien Phu. Established a temporary demarcation line at the 17th parallel, north of which Communist forces were to gather while, south of the line, forces allied with the French were to gather. General elections, which were to have been scheduled within a short period of the signing, were never held
- Get some** Common American expression meaning to kill the enemy
- Gook** Derogatory term used by U.S. troops to refer to Vietnamese nationals; a generic term applied to all orientals. Originated during the Korean War and passed on by Korean vets
- Green Machine** Term used to refer to the institutional army
- Grunt** Infantryman
- HE** High explosive
- H and I** Harassment and interdiction artillery fire
- Hoc Tap** Vietnamese for “reeducation”
- Hoi Chanh** A defector under the *Chieu Hoi* (“Open Arms”) program
- Hooch** A dwelling, either temporary or permanent, such as a tent or a Vietnamese home
- ICC** International Control Commission
- I Corps** Northernmost military region in South Vietnam
- II Corps** Central Highlands military region in South Vietnam
- III Corps** Military region between Saigon and the Central Highlands
- IV Corps** Mekong Delta, southernmost military region in South Vietnam
- IDAD** Internal Defense and Development; term referring to the pacification of the countryside population of Vietnam
- III MAF** Third Marine Amphibious Force
- Illum** Illumination flare, usually fired by an artillery weapon or a mortar
- Increments** A removable charge attached to the mortar fins. If they became wet the mortar round would misfire causing the round to fall short of the target

- JCS** Joint Chiefs of Staff
- Jungle boots** A combination combat boot and canvas sneaker worn by U.S. troops in tropical climates where leather would rot due to dampness; the canvas dried much quicker than leather
- JUSPAO** Joint U.S. Public Affairs Office
- K-bar** Combat knife
- Khong Biet*** Vietnamese for “I don’t know”
- KIA** Killed in action
- Kit Carson Scout** A former enemy soldier who defected under the *Chieu Hoi* (“Open Arms”) program and actively aided American Marines and, later, the U.S. Army
- Klick** Kilometer
- LAAW** A shoulder-fired 66-millimeter rocket, for which the launcher was disposable
- Lai Day*** Vietnamese for “come here”
- Lao Dong Party** Vietnamese Workers’ Party
- Lay chilly** Freeze, stop all motion
- Lifer** Career military individual, often used derogatorily
- LP** Listening post
- LRRP** Long-Range Reconnaissance Patrol
- Lurp** A member of a LRRP (Long-Range Reconnaissance Patrol)
- LZ** Landing zone for helicopters, usually in a clearing in a remote area
- M-1** Vintage World War II rifle, .30 caliber
- M-14** Wood-stock rifle used early in the Vietnam War
- M-16** The standard American rifle used in Vietnam after 1966; light-weight, semi-automatic, manufactured by Colt Firearms
- M-60** Machine gun
- M-79** Single-barreled grenade launcher
- MAAG** Military Assistance Advisory Group
- MACV** Military Assistance Command, Vietnam; the general headquarters of the American expeditionary forces in Vietnam
- MAF** Marine Amphibious Force
- Mama san*** Pidgin used by U.S. troops to identify any mature Vietnamese woman
- Medevac** Medical evacuation helicopter used for the rapid evacuation of casualties from the battlefield
- MIA** Missing in action
- Montagnard** Indigenous mountain-dwelling people of Vietnam
- MOS** Military occupational specialty
- Most ricky-tick** Slang meaning immediately, if not sooner
- MTOE** Modified table of organization and equipment
- MULE** A small, motorized platform used for transporting personnel and supplies; originally designed to carry a 106-millimeter recoilless rifle

- NCO** Noncommissioned officer, usually a squad leader or platoon sergeant
- NLF** National Liberation Front; political organization for the guerrilla forces in South Vietnam
- Number one** The very best
- Number ten** The very worst
- NVA** North Vietnamese Army (soldier)
- O Dau?** Vietnamese for “where?”
- One-Oh-Five, One-Oh-Six, etc.** Artillery pieces
- OP** Outpost, manned during daylight hours to watch for enemy movement
- OPLAN** Operations plan
- PACAF** Pacific Air Force
- Pacification** See “IDAD”
- Papa san** Pidgin used to identify any older Vietnamese man
- Papa-Sierra** slang for Platoon Sergeant
- PAVN** People’s Army of Vietnam (North Vietnam)
- Peers Inquiry** Investigation into the My Lai massacre of March 14, 1970, conducted by Lieutenant General W. R. Peers
- PF** Popular Forces; South Vietnamese National Guard-type local military units
- Phoenix** English name for the “Phuong Hoang” program
- Phuong Hoang** Vietnamese for “Phoenix,” a program of disruption and destruction of Viet Cong infrastructure
- Pogue** Derogatory term for military personnel employed in rear echelon support capacities
- Point** The forward man or element on a combat mission
- POL** Petroleum, oil, lubricants
- POW** Prisoner of war
- PRG** Provisional Revolutionary Government, Viet Cong and National Liberation Front, constituted on June 6, 1969
- Punji stakes** Concealed, sharpened bamboo stakes, usually covered with feces, on which an unwary American soldier might step or fall
- Que Lam** Vietnamese for “backward person”; a peasant; often used derogatorily
- RA** Regular Army; prefix to the serial numbers of enlistees
- React** For one unit to come to the aid of another under enemy fire
- Recon** Reconnaissance; small scout patrol
- Revolutionary Development** see “IDAD”
- RF** Regional Forces
- ROAD** Reorganization of Army Divisions; periodic changing of the military fighting structure
- Rome plow** An oversize bulldozer used to flatten dense jungle
- Rotate** Return to the U.S. at the end of one year in Vietnam
- RPG** Rocket-propelled grenade; used by the NVA and VC
- R and R** Rest and relaxation; a three- to seven-day vacation from the war

- RTO** Radiotelephone operator; an infantryman who carried a field radio and was in charge of communications for his unit
- RVN** Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam)
- RVNAF** Republic of Vietnam (South) Air or Armed Forces
- S2** Battalion or brigade level staff officer for intelligence
- SAM** Surface-to-air missile
- Sapper** A soldier who would try to infiltrate enemy defenses in order to place explosives to blow holes in their defenses
- SEA** Southeast Asia
- SEATO** Southeast Asia Treaty Organization
- Sergeant Rock** A comic book character; a combat veteran of World War II
- Shaped charge** An explosive charge where the detonation is focused in one direction
- Shit burning** Latrine sanitization by incinerating the excrement with kerosene
- Short-timer** A soldier nearing the end of his tour of duty in Vietnam
- Skate** A task which required little effort or pain
- Sky crane** A huge double-engine helicopter used for lifting and transporting heavy equipment
- Slick** Slang for helicopter
- Slope** Derogatory term for a Vietnamese
- SP pack** A cellophane packet containing toilet items and cigarettes
- Spooky** A C-47 cargo plane mounted with a minigun in the door capable of firing 6,000 rounds per minute; also known as “Puff the Magic Dragon”
- Strak** Strict adherence to military rules and regulations
- TAADS** The Army Authorization Document System, the record-keeping method used by the U.S. Army
- TAOR** Tactical Area of Responsibility
- TC** Tactical commander
- Tee tee** (Vietnamese *ti ti*) pidgin for very small
- TOC** Tactical operations center
- TOE** Table of organization and equipment
- Top** A top sergeant; the first sergeant
- T.O.T.** Time on target; a prearranged artillery or mortar barrage, set to occur at a specific time in order to coordinate with an infantry attack
- Tracer** A bullet or shell chemically treated to leave a trail of smoke or fire
- Unbloused** Pants not tucked into the top of the boots
- US** Prefix to the serial numbers of Army draftees
- USARV** U.S. Army Republic of Vietnam; command of operations unit for all U.S. military forces in Vietnam; based at Long Binh
- Viet Cong** Vietnamese term signifying the “Communist” guerrillas in the South **Viet Minh** the name for the guerrillas during the French war in Indochina

- Vietnamization** President Nixon's program to turn the war over, gradually, to the South Vietnamese while phasing out American troops
- Ville** slang for village
- VNAF** Vietnamese (South) Air Force
- VVAW** Vietnam Veterans Against the War
- VWP** Vietnamese Workers' Party; the Communist party of North Vietnam
- Wasted** killed
- Web gear** Canvas belt and shoulder straps used for carrying equipment and ammunition
- WIA** Wounded in action
- WP or "Willie Peter"** White phosphorus; artillery or mortar round used for marking targets, incendiary effects, and smoke screens
- The World** The United States
- XO** Executive officer; the second in command of a military unit
- ZI** Zone of the Interior
- Zulu** A casualty report

Author Index

A

Abbott, Steve, 1584
Abel, Lt. JG Christopher A., 932
Adair, Gilbert, 1290
Adams, Nina S., 196
Adams, Sherman, 516
Addington, Larry H., 409
Alexander, Charles C., 517
Alexander, Capt. Joseph H., 920
Allen, LTC Alfred M., 1019
Allgood, LTC Frank E., 757, 758
Altman, 1LT Michael J., 1365
Amos, LTC Harry O., 827
Andersen, Lee, 1358
Anderson, Charles R., 306, 828
Anderson, David L., 1379
Anderson, Kenneth, 636
Anderson, William C., 989, 1201
Andrews, William R., 281
Appy, Christian G., 1474
Aptheker, Herbert, 323
Archer, Robert D., 785
Arlen, Michael J., 1167
Armbruster, Frank E., 474
Armstrong, Charles K., 1140
Arrowsmith, Pat, 1413
Ashmore, Harry S., 410
Asprey, Robert B., 697
Atkinson, Hugh, 1554
Austin, Anthony, 533

B

Babbs, 1LT Kenneth J., 910
Babcock, Lt. R. S., 773
Bachman, Jerald G., 1380
Badillo, Gilbert, 1555
Bain, Chester A., 236
Bain, David H., 1441
Baker, LTC John W., 933
Baker, Mark, 1000
Baker, Richard E., 1202, 1275
Balkind, Jonathan J., 1576
Ball, George M., 475
Ballard, Jack S., 786
Bandell, Kurt L., 1068
Baral, Jaya K., 601
Barber, Stephen, 1475
Barnet, Richard J., 411

Barrett, Raymond, 664
Barron, John, 173
Barry, Jan, 1276, 1414
Bartecchi, Carl E. M.D., 947
Barth, R. L., 1277
Bartimus, Tad, 1170
Bartlett, Merrill L., 205
Bartlett, Tom, 1075
Basche, James, 217
Basel, G. I., 990
Baskir, Lawrence, 1403, 1466
Bastin, John, 99
Bator, Victor, 237, 412
Battle, Capt. M. R., 1126
Bausch, Robert, 1203
Baxter, Gordon, 846
Beal, John R., 518
Beechy, Atlee, 307
Beidler, Philip D., 1193, 1585
Bell, Coral, 557
Bell, Dana, 787
Bellows, Thomas J., 135
Bendell, LTC Lee R., 1076
Bennett, Alan, 218
Bennett, Curtis P., 993
Berding, Andrew H., 519
Berger, Carl, 1003, 1004
Berman, Larry, 534, 609
Berman, Paul, 350
Berrigan, Daniel, 1415
Berry, D. C., 1278
Berry, John S., 1442
Besch, Capt. Edwin W., 847
Biggio, Col. Charles P., Jr., 269
Bilton, Michael, 1443
Bjelajac, Slavko N., 728
Black, Col. Edwin F., 197, 312
Blacker, Irwin P., 1204
Blakey, Scott, 1514
Blanco, Richard L., 12
Blaufarb, Douglas S., 698
Bletz, Donald F., 602
Bloodworth, Dennis, 100
Bloomfield, L. P., 598
Blum, Robert M., 136
Blumenson, Martin, 683
Boatman, Alan, 1205
Boehm, Frank, 1416
Boettcher, Thomas D., 1342
Boettiger, John R., 476

- Bonds, Ray, 1343
 Bourne, Peter G. M.D., 1586
 Bouscaren, Anthony T., 313, 398
 Bowers, Ray L., 688
 Boyer, William W., 1381
 Boyle, Richard, 1577
 Bradford, LTC Zeb A., Jr., 665
 Braestrup, Peter, 1158, 1476
 Brandon, Henry, 413
 Branfman, Fred, 206
 Brewer, Garry D., 760
 Briand, Rena, 1171
 Briantais, Jean-Marie, 720
 Brigham, Robert K., 1112
 Briley, John, 1206
 Briscoe, Edward G. M.D., 948
 Britton, Jack, 801
 Broughton, Col. Jack, 879
 Brown, F. C., 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809,
 810, 811, 812, 1113
 Brown, Capt. Gerald A., 949
 Brown, Sam, 558
 Brown, Seyom, 559
 Brown, Weldon A., 414, 415
 Browne, Corrine, 1207, 1556
 Browne, Lt. David L., 1097
 Browne, Malcolm W., 1172
 Browning, Frank, 1444
 Bryan, C. D. B., 1557
 Buchan, Alastair, 416
 Buckingham, William A., Jr., 721, 722
 Buckley, William F., Jr., 137
 Buehl, LTC Louis H., 324
 Buhite, Russell D., 159
 Bullard, Maj. Monte R., 729
 Bundy, McGeorge, 560
 Bundy, William P., 417
 Bunge, Frederica M., 219
 Bunting, Josiah, 1208
 Burchett, Wilfred G., 138, 207, 325, 399,
 699, 1190
 Burke, Adm. Arleigh, 666
 Burkett, B. G., 1587
 Burns, 1LT John C., 1020
 Burns, Richard D., 2, 9
 Burrows, Larry, 1349
 Busch, Noel, 220
 Buss, Claude A., 101, 102
 Buszynski, Leszek, 139
 Butterworth, W. E., 1209, 1210
 Buttinger, Joseph, 238, 239, 240, 241, 418
 Byerly, Wesley G., Jr., 1558
- C**
- Cadden, Robert, 282
 Cady, John F., 103
 Cagle, Vice Adm. Malcolm W., 921
- Cairns, J. F., 242
 Caldwell, Malcolm, 186
 Cameron, Allan W., 25
 Cameron, James, 326
 Campagna, Anthony S., 1438
 Cao Van Vien, Gen., 316, 317, 318, 689,
 1114
 Capps, Walter H., 1477
 Caputo, Philip, 950, 1211
 Card, Josefina J., 1588
 Carroll, Capt. E. J., Jr., 667
 Carver, Michael, 637
 Case, Margaret H., 7
 Casey, Michael, 1279
 Cash, John A., 848, 849
 Cassidy, John, 1212
 Catton, Phillip E., 1478
 Chaliand, Gerard, 327
 Chandler, Robert W., 761
 Chapelle, Dickey, 911
 Chapman, Gen. Leonard F., Jr., 1077
 Charlton, Michael, 419
 Charlton, Richard G., 774
 Chawla, Sudershan, 160
 Chayes, Abram, 420
 Chen, John H. M., 3
 Chesley, Capt. Larry, 1515
 Chomsky, Noam, 140
 Chu, Valentin, 221
 Citizens Commission of Inquiry, 1445
 Clark, Alan, 1213
 Clark, Capt. Michael H., 1021
 Clark, Wesley K., 668
 Clarke, Capt. Douglas L., 1516
 Clapp, Col. Archie J., 351
 Cleland, LTC John R., 669
 Clubb, Oliver E., Jr., 161
 Clutterbuck, Brig. Richard L., 700
 Coe, John J., 1127
 Coedes, G. (George), 104
 Coker, Lt. Cmdr. George T., 1517
 Colby, William, 1382
 Cole, Allan B., 26
 Cole, BG Earl F., 713
 Cole, Henry G., 684
 Coleman, Charles, 1214
 Collins, Cmdr. Frank C., Jr., 1098
 Collins, BG James L., Jr., 690
 Colwell, Vice Adm. John B., 922
 Committee of Concerned Asian Scholars,
 141
 Conley, Dr. Michael C., 701
 Cooper, Chester L., 421
 Corder, E. M., 1215
 Corson, William R., 735, 1479
 Cotter, Michael, 4
 Cracknell, Lt. Cmdr. William H., Jr., 934
 Craig, Spec. Fifth Class Robert, 850

Crawford, Ann Caddell, 243
Crawford, First Sgt. Marion C., 1022
Crawford, William, 1216
Critchfield, Richard, 730
Croix, Philip de Ste., 1023
Croizat, Col. Victor, 935, 1115
Crozier, Brian, 105
Cundiff, Col. Robert W., 951
Currey, Richard, 1280
Curry, Cecil B. (Cincinnatus), 762, 1578
Cutler, Thomas J., 936
Cutrona, Col. Joseph F. H., 610

D

Dabney, Joseph E., 788
Daly, James A., 1589
Dane, Barbara, 1360
Daniels, Charlie, 1361
Danner, Maj. Malcolm A., 1147
Dareff, Hal, 244
Darling, Frank and Ann, 222
Davies, David M., 223
Davies, Paul, 187
Davis, George, 1217
Davis, Larry, 789
Dawson, Alan, 400
DeBenedetti, Charles, 1417
de Gast, Robert, 923
Deitchman, Seymour J., 142
Delaney, Capt. Robert F., 702
Dellinger, Dave, 1418
Del Vecchio, John M., 1218
Dengler, Dieter, 1518
Denno, Bryce F., 638, 639
Denton, Jeremiah A., Jr., 1519
Derrig, Peter, 1219
De Saussure, Hamilton, 880
Deutsch, Michael J., 703
Devillers, Philippe, 270
Dickerson, James, 1404
Dillard, Walter S., 611
Dittmar, Linda, 1292
Divine, Robert A., 535
Dockery, Martin J., 691
Dodd, Photographer's Mate First Class
 Don, 790, 938
Doleman, Edgar C., Jr., 775
Dommen, Arthur J., 208
Dong Van Khuyen, LTG, 1116, 1117
Donlon, Roger H. C., 952
Donovan, Robert J., 536
Dooley, Thomas A. M.D., 283
Dorland, Peter, 1026
Dorling, H., 814
Dougan, Clark, 640, 1419
Dowling, John, 1293
Downs, Frederick, Jr., 953, 1590

Doyle, Edward, 271, 422, 641, 763
Dramesi, LTC John A., 1520
Draper, Theodore, 423
Drendel, Lou, 791, 792, 881, 912, 1005
Drinan, Robert F., 585
Drury, Richard S., 991
du Berrier, Hilaire, 245
Dudman, Richard, 1173
Duiker, William J., 341, 365, 1608
Duncan, David Douglas, 1344, 1345
Duncan, Donald, 954
Duncan, Scott, 882
Duncanson, Dennis J., 246
Dunn, LTG Carroll H., 1027
Dunn, Col. J. Howard, 1521
Dunn, Col. Jerry F., 736
Dunn, Joe P., 5
Dunn, Mary Lois, 1220
Dunston, Simon, 776
Dupuy, R. Ernest, 85
Dupuy, Col. Trevor N., 86
Durden, Charles, 1221
Durdin, Tillman, 106
Duskin, LTC Edgar W., 198
Dwyer, John B., 1128, 1129, 1130

E

Eade, Gen. George J., 883
Eastlake, William, 1222
Eastman, James N., Jr., 1006
Eckel, Paul E., 156
Eckhardt, MG George S., 1028
Effros, William O., 87
Ehrhart, W. D., 955, 956, 1281
Eilert, Rick, 957
Eisenhower, Dwight D., 520, 521
Eliot, MG George F., 670, 671, 764
Elliott, David W. P., 1609
Ellsberg, Daniel, 477
Emerick, Kenneth F., 1420
Emerson, Gloria, 1480
Engelman, Rose, 1029
Engelmann, Larry, 319
Esper, George, 642
Evans, David P., 1481
Evans, Grant, 1610
Evans, Rowland, Jr., 537, 561
Ewell, LTG Julian J., 1030

F

Faas, Horst, 1346
Fails, LTC William R., 913
Fairbairn, Geoffrey, 107
Fairfax, Denis, 1131
Falk, Richard A., 586, 1446

- Fall, Bernard B., 209, 247, 248, 249, 272, 273, 366, 704, 1174
- Fanning, Louis A., 562
- Faulbaum, Margaret C., 1007
- Faulkner, Francis D., 1159
- Favreau, Don, 1223
- Fenn, Charles, 367
- Fifield, Russell H., 143
- Figley, Charles R., 1591, 1592
- Fincher, E. B., 643
- Fisch, Adrian, 1148
- Fischer, Ruth, 368
- Fishel, Wesley R., 250
- Fitzgerald, C. P., 162
- FitzGerald, Frances, 424
- Fleming, Thomas, 1224
- Flood, Charles B., 992
- Foley, Michael S., 1405
- Ford, Daniel, 1225
- Ford, Gerald R., 575
- Ford, Herbert, 1559
- Foster, Frank, 1036
- Foster, Tad, 1376
- Fox, Donald T., 189
- Fox, Roger P., 1008
- Franklin, H. Bruce, 1194
- Franks, Lucinda, 1383
- Frankum, Ronald B., Jr. 1132
- Friedel, Frank, 6
- Friedman, Edward, 144
- Friedman, Leon, 587
- Frisbee, John L., 612
- Fulbright, U.S. Senator J. William, 478
- Fulghum, David, 644
- Fuller, Jack, 1226
- Fulton, MG William B., 939
- Furgurson, Ernest B., 685
- Futrell, Robert F., 1009
- G**
- Gaiduk, Ilya V., 163
- Gaither, Lt. Cmdr. Ralph, 1522
- Gallagher, LTC Harold D., 714
- Galloway, John, 538
- Gallucci, Robert L., 603
- Galvin, LTC John R., 851
- Gardner, Lloyd C., 539
- Garfield, Brian, 1227
- Garfinkle, Adam, 1421
- Garland, LTC Albert N., 829, 830, 831, 832, 833
- Garrett, Stephen A., 1384
- Gelb, Leslie, 425
- Geneste, Marc E., 672
- Gershen, Martin, 1447
- Gittleman, Marvin E., 28
- Geyelin, Philip, 540
- Gilbert, John H., 479
- Girling, J. L. S., 174
- Glasser, Jeffrey D., 229, 1145
- Glasser, Ronald J. M.D., 958
- Gleeson, Shenagh, 1137
- Goff, Stanley, 744
- Gold, Gerald, 29
- Goldfarb, ILT Stephen, 1367
- Goldman, Eric F., 541
- Goldman, Peter, 959
- Goldstein, Donald M., 1347
- Goldstein, Joseph, 1448
- Goldstein, Martin E., 199
- Goldston, Robert, 251
- Goodman, Allan E., 284, 285, 613, 614, 1482, 1483
- Goodwin, Richard N., 426
- Gordon, Bernard K., 108, 175, 480
- Gough, Terrance, 604
- Goulden, Joseph C., 542
- Graff, Henry F., 543
- Grant, Bruce, 109
- Grant, Jonathan S., 190
- Grant, Zalin, 1385, 1523
- Gregg, Robert W., 481
- Greene, Felix, 1422
- Greene, Fred, 157
- Greene, Gen. Wallace M., Jr., 1078
- Greenbacker, Capt. John E., 1484
- Greenhalgh, William H., Jr., 884
- Greenhaw, Wayne, 1449
- Grey, Anthony, 1228
- Griffen, William L., 89
- Griffiths, Philip J., 1423
- Groom, Winston, 960, 1229
- Gropman, LTC Alan L., 885
- Grossman, Frank D., 834
- Gruening, Ernest H., 427
- Gruhzit, Hoyt, 752
- Guelzo, LTC Carl M., 715
- Gurney, Col. Gene, 886, 1038
- Gurtov, Melvin, 164, 252
- H**
- Hahn, Walter F., 1485
- Halberstam, David, 369, 428, 482, 1230
- Haldeman, Joe W., 1231
- Haley, P. Edward, 579
- Hall, D. G. E., 110
- Halstead, Fred, 1424
- Hamburg, Max, 1406
- Hamilton, Michael P., 1386
- Hamilton, Wm (sic) A., 605
- Hamilton-Peterson, James, 1439
- Hammer, Ellen, 253, 274, 275
- Hammer, Richard, 1450
- Hammond, William M., 1160

Hanna, Willard A., 111
Harber, Maj. B. D., 716
Harrigan, Anthony, 645, 835
Harris, J. D., 1175
Harrison, Brian, 112
Harrison, James Pinckney, 342
Hart, LTC Franklin A., 1451
Hartke, U.S. Senator Vance, 429
Haseman, Maj. John B., 230
Hasford, Gustav, 1232
Hasler, Alfred, 1425
Hathaway, Bo, 1233
Haughland, Vern, 924
Hawthorne, Lesleyanne, 1560
Hay, Stephen N., 7
Hay, LTG John H., Jr., 1039
Hayden, Tom, 563
Heath, G. Louis, 1426
Heckler, Jonellen, 1234
Heilbrunn, Dr. Otto, 673, 717
Heinemann, Larry, 1235
Heiser, LTG Joseph M., Jr., 718
Helmer, John, 1593
Helsing, Jeffrey W., 544
Hempstone, Smith, 1236
Henderson, William, 286
Henderson, William Darryl, 1151
Hendrickson, Paul, 686
Hennessy, Maj. Michael A., 1079
Henri, Col. Raymond, 1368
Herbert, LTC Anthony B., 961
Heren, Louis, 545
Herr, Michael, 962
Herring, George C., 430, 615
Herrington, Stuart, 401, 1152
Hersh, Seymour M., 564, 1452, 1453
Herz, Martin F., 1161
Heslop, J. M., 1524
Hess, Martha, 254
Hickey, Gerald C., 287, 692
Hickey, John T., 13
Higgins, Hugh, 431
Higgins, Marguerite, 288
Higham, Robin, 8
Hilsman, Roger, 524
Hoang Ngoc Lung, Col., 674, 852, 1118
Ho Chi Minh, 370
Hoffman, Stanley, 1486
Hoffmann, Paul, 1427
Hollis, Jocelyn, 1282, 1283
Holsti, Ole R., 483, 484, 1487
Holt, Cmdr. Philip R., 1525
Honey, P. J., 329, 330, 343, 432
Hood, Donald E., 1488
Hooper, Vice Adm. Edwin B., 719, 1100
Hoopes, Townsend, 522, 546
Hopkins, Charles K., 905, 1010
Horne, A. D., 1489

Horowitz, Irving Louis, 1428
Hosmer, Stephen T., 402, 1153
Hovis, Lt. Cmdr. Dobbi, 995
Howay, Cmdr. Jack W., 1467
Hoyt, Edwin P., 1040
Hubbell, John G., 1526
Huggett, William T., 1237
Hugh, Sidey, 576
Hughes, Larry, 963
Hughes, Capt. Wayne P., 1490
Hull, Roger H., 588
Humphries, James F., 836
Hunt, Andrew E., 1471
Hunt, David, 352
Hunt, Richard A., 738, 1491
Hunter, Guy, 113
Hutchens, Maj. James, 964
Huynh Kim Khanh, 255
Hymoff, Edward, 1041, 1080

I

Insor, D., 224
Irving, LTC Frederick F., 853
Irving, R. E. M., 256
Issacs, Arnold R., 1492, 1493

J

Jacobsen, Lt. K. C., 1168
Jason, Alexander, 965
Jeffreys-Jones, Rhodri, 1429
Jensen, LTC Jay R., 1527
Joel, Billy, 1362
Johnson, Chalmers, 331
Johnson, G. P., 1284
Johnson, Lyndon B., 547
Johnson, Sandee Shaffer, 1363
Joiner, Charles A., 289
Jones, Howard, 525
Jones, James, 1176
Joseph, Paul, 433, 1387
Jury, Mark, 1348
Just, Ward S., 1177

K

Kahin, George McTurnan, 434, 485
Kahn, Albert E., 565
Kail, F. M., 435
Kalb, Bernard, 1238
Kalb, Marvin, 145, 566
Kalbenschlag, Lt. George R., 925
Kamm, Henry, 191
Kane, LTC Douglas T., 1119
Kaplan, H. R., 1069, 1070
Karlin, Wayne, 1239

- Karnow, Stanley, 114, 436
 Kasinsky, Renee G., 1407
 Kastenmeier, Hon. Robert W., 1388
 Katauskas, Philip J., 1579
 Katcher, Philip, 815
 Kattenburg, Paul M., 486
 Katz, Mark N., 257
 Kearns, Doris, 548
 Keating, Bern, 914
 Keating, Susan Katz, 1528
 Kelly, Col. Francis J., 1042
 Kelly, Gail P., 1561
 Kelley, Michael P., 67
 Kempley, Walter, 1240
 Kendrick, Alexander, 1389
 Kennedy, John F., 526
 Kent, John L., 915
 Kerrigan, Evans E., 816
 Kerry, John, 1430
 Kershaw, Roger, 231
 Keylin, Arleen, 1162
 Keynes, Edward, 589
 Kiernan, Ben, 192
 Killmer, Richard L., 1408
 Kim, Samuel, 1241
 Kimball, Jeffrey, 567
 King, Peter, 629, 1133
 Kinnard, Douglas, 437, 687
 Kintner, William R., 487
 Kirk, Donald, 146, 1178
 Kirkpatrick, Lyman B., Jr., 344
 Kirkwood, James, 1242
 Kissinger, Henry A., 488, 568, 616
 Klare, Michael T., 1580
 Klein, Robert, 1594
 Kleinman, LTC Forrest K., 646, 1494
 Knightley, Phillip, 1179
 Knoble, Kuno, 1154
 Knoll, Erwin, 1454
 Kolb, Albert, 115
 Kolpacoff, Victor, 1243
 Kovic, Ron, 966
 Kraslow, David, 617
 Krause, Patricia A., 580
 Krepinevich, Andrew F., Jr., 1043
 Kreslins, Janis A., 16
 Kriete, Charles F., 1581
 Kukler, Mike, 967
 Kunen, James S., 1455
 Kurland, Dr. Gerald, 258, 438, 549
 Kutscheid, ILT Timothy, 1369
 Kux, Ernst, 232
- L**
- Labin, Suzanne, 345
 Lacouture, Jean, 371
 Ladd, LTC Jonothan F., 1155
- Lake, Anthony, 1495
 Lamb, David, 1611
 Lamb, Helen B., 259
 Lane, Mark, 1456
 Lane, Gen. Thomas A., 489
 Lane, LTC John L., Jr., 1011
 Lang, Daniel, 1390, 1457
 Langer, Paul F., 210
 Langer, William L., 91
 Langguth, A. J., 1391
 Lansdale, MG Edward G., 439
 Larsen, LTG Stanley R., 630
 Larteguy, Jean, 1180
 Larzelere, Alex, 1071
 Lavalle, Maj. A. J. C., 887, 888, 889, 1120
 Lawson, Don, 440, 441
 Le Ba Kong, 92
 Lebar, Frank M., 116, 200
 Leber, Lt. Cmdr. Theodore T., Jr., 1431
 Leckie, Robert, 647
 Lederer, William J., 442
 Le Duan, 346
 Lefever, Ernest W., 590, 1169
 Le Gro, Col. William E., 403
 Le Hoang Trong, 308
 Leifer, Michael, 1612
 Leitenberg, Milton, 2, 9
 Levitas, Mitchel, 1392
 Levy, David W., 1393
 Levy, Charles J., 1595
 Lewy, Guenter, 443
 Lifton, Robert Jay, 147, 1596
 Lindecker, Clifford, 1597
 Lindley, Ernest K., 527
 Linn, Bill, 1244
 Lippard, Karl C., 1081
 Lipsman, Samuel, 648
 Liska, George, 490
 Littauer, Ralph, 890
 Lock-Pullen, Richard, 1497
 Lockwood, Kathleen O., 1146
 Logevall, Fredrik, 491
 Lomax, Louis E., 233
 Lomperis, Timothy J., 444, 445
 Long, Col. William F., Jr., 276, 705, 706
 Lovy, Andrew D.O., 968
 Lowery, Timothy S., 817
 Lucas, Jim G., 1181
 Luce, Don, 1562
 Lulling, Darrel R., 818
 Lunch, William L., 1397
 Luxmoore, Jonathan, 1613
 Lyles, Kevin, 1138
 Lyman, Princeton N., 631
 Lynch, Marianne, 165
 Lynd, Alice, 1409
 Lyon, Peter, 523
 Ly Qui Chung, 260

M

MacDonald, Charles B., 492, 1045
 MacDonald, Glenn, 1163
 Macdonald, Peter, 372
 Maclear, Michael, 649
 MacPherson, Myra, 1498
 Mahajan, Usha, 528
 Mailer, Norman, 448
 Maitland, Derek, 1246
 Maitland, Terrence, 650, 651
 Mallicoat, SFC D., 1534, 1598
 Mallin, Jay, 731
 Mangold, Tom, 837
 Mann, Robert, 493
 Manning, Robert, 449, 1398
 Mariscal, George, 745
 Marks, Col. Murray, 148
 Marks, Richard E., 970
 Marolda, Edward J., 1102
 Marr, David G., 263
 Marshall, Kathryn, 753
 Marshall, S. L. A., 193, 854, 855, 856, 857,
 858, 971
 Martell, Paul, 93
 Martin, Marie Alexandrine, 176
 Mason, Herbert M., Jr., 1012
 Mason, Robert, 972
 Mastin, Lt. Thomas M., 940
 Matthews, Lloyd J., 1614
 Maude, Angus, 117
 Maurer, Harry, 1001
 May, Ernest R., 118
 Mayer, Thomas F., 450
 McAlister, John T., Jr., 261, 262
 McBarron, H. Charles, 1370, 1371, 1372
 McCarry, Charles, 1245
 McCarthy, Gerald, 1285
 McCarthy, BG James R., 906
 McCarthy, Mary, 1432, 1458
 McCauley, Rear Adm. Brian, 926
 McChristian, MG Joseph A., 1044
 McClendon, Cmdr. F. O., Jr., 1101
 McCullin, Don, 1350
 McCutcheon, LTG Keith B., 1082
 McDaniel, Capt. Eugene B., 1530, 1531
 McDaniel, Norman A., 1532
 McDonald, Cherokee Paul, 838
 McDonough, James R., 969
 McGarvey, Patrick J., 373
 McGee, U.S. Senator Gale W., 446
 McGrady, Mike, 1433
 McGrath, John M., 1533
 McJunkin, James, 1351
 McLaughlin, MG Burl W., 891
 McMahon, Maj. John F., Jr., 447
 McNamara, Robert S., 652, 653
 Mecklin, John, 451
 Mehden, Fred R., 119

Melman, Seymour, 1459
 Menzel, Paul T., 591
 Merdinger, Capt. Charles J., 1103
 Mersky, Peter B., 892
 Mertel, Col. Kenneth D., 916, 1046
 Meshad, Shad, 732
 Mesko, Jim, 777, 1352
 Meyer, Maj. Richard M., 941
 Mezerik, Avraham G., 599
 Michael, Franz, 494, 707
 Michael, Stanley J., Jr., 675
 Middleton, Drew, 859
 Middleton, Cmdr. W. D., 1104
 Mikesh, Robert C., 793
 Miller, MG E. J., 1121
 Miller, Edward, 314
 Miller, Kenn, 1247
 Miller, Merle, 550
 Miller, Samuel D., 1013
 Miller, Capt. William O., 1105
 Millett, Alan R., 654
 Millett, Stephen M., 592
 Mills, Nick, 1353
 Milstein, Jeffrey S., 495
 Mitchell, Greg, 1563
 Moeser, Chief Journalist Robert D., 927,
 1106, 1107
 Moïse, Edwin E., 10
 Montgomery, John D., 291
 Montero, Darrell, 1564
 Moreau, Rear Adm. James W., 1072
 Morgenthau, Hans J., 496
 Moore, Gene D., 1248
 Moore, John Norton, 593
 Moore, Robin, 1249, 1250, 1251
 Moorer, Adm. Thomas H., 149
 Morris, Jim, 973, 1047, 1252
 Morris, Richard, 1499
 Morris, Richard B., 1500
 Morris, Roger, 569
 Morrison, Gayle, 11
 Morrocco, John, 893, 894
 Moskin, J. Robert, 1083
 Moss, George D., 655
 Moyar, Mark, 1501
 Mozingo, David P., 594
 Mueller, John E., 676, 1399
 Mulligan, Hugh A., 1182
 Mulligan, Capt. Jim, 1535
 Murphy, Edward F., 819
 Myer, MG Charles R., 1048

N

Nagel, William, 1253
 Nairn, Ronald C., 158
 Nalty, Bernard C., 794, 860, 895
 Nathan, Reuben S., 733, 734

Naughton, Cmdr. Robert J., 1536
 Neel, MG Spurgeon, 1049
 Neglia, Capt. Anthony V., 1149
 Neilands, J. B., 724
 Neilson, Jim, 1195
 Neu, Charles E., 452
 Neumann-Hoditz, Reinholt, 374
 Newhafer, Richard, 1254
 Newman, Bernard, 264
 Ngo Quang Truong, LTG, 861, 1122, 1123
 Nguyen Cao Ky, 320
 Nguyen Cong Luan, Maj., 1150
 Nguyen Dinh Hoa, 94
 Nguyen Duy Hing, MG, 292, 737, 1124
 Nguyen Khac Huyen, 375
 Nguyen Khac Vien, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387
 Nguyen Long, 1615
 Nguyen Ngoc Ngan, 1565
 Nguyen Thi Binh, 618
 Nguyen Van Canh, 1616
 Nicosia, Gerald, 1472
 Nighswonger, William A., 739
 Nixon, Richard, 570, 571, 572, 1502
 Nolan, Keith, 862, 863
 Nordell, John R., Jr., 277
 Norlund, Irene, 1617
 Norton, Lt. Cmdr. John H., 166
 Nuechterlein, Donald E., 234

O

O'Ballance, Edgar, 656
 Oberdorfer, Don, 864
 O'Brien, Tim, 974, 1255
 O'Connor, Chaplin John J., 996
 O'Daniel, Larry J., 1537
 Ognibene, BG Andre J., 1050
 Oliver, Capt. Edward F., 1108
 Olsen, Lt. Cmdr. A. N., 1109
 O'Neill, William L., 1394
 O'Rouke, G. G., 795
 Osborne, Milton, 120, 376
 Osgood, Robert E., 498
 Ott, MG David E., 765, 839, 840, 865, 866, 867, 868, 869, 1052

P

Page, Tim, 1354, 1355
 Paget, Julian, 708
 Paine, Lauren, 453
 Palmer, Gen. Bruce, Jr., 454
 Palmer, Dave R., 657
 Palmer, Gregory, 677
 Palmer, Lt. Col. Joe M., 167
 Papp, Daniel S., 168, 169
 Parenti, Michael, 499

Parks, David M., 746
 Parks, W. Hays, 907, 908
 Parker, Lt. Col. Gary W., 1084
 Parker, Maynard, 455, 1503
 Parker, Capt. William D., 1085
 Parrish, John A. M.D., 975
 Passarella, PFC Sal, 1053
 Paszek, Lawrence J., 1014
 Patti, Archimedes, 456
 Patton, Lt. Col. George S., 354
 Payne, Lt. Col. Don H., 500
 Peake, Louis A., 12, 870
 Pearson, LTG Willard, 871
 Peers, William R., 1460
 Pelfrey, William, 1256
 Peterson, L. C., 778
 Pettit, Clyde Edwin, 95
 Pfeffer, Richard M., 501
 Pfeiffer, E. W., 725
 Pham Quoc Thuan, MG, 293
 Pham Van Son, 321, 872
 Pickerell, James, 1356
 Pierson, Lt. Col. Earl F., 709
 Pike, Douglas, 170, 355, 356, 357
 Pilger, John, 1357
 Pimlott, John, 658, 659
 Pingree, Elizabeth E., 17
 Pisar, Robert, 873
 Platt, MG Jonas M., 1086
 Pletcher, LTG Kenneth E., 1015
 Ploger, MG Robert E., 1054
 Plumb, Charlie, 404, 1539
 Pluvier, Jan M., 121, 122
 Podhoretz, Norman, 457
 Pollock, J. C., 1257
 Polnar, Murray, 1599
 Poole, Peter A., 150, 502, 503
 Porter, Gareth, 30, 31, 619
 Powe, Maj. Marc B., 1582
 Powers, Cmdr. Robert C., 928
 Powers, Thomas, 1395
 Prados, John, 388
 Pratt, John Clark, 33
 Pribbenow II, Merle L., 1618
 Prochnau, William, 458
 Prugh, MG George S., 1056
 Puller, Lewis B., Jr., 1600

R

Rabel, Roberto, 633, 1139
 Race, Jeffrey, 294
 Radvanyi, Janos, 620, 621
 Rainey, Gene E., 504
 Randle, Robert F., 278, 622
 Raskin, Marcus G., 505
 Rasmussen, Maj. Ronald R., 1141
 Rather, Dan, 573

- Rausa, Capt. Rosario, 796, 997
Ravenal, Earl C., 405, 506
Rawlins, LTC Eugene W., 917
Ray, Capt. James F., 693
Ray, Hemen, 171
Ray, Michele, 1191
Reed, David E., 1183
Rees, David, 1619
Regan, David, 976
Reischauer, Edwin O., 151
Rhyne, Russell F., 678
Riboud, Marc, 332
Richard, SSG Duke, 1057
Richardson, Col. Walton K., 1540
Riddell, Thomas A., 1440
Rienzi, MG Thomas N., 1058
Rigg, Col. Robert B., 1164
Ringnalda, Don, 1196
Risner, Col. Robert, 1541
Rivers, Gayle, 1258
Robbins, Christopher, 896
Roberts, James C., 1542
Robinson, Frank M., 581
Robles, Philip K., 820
Rogers, MG Bernard W., 874
Rood, Harold W., 459
Rosenberg, Milton J., 507
Rostow, W. W., 152, 551
Roth, Robert, 1259
Rottman, 1LT Larry, 1059
Rowan, Roy, 577
Rowan, Stephen A., 1543
Rowe, Maj. James N., 1544
Rowe, John, 1260
Roy, Jules, 279
Rozier, William B., 942
Rubin, Jonathan, 1261
Russell, Bertrand, 1461
Russell, Dr. Charles A., 347
Russell, Jaime, 1294
Rust, William J., 529
Rutledge, Howard, 1545
- S**
- Sack, John, 977, 1462
Sadler, SSG Barry, 978, 1262, 1263
Sainteny, Jean, 377
Sak Sutsakhan, LTG, 177
Salisbury, Harrison E., 333, 1504
Sallah, Michael, 841
Sananikone, MG Oudone, 211
Sanders, Jacquin, 1410
Sanders, Sol W., 1505
Sansom, Robert L., 295
Santoli, Al, 1002, 1506
Sarkesian, Sam C., 1411
Sartre, Jean-Paul, 1463
- Sauter, Mark, 1546
Schandler, Herbert Y., 552
Schardt, Arlie, 1468
Scheer, Robert, 460
Schell, Jonathan, 740, 842
Schemmer, Benjamin F., 1547
Schevitz, Jeffrey M., 766
Schlesinger, Arthur M., Jr., 39, 508, 530
Schmitz, Hon. John G., 1434
Schneider, Maj. Donald K., 1016
Schoenbrun, David, 461
Schreadley, Cmdr. Richard L., 929, 943, 944
Schroeder, Eric James, 1197
Schulze, Gene, 1566
Schurmann, Franz, 462
Schuyler, Philippa Duke, 1184
Schwenk, Col. Adolph G., 1583
Scigliano, Robert, 296
Scott, Peter Dale, 463
Scotti, Paul C., 1073
Scoville, Thomas W., 741
Seagrave, Sterling, 726
Serong, Brig. F. P., 623
Shaplen, Robert, 123, 464, 509
Sharp, Adm. U. S. G., 1507
Shaw, Henry I., Jr., 747
Shawcross, William, 194
Shchedrov, Ivan, 1192
Sheehan, Neil, 1110, 1165
Sheldon, Walter J., 265
Sherman, Morris, 1469
Sherwood, John D., 897
Shields, Dr. Roger E., 1548
Shils, Edward, 1470
Shing, LTG Hu, 1508
Shore, II, Capt. Moyers S., 875
Short, Anthony, 767
Short, Philip, 178
Shulimson, Jack, 1087, 1088
Shultz, Richard H., Jr., 1396
Sieben, Hubert, 225
Sihanouk, Norodom, 179
Simon, Sheldon W., 180
Simmons, BG Edwin H., 1089, 1090, 1091, 1092, 1093
Simpson, Charles M., 1060
Simpson, Howard R., 710
Sinclair, The Right Honorable Ian, 727
Siselman, Lee, 1400, 1401
Sivaram, M., 1185
Slaff, Capt. Allan P., 694
Sloan, James P., 1264
Small, Melvin, 510, 1435
Smith, Harvey H., 297, 334
Smith, Ralph Bernard, 266, 465
Smith, Roger M., 124, 181
Smith, Col. Russell H., 574
Smith, Myron J., Jr., 898

Smith, Maj. William A., Jr., 768
 Smyth, Cecil B., Jr., 821, 822, 823, 824
 Snepp, Frank, 406
 Sochurek, Howard, 1061
 Sorensen, Theodore C., 531
 Soutchay, BG Vongsavanh, 212
 Spector, Ronald H., 695
 Spencer, Maj. Wilbur P., Jr., 769
 Spetz, Steven N., 1265
 Stacewicz, Richard, 1473
 Standard, William L., 595
 Stanton, Edwin F., 226
 Stanton, Shelby L., 1062
 Stapleton, Maj. Homer L., 876
 Starr, Paul, 1601
 Starry, Gen. Donn A., 843, 844
 Stavins, Ralph, 466
 Steer, John, 979
 Steinberg, David Joel, 126
 Steinman, Ron, 754, 980
 Stetler, Russell, 378
 Stevenson, Charles A., 213
 Stockdale, Vice Adm. James B., 1549, 1550
 Stolfi, Capt. Russel H., 1094
 Stone, Isidor F., 467
 Stone, Scott C. S., 1266
 Stuart, Douglas B., 407
 Stuart, Maj. R. F., 1134
 Suddick, Tom, 1267
 Sugnet, Christopher L., 13
 Summers, Harry G., Jr., 72, 679, 680
 Summers, Maj. Harry O., Jr., 127
 Swarztrauber, Cmdr. S. A., 945

T

Tai Sung An, 172
 Tanham, George K., 235, 309, 359, 360, 711
 Tauber, Peter, 1268
 Taylor, MG Leonard B., 1063
 Taylor, Maxwell D., 606, 981
 Taylor, Thomas, 1269
 TeCube, Leroy, 748
 Templar, Robert, 1620
 Terry, Megan, 1378
 Terzani, Tiziano, 408
 Thee, Marek, 214
 Thies, Wallace J., 511
 Thomas, James A., 681
 Thomasson, W. A., 1602
 Thompson, James Clay, 909
 Thompson, Leroy, 825, 826
 Thompson, Sir Robert, 468, 469, 624, 712
 Thompson, W. Scott, 280, 1509
 Tiede, Tom, 1186
 Tilford, Earl H., Jr., 1017
 Tillman, Barrett, 797
 Tippin, Maj. Gerold L., 918

Todd, Jack, 770
 Tolson, LTG John L., 919
 Tooze, Ruth, 182
 Topham, J., 1286, 1287, 1288, 1289
 Toye, Hugh, 201
 Traas, LTC Adrian G., 14
 Trager, Frank N., 128, 202, 470, 682
 Tran Dinh Tho, BG, 195, 742
 Tran Van Don, 322
 Tregaskis, Richard, 1111, 1187
 Trembly, Diane L. M.D., 1567
 Trewhitt, Henry L., 607
 Trott, Capt. John, 998
 Trudeau, G. B., 1377
 Trullinger, James Walker, Jr., 299
 Trumbull, Robert, 129
 Truong, Chinh, 336
 Truong Nhu Tang, 1156
 Truong Son, 391
 Tuchman, Barbara W., 471
 Tugwell, Rexford G., 512
 Tulich, Lt. Eugene N., 1074
 Tunbridge, Stephen, 779
 Turbert, Gary C., 19
 Turley, Col. G. H., 877
 Turley, William S., 267
 Turner, Fred, 1568
 Turner, Karen Gottschang, 392
 Turner, Robert F., 268
 Turpin, James W. M.D., 1569

U

Uhl, Michael, 1603
 United Nations, 40
 United States Government:
 Department of the Army, 813, 1024, 1291
 Department of Defense, 42, 300, 310, 348,
 361, 472, 625, 634, 743, 771
 Department of the Navy, 798, 937, 1099
 Department of State, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 203, 301
 House, Committee on Armed Services, 582
 House, Committee on Foreign Relations, 583
 Marine Corps, 1095
 Senate, Committee on Armed Services, 899,
 900, 901, 902, 903, 1552
 Senate, Committee on Foreign Relations, 41,
 154, 553, 596, 600
 Senate, Committee on the Judiciary, 1570,
 1571
 United States Military Assistance Command,
 Vietnam, 302, 1157, 1572
 Ursano, Robert J. M.D., 1551

V

Van Buskirk, Robert, 982
 Vance, Samuel, 750

VanDeMark, Brian, 554
Vandenbosch, Amry, 131
Van Der Kroef, Justus M., 130
Van Devanter, Lynda, 755, 1198
Vandiver, Frank E., 555
Van Dyke, Jon M., 337
Van Tien Dung, Gen., 338, 393
Vennema, Alje, 1464
Verrone, Richard B., 1604
Veterans Administration, 1605
Vickery, Michael, 183
Vietnam Veterans Against the War (VVAW), 1465
Vito, Capt. A. H., Jr., 930
Vogelgesang, Sandy, 1402
Vo Nguyen Giap, 364, 395, 396, 397
Vu Van Cuong (Tam), 303

W

Wain, Barry, 1573, 1574
Walker, Keith, 756
Walt, Gen. Lewis W., 983
Walthall, Melvin C., 1065
Walton, Richard J., 532
Ward, Ian, 379
Warner, Denis, 315
Waterhouse, Charles, 1374, 1375
Watts III, Maj. Claudius E., 904
Webb, Kate, 1188
Webb, James, Jr., 1270, 1271, 1606
Weed II, A. C., 1066
Weigley, Russell F., 608, 1067
Weil, Charles A., 513
Weinstein, Franklin B., 155, 1621
Weldon, Charles, 215
Weller, Jac, 781, 782, 783, 784, 1125, 1144
Wells, Tom, 1437
Welsh, Douglas, 651
Wermuth, Col. Anthony L., 597
Wesseler, David, 984
West, Capt. Francis J., Jr., 772, 845, 931
Westheider, James E., 751
Westmoreland, Gen. William C., 662, 985, 1510
Wetterhahn, Ralph, 578
Wheeler, John, 1511

Whitaker, Donald P., 184, 204
White, Peter T., 304, 305
White, Ralph K., 473
White, Kent, Jr., 1272
Whitfield, Danny J., 98
Whitlow, Capt. Robert H., 696
Whitmore, Terry, 1412
Whitney, Craig, 799
Wilcox, Fred A., 1607
Willbanks, James H., 1512
Williams, Fenton A., 986
Williams, Capt. Iain McLeon, 1135
Williams, Lea E., 132
Williams, Maslyn, 185
Williams, Capt. Ralph E., Jr., 1513
Willis, John M., 1575
Willson, David A., 1199
Willwerth, James, 1189
Wilson, Dick, 133
Wilson, James C., 1200
Wilson, Robert S., 21
Wilson, Spec. Fifth Class Steve, 311
Wilson, William, 1273
Windchy, Eugene C., 556
Winter, Robert M., 800
Wise, Sidney, 48, 49
Wolfkill, Grant, 1553
Woodside, Alexander B., 340
Wonder, Stevie, 1364
Wright, Stephen, 1274
Wyatt, Clarence R., 1166

Y

Yezzo, Dominick, 987
Young, Kenneth T., Jr., 134
Young, Marilyn B., 663

Z

Zaffiri, Samuel, 878
Zagoria, Donald S., 349
Zasloff, Joseph J., 216, 514
Zinn, Howard, 515
Zumwalt, Elmo R., Jr., 999

Subject Index

A

Advisors (Air Force), 688, 1008; (Army), 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 695; (Marines), 696; (Navy), 694
African-Americans, 744, 746, 747, 749, 750, 751
Agent Orange (see Chemical Warfare), 721, 1563, 1602, 1603
Air America, 896
Aircraft (A-1 Skyraider), 796; (B-57
Canberra), 793; (C-130 Hercules), 788; (F-4 Phantom), 795; (F-8
Crusader), 797; (F-105
Thunderchief), 785, 882; (Fixed-Wing), 786, 789; (General), 791; (Helicopters), 790, 792
Airmobility (Helicopters), 910, 911, 912, 913, 914, 915, 916, 917, 918, 919
Air War (General), 787, 794, 879, 880, 881, 882, 883, 884, 885, 886, 887, 888, 889, 890, 891, 892, 893, 894, 895, 897, 898, 900, 901, 902, 903, 904
Allied Participation (Australia), 629, 630; (South Korea), 631; (New Zealand), 632, 633; (Free World Assistance), 634; (Asian Leaders), 635
American Foreign Policy and Vietnam (see United States and Vietnam)
Amnesty (see Pardons), 1466, 1467, 1468, 1469
Anti-War (Peace) Movement, 1413, 1414, 1415, 1416, 1417, 1418, 1419, 1420, 1421, 1422, 1423, 1424, 1425, 1426, 1427, 1428, 1429, 1430, 1431, 1432, 1433, 1434, 1435, 1436, 1437
Archives, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81
Armor, 776, 777
Armored Fighting Vehicle, (M113) 779
Art (Combat), 1365, 1366, 1367, 1368, 1369, 1370, 1371, 1372, 1373, 1374, 1375
Artillery (see Fire Support), 757
A Shau Valley, 867
Atlases (see Maps), 67, 68, 69, 70, 72, 73
Australia (see Allied Participation), 1126, 1127, 1128, 1129, 1130, 1131, 1132, 1133, 1134, 1135

B

Battles (Campaigns), 846, 848, 849, 850, 852, 854, 855, 856, 857, 858, 871,

872, 874, 876; (A Shau Valley), 867; (Cambodian Incursion), 869; (Easter Offensive 1972), 847, 861, 868, 877, 887; (Hamburger Hill), 876; (Hue), 853, 862, 863; (Khe Sanh), 851, 860, 865, 873, 875, 891, 895, 904; (Tet Offensive 1968), 859, 864, 866, 870

Bibliographies, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 1013

Booby Traps, 773

Bombing Campaign, 905, 906, 907; (Rolling Thunder), 908, 909

Buddhists (Role of), 312

C

Cadences (Jody Call), 1363

Calley, Lieutenant William F. (see My Lai) Cambodia (General), 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185; (and Vietnam War), 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195; (Invasion), 869

Caricature (see Humor)

Casualties, 1555, 1556; (Friendly Fire), 1557, 1568, 1572, 1575

Cease-Fires (see Peace Negotiations), 612, 623, 624

Chemical Warfare (see Agent Orange), 720, 723, 724; (Yellow Rain), 726, 727

Chicanos, 745

Chieu Hoi ("Open Arms"), 742, 743, 760, 769, 771

Churches (Seventh Day Adventist), 1559

Civil Operations Revolutionary Development Support (CORDS), 735, 738, 741

Combat (see Operations) (Tips), 759

Combined Action Program (CAP), 772

Communist Relations (see North Vietnam)

Congress, U.S. (and Vietnam War), 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584

Conscientious Objectors, 1406, 1409

Consequences (see Lessons), 1474, 1475, 1476, 1477, 1478, 1479, 1480, 1481, 1482, 1483, 1484, 1485, 1486, 1487, 1489, 1490, 1492, 1493, 1495, 1497, 1498, 1499, 1500, 1501, 1502, 1503, 1506, 1507, 1508, 1510, 1511, 1512, 1513

Counterinsurgency (see Guerrilla Warfare), 698, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 708, 709, 711, 712
 Cu Chi (see Tunnel Rats)
 Culture (Comparison), 763

D

Decorations (military), 802, 803; (Viet Cong), 804, 805, 806, 812; (Viet Minh), 807; (North Vietnamese), 808; 809, 810, 811, 813, 814; (Medal of Honor), 816, 817, 819, 818, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824
 Dellums Committee, 1445
 Democratic Republic of Vietnam (see North Vietnam)
 Desertion, 770, 1470
 Dien Bien Phu (French Defeat 1954), 272, 277, 279
 Documentary Collections, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 48, 49; (Public Papers – Presidents), 34, 35, 36, 37, 38; (Foreign Policy), 39; (United Nations), 40; (U.S. Government – Senate, Committee on Foreign Relations), 41; (Department of Defense), 42; (Department of State), 43, 44, 45, 46, 47
 Domestic Impact (General), 1379, 1380, 1381; (CIA), 1382, 1383, 1384, 1385; (Christian Perspective), 1386, 1387, 1388, 1389, 1390, 1391, 1392, 1393, 1394, 1395, 1396
 Draft, 1403, 1404, 1405, 1407, 1408, 1410, 1411, 1412
 Dulles, John Foster, 516, 518, 519, 522

E

Easter Offensive (1972), 861, 868, 877, 887
 Economic Aspects, 1438, 1439, 1440
 Eisenhower, Dwight D. (General), 34; (Administration and Vietnam), 516, 517, 518, 520, 521, 522, 523
 Equipment (see respective U.S. branches of service)
 Ethnic Groups (see Montagnards)

F

Films (Guides), 1290, 1291, 1292, 1293, 1294; (Official), 1295, 1296, 1297, 1298, 1299, 1300, 1301, 1302, 1303, 1304, 1305, 1306, 1307, 1308, 1309, 1310; (Documentary), 1311, 1312, 1313; ("Vietnam – A Television

History" Series), 1314–26, 1327, 1328, 1329, 1330; (Commercial), 1331, 1332, 1333, 1334, 1335, 1336, 1337, 1338, 1339, 1340, 1341

Fire Support (see Artillery), 764, 765
 Ford, Gerald R. (General), 38; (Administration and Vietnam), 575, 576, 577, 578
 France (in Indochina) – (see Vietnam – French Experience)
 Free World Assistance, 634; (see Allied Participation)
 Friendly Fire (see Casualties), 1557, 1572

G

Geneva Accords (1954), 278
 Guerrilla Warfare (see Counterinsurgency), 697, 699, 707, 710
 Guides (Periodicals), 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21

H

Helicopter Warfare (see Airmobility)
 Ho Chi Minh, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 374, 375, 376, 377
 Hue, 640, 853, 862, 863, 870
 Humanitarian Aid, 1554, 1566; (Project Vietnam), 1558; (Physicians for Vietnam), 1567; (Project Concern), 1569
 Humor, 1376, 1377

I

Indexes (Newspapers), 22, 23, 24
 Indochina (see France)
 Insignia (see Uniforms)
 International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC), 1554
 International Voluntary Services (IVS), 1562

J

Johnson, Lyndon B. (General), 36; (Administration and Vietnam War), 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 554, 555, 556
 Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS), 604
 Journals (Official/Semiofficial), 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56; (Other), 57, 58, 59, 60, 61
 Journals, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66

K

- Kennedy, John F. (General), 35;
 (Administration and Vietnam War), 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532
 Khe Sanh (Siege), 640, 851, 860, 865, 873, 875, 891, 895, 904, 993
 Kissinger, Henry, 569, 609

L

- Laos (General), 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 204; (and Vietnam War), 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216
 Leadership, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687
 Legal Issues, 586, 587, 588, 589, 592, 593, 594, 595, 1056
 Lessons (see Consequences), 1488, 1491, 1494, 1496, 1504, 1509
 Linebacker I and II (see Bombing), 905, 906, 907
 Literature (Resources), 1193, 1194, 1195, 1196, 1197, 1198, 1199, 1200; (Novels), 1201, 1202, 1203, 1204, 1205, 1206, 1207, 1208, 1209, 1210, 1211, 1212, 1213, 1214, 1215, 1216, 1217, 1218, 1219, 1220, 1221, 1222, 1223, 1224, 1225, 1226, 1227, 1228, 1229, 1230, 1231, 1232, 1233, 1234, 1235, 1236, 1237, 1238, 1239, 1240, 1241, 1242, 1243, 1244, 1245, 1246, 1247, 1248
 Literature, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, 1253, 1254, 1255, 1256, 1257, 1258, 1259, 1260, 1261, 1262, 1263, 1264, 1265, 1266, 1267, 1268, 1269, 1270, 1271, 1272, 1273, 1274; (Poetry), 1275, 1276, 1277, 1278, 1279, 1280, 1281, 1282, 1283, 1284, 1285, 1286, 1287, 1288, 1289; (Plays), 1378
 Logistics (Manpower), 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719
 Long Binh (Jail), 762

M

- Maps (see Atlases), 71, 74
Mayaguez, S.S. 577, 578
 McNamara, Robert S. 607, 686
 Medal of Honor (see Decorations), 965
 Media (General Coverage), 1158, 1159, 1160, 1161, 1162, 1163, 1164, 1165, 1166; (Television), 1167, 1168, 1169; (Correspondents), 1170, 1171, 1172, 1173, 1174, 1175, 1176, 1177, 1178, 1179, 1180, 1181, 1182, 1183, 1184,

- 1185, 1186, 1187, 1188, 1189; (Foreign Coverage), 1190, 1191, 1192

- Medical Evacuation (MED-EVAC), 758
 Medina, Captain Ernest L., 1458 (see My Lai)
 Merchant Marine, 1096
 MIAs (see POWs), 1516, 1537, 1542, 1548
 Military Police (MPs), 1057
 Military Policy (U.S.), 601, 602, 603, 605, 606, 608
 Military Sea Transportation Service (MSTS), 1108
 Montagnards, 290
 Moral Aspects, 585, 590, 591, 596, 597
 Music, 1358, 1359, 1360, 1361, 1362, 1363, 1364
 My Lai (see War Crimes) (Accounts), 1443, 1446, 1447, 1448, 1450, 1452, 1453, 1456; (Lieutenant Calley), 1449, 1462; (Captain Medina), 1458; (Peers Committee), 1460

N

- National Liberation Front (NLF), 350, 351, 352, 353, 358, 361
 Native Americans, 748
 Naval Warfare (General), 920, 921, 922, 923, 924, 927, 928, 929, 930, 931; (Minesweeping), 925, 926
 New Zealand (see Allied Participation), 1136, 1137, 1138, 1139
 Ngô Dinh Diêm, 312, 313, 314, 315
 Nixon, Richard M. (General), 37; (Administration and Vietnam War), 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574
 North Vietnam (Democratic Republic of Vietnam) (General), 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340; (Communist Relations), 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349; North Vietnam (Leaders), 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379; (and Vietnam War), 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397; (North Vietnamese Army), 1147, 1148, 1149, 1150
 Nurses (see Women)

O

- Operations (Land – General), 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843,

844, 845; (Operation Attleboro), 854; (Operation Cedar Falls-Junction City), 874; (Air – see Bombing Campaign); (Operation Ranchhand – see Agent Orange), 721, 722, 725
 Oral Histories, 1000, 1001, 1002; (Veterans), 1604

P

Pacification (see Vietnamization), 735, 736, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742
 Pardons (see Amnesty), 1466
 Pathet Lao, 210, 216
 Peace Negotiations (see Cease-Fires), 609, 610, 611, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 625, 626, 627, 628
 Personal Accounts (Land), 946, 947, 948, 949, 950, 951, 952, 953, 954, 955, 956, 957, 958, 959, 960, 961, 962, 963, 964, 965, 966, 967, 968, 969, 970
 Personal Accounts, 971, 972, 973, 974, 975, 976, 977, 978, 979, 980, 981, 982, 983, 984, 985, 986, 987; (Air), 988, 989, 990, 991, 992; (Sea), 993, 994, 995, 996, 997, 998, 999
 Philippines (see Allied Participation), 1146
 Pictorial Records, 1342, 1343, 1344, 1345, 1346, 1347, 1348, 1349, 1350, 1351, 1352, 1353, 1354, 1355, 1356, 1357
 Plays (see Literature), 1378
 Poetry (see Literature)
 Political Warfare, 729, 730
 Pol Pot, 176, 178, 191, 192
 POWs (see MIAs), 1514, 1515, 1517, 1518, 1519, 1520, 1521; (Code of Conduct), 1522, 1523, 1524, 1525, 1526, 1527, 1528, 1529, 1530, 1531, 1532, 1533, 1534, 1535, 1536, 1538, 1539, 1540, 1541, 1543, 1544, 1545, 1546, 1547; (Son Tay Raid), 1549, 1550, 1551, 1552, 1553
 Procurement, 1055
 Propaganda, 761
 Psychological Warfare, 728, 731, 732, 733, 734
 Public Opinion, 1397, 1398, 1399, 1400, 1401, 1402

Q

Quotations, 87

R

Reference Works, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98

Refugees, 1560, 1561, 1564, 1565; (Boat People), 1570, 1571, 1573, 1574
 Republic of Korea (South Korea) (see Allied Participation), 1140, 1141, 1142, 1143, 1144
 Republic of Vietnam (South Vietnam) (see Allied Participation), 1112, 1113, 1114, 1115, 1116, 1117, 1118, 1119, 1120, 1121, 1122, 1123, 1124, 1125
 Riverine Warfare, 932, 933, 934, 935, 936, 937, 938, 939, 940, 941, 942, 943, 944, 945
 Rusk, Dean, 527

S

Sino-Soviet Relations, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172
 Son Tay (Prison Camp Raid), 1547
 Southeast Asia (General Studies), 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134; (and U.S.), 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 155
 Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO), 156, 157, 158
 South Vietnam (see Republic of Vietnam) (General), 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305; (and U.S. Aid), 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311; (Leaders), 312, 313, 314, 315; (and War), 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322; South Vietnam (Collapse), 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408
 Strategic Hamlet Program, 768
 Strategy (see Tactics), 664, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682
 Surface-To-Air Missile (SAM), 778

T

Tactics (see Strategy), 665, 674
 Taylor, Maxwell D., 606, 981
 Tet Offensive, 640, 859, 866, 872
 Thailand (see Allied Participation) (General), 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228; (and Vietnam War), 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 1145

Tonkin Gulf Incident, 556
 Tonkin Gulf Resolution, 533, 538, 542, 549,
 553
 Tunnel Rats, 837

U

Uniforms (Patches), 801, 815; (Elite Forces),
 825, 826
 United Nations and Vietnam, 40, 598, 599,
 600
 Units (1st Cavalry), 857, 1032; (1st
 Infantry), 1033, 1034, 1035, 1064;
 (4th Infantry), 1031, 1037; (21st
 Infantry), 849; (25th Infantry),
 1020, 1021, 1065; (101st Airborne),
 841, 878, 1051; (196th Light
 Infantry Brigade), 836
 U.S. Air Force, 1003, 1004, 1005, 1006,
 1007, 1008, 1009, 1010, 1011, 1012,
 1014, 1015, 1016, 1017, 1018
 U.S. Army, 1019, 1020, 1021, 1022, 1023,
 1024, 1025, 1026, 1027, 1028, 1029,
 1030, 1031, 1032, 1033, 1034, 1035,
 1036, 1037, 1038, 1039, 1040, 1041,
 1042, 1043, 1044, 1045, 1046, 1047,
 1048, 1049, 1050, 1051, 1052, 1053,
 1054, 1055, 1056, 1057, 1058, 1059,
 1060, 1061, 1062, 1063, 1064, 1065,
 1066, 1067
 U.S. Coast Guard, 1068, 1069, 1070, 1071,
 1072, 1073, 1074
 U.S. Marine Corps, 1075, 1076, 1077, 1078,
 1079, 1080, 1081, 1082, 1083, 1084,
 1085, 1086, 1087, 1088, 1089, 1090,
 1091, 1092, 1093, 1094, 1095
 U.S. Military (Effect of War Upon), 1576,
 1577, 1578, 1579, 1580, 1581, 1582,
 1583
 U.S. Navy, 1097, 1098, 1099, 1100, 1101,
 1102, 1103, 1104, 1105, 1106, 1107,
 1108, 1109, 1110, 1111
 U.S.S. *New Jersey* (BB-62), 923

United States and Vietnam (General), 409,
 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416,
 417, 418, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424,
 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431,
 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438,
 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445,
 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452,
 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459,
 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466,
 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 473; (and
 American Foreign Policy), 474, 475,
 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482,
 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489,

490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496,
 497
 United States and Vietnam, 498, 499, 500,
 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507,
 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514
 U.S.S.R. and Vietnam (see North Vietnam)

V

Veterans (Affairs), 1584, 1585, 1586, 1587,
 1588, 1589, 1590, 1591, 1592, 1593,
 1594, 1595, 1596, 1597, 1598, 1599,
 1600, 1601, 1602, 1603, 1604, 1606,
 1607
 Veterans Administration, 1605
 Viet Cong, 354, 355, 356, 357, 360, 362, 363,
 364, 1151, 1152, 1153, 1154, 1155,
 1156, 1157
 Viet Minh, 359, 360
 Vietnam (General), 236, 237, 238, 239, 240,
 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247,
 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254,
 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261,
 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268;
 (French Experience), 269, 270, 271,
 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278,
 279, 280; (War), 636, 637, 638, 639,
 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646,
 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653,
 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660,
 661, 662, 663; (Since the War),
 1608, 1609, 1610, 1611, 1612, 1613,
 1614, 1615, 1616, 1617, 1618, 1619,
 1620, 1621
 Vietnamization (see Pacification), 737
 Vietnam Veterans Against the War (VVAW),
 1465, 1471, 1472, 1473
 Vo Nguyen Giap, 372, 373, 378, 379

W

War Crimes (see My Lai), 1441, 1442, 1443,
 1444; (ICC), 1445, 1446, 1447, 1448,
 1449, 1450, 1451, 1452, 1453, 1454,
 1455, 1456, 1457, 1458, 1459, 1460,
 1461, 1462, 1463, 1464; (Hue), 1465
 Walt, General Lewis W., 983
 Weapons (Manufacturers), 766; (General),
 774, 775; (Mines), 780; (Enemy),
 782, 783, 784; (Naval), 798, 799, 800
 Westmoreland, General William C., 685
 Women, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 1567

Z

Zumwalt, Admiral Elmo R., Jr., 999